

Michaels Companies, Inc.  
Form S-1/A  
January 20, 2015

Use these links to rapidly review the document

[TABLE OF CONTENTS](#)

[INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS](#)

[Table of Contents](#)

As filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on January 20, 2015

Registration No. 333-201444

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549**

---

**AMENDMENT No. 1  
to**

**FORM S-1  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

**THE MICHAELS COMPANIES, INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**5945**  
(Primary standard industrial  
classification code number)

**37-1737959**  
(I.R.S. employer  
identification number)

**8000 Bent Branch Drive  
Irving, Texas 75063  
Telephone: (972) 409-1300**

(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

---

**Charles M. Sonstebly  
Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer  
8000 Bent Branch Drive  
Irving, Texas 75063  
Telephone: (972) 409-1300**

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

---

**Copies to:**

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

David A. Fine  
Ropes & Gray LLP  
Prudential Tower  
800 Boylston Street  
Boston, Massachusetts 02199  
Telephone: (617) 951-7000

Michael J. Veitenheimer  
The Michaels Companies, Inc.  
Senior Vice President General Counsel and  
Secretary  
8000 Bent Branch Drive  
Irving, Texas 75063  
Telephone: (972) 409-1300

D. Rhett Brandon  
Simpson Thacher & Bartlett LLP  
425 Lexington Avenue  
New York, New York 10017  
Telephone: (212) 455-2000

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:  
As soon as practicable after this registration statement becomes effective.

If any of the securities being registered on this form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box.

If this form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one).

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting  
company

(Do not check if a  
smaller  
reporting company)

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

Title of Each Class of Securities to be Registered	Amount to be Registered(1)	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Share	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price(2)	Amount of Registration Fee(3)
Common Stock	18,400,000	\$23.03	\$423,752,000	\$49,240

(1) Includes 2,400,000 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares of common stock.

(2) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee in accordance with Rule 457(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. In accordance with Rule 457(c) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the price shown is the average of the high and low selling prices of the common stock on January 15, 2015 as reported on The NASDAQ Global Select Market.

(3) Previously paid.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

Table of Contents

**Subject to Completion, Dated January 20, 2015**

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities, and we are not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**Prospectus**

***16,000,000 shares***

## **The Michaels Companies, Inc.**

### ***Common Stock***

The selling stockholders identified in this prospectus are selling 16,000,000 shares of common stock of The Michaels Companies, Inc. We will not receive any proceeds from the sale of shares by the selling stockholders.

Our common stock is listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "MIK". On January 16, 2015, the last sale price of our common stock as reported on The NASDAQ Global Select Market was \$22.89 per share.

	<b>Per share</b>	<b>Total</b>
Public offering price	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions(1)	\$	\$
Proceeds, before expenses to selling stockholders	\$	\$

(1) We have agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain expenses in connection with this offering. See "Underwriting."

The selling stockholders identified in this prospectus have granted the underwriters an option for a period of 30 days to purchase, on the same terms and conditions as set forth above, up to an additional 2,400,000 shares of our Common Stock. We will not receive any proceeds from the sale of shares by the selling stockholders.

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any other regulatory body has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

**Investing in our Common Stock involves risks. See "Risk Factors" beginning on page 14 to read about factors you should consider before buying shares of our Common Stock.**

The underwriters expect to deliver the shares of Common Stock on or about \_\_\_\_\_, 2015.

**J.P. Morgan**

**Goldman, Sachs & Co.**

**Barclays**

**Deutsche Bank Securities**

**BofA Merrill Lynch**

**Credit Suisse**

**Morgan Stanley**

**Wells Fargo Securities**

**Guggenheim Securities**

**Macquarie Capital**

**Nomura**

**Piper Jaffray**

**Raymond James**

**Stephens Inc.**

**SunTrust Robinson Humphrey**

**Ramirez & Co., Inc.**  
, 2015

**Telsey Advisory Group**

**The Williams Capital Group, L.P.**

---

Table of Contents





Table of Contents

**Table of contents**

	<b>Page</b>
<u>Prospectus summary</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>Risk factors</u>	<u>14</u>
<u>Cautionary note regarding forward-looking statements</u>	<u>30</u>
<u>Use of proceeds</u>	<u>32</u>
<u>Market Price of our Common Stock</u>	<u>33</u>
<u>Dividend policy</u>	<u>34</u>
<u>Capitalization</u>	<u>35</u>
<u>Selected historical consolidated financial and operating data</u>	<u>36</u>
<u>Management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations</u>	<u>39</u>
<u>Business</u>	<u>67</u>
<u>Management</u>	<u>78</u>
<u>Executive compensation</u>	<u>85</u>
<u>Equity compensation plan information</u>	<u>116</u>
<u>Certain relationships and related party transactions</u>	<u>119</u>
<u>Description of certain indebtedness</u>	<u>124</u>
<u>Principal and selling stockholders</u>	<u>132</u>
<u>Description of capital stock</u>	<u>135</u>
<u>Material U.S. federal income and estate tax considerations for Non-U.S. Holders of shares of our Common Stock</u>	<u>139</u>
<u>Certain ERISA considerations</u>	<u>144</u>
<u>Underwriting</u>	<u>145</u>
<u>Legal matters</u>	<u>152</u>
<u>Experts</u>	<u>152</u>
<u>Where you can find more information</u>	<u>152</u>
<u>Index to consolidated financial statements and supplementary data</u>	<u>F-1</u>

**You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus or in any free writing prospectus that we authorize be distributed to you. We have not, and the underwriters have not, authorized anyone to provide you with additional or different information. This document may only be used where it is legal to sell these securities. You should assume that the information contained in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date of this prospectus.**

Table of Contents

## **Note regarding trademarks and service marks**

We own or have rights to trademarks, service marks or trade names that we use in connection with the operation of our business, including, without limitation, "Aaron Brothers", "Aaron Brothers Art & Framing", "Artistree", "Michaels", "Michaels the Arts and Crafts Store", "Recollections", the stylized "Timeframe" logo, "Where Creativity Happens", and the stylized Michaels logos. We have registered our primary private brands including Artist's Loft, ArtMinds, Celebrate It, Creatology, Craft Smart, Recollections, Loops & Threads, Studio Décor, Bead Landing, imagin8, and Ashland. Solely for convenience, some of the trademarks, service marks and trade names referred to in this prospectus are listed without the ® and ™ symbols, but we will assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, our rights to our copyrights, trademarks, service marks, trade names and domain names. The trademarks, service marks and trade names of other companies appearing in this prospectus are, to our knowledge, the property of their respective owners.

## **Note regarding market and industry data**

Industry and market data included in this prospectus were obtained from our own internal data, data from industry trade publications and groups, consumer research and marketing studies and, in some cases, are management estimates based on industry and other knowledge and experience in the markets in which we operate. Our estimates have been based on information obtained from our suppliers, customers, trade and business organizations and other contacts in the markets in which we operate, including the Craft & Hobby Association ("CHA") and Interbrand. We believe these estimates to be accurate as of the date of this prospectus.

Table of Contents

## Prospectus summary

*This summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus. This summary does not contain all of the information you should consider before investing in our Common Stock. You should read the entire prospectus, including the more detailed information and the financial statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the section entitled "Risk Factors." As part of the reorganization described under "The Reorganization," in July 2013 Michaels Stores, Inc. ("MSI") became an indirect, wholly-owned subsidiary of The Michaels Companies, Inc. Unless the context otherwise requires, the terms "Michaels," "our company," "the Company," "we," "us," "our" and the like refer to The Michaels Companies, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries. Unless otherwise indicated, the information provided in this prospectus assumes the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares is not exercised.*

*We report on the basis of a 52- or 53-week fiscal year, which ends on the Saturday closest to January 31. References to fiscal year mean the year in which that fiscal year began. References herein to "fiscal 2014" relate to the 52 weeks ending January 31, 2015, "fiscal 2013" is the 52 weeks ended February 1, 2014, "fiscal 2012" is the 53-week period ended February 2, 2013 and "fiscal 2011" is the 52-week period ended January 28, 2012. In addition, all references herein to "the third quarter of fiscal 2014" relate to the 13 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and all references to "the third quarter of fiscal 2013" relate to the 13 weeks ended November 2, 2013. Finally, all references to "the nine months ended November 1, 2014" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and the "the nine months ended November 2, 2013" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 2, 2013. Because of the seasonal nature of our business, the results of operations for the 13 and 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014 are not indicative of the results to be expected for the entire year.*

*Please note that our discussion of financial information for fiscal 2013 includes data from the period preceding the Reorganization (February 3, 2013 to July 21, 2013) and data from the period following the Reorganization (July 22, 2013 to February 1, 2014) on a combined basis.*

## Our company

We believe Michaels is where creativity happens. With 1,287 stores (consisting of 1,166 Michaels stores and 121 Aaron Brothers stores) as of November 1, 2014 and approximately \$4.6 billion in sales in fiscal 2013, Michaels is the largest arts and crafts specialty retailer in North America based on store count. We also operate a market-leading vertically-integrated custom framing business. Our mission is to inspire and enable customer creativity, create a fun and rewarding place to work, foster meaningful connections with our communities and lead the industry in growth and innovation. With helpful store associates and a broad selection of merchandise combined with compelling in-store events and online content, we believe we offer the most complete arts and crafts experience and are the preferred destination in the industry.

Our stores are at the heart of our customer engagement strategy, showcasing our artistic and creative products while providing an opportunity for our store associates to interact with customers and help them develop creative ideas. We carry a broad and deep assortment of approximately 35,000 stock-keeping units ("SKUs") in arts, crafts, scrapbooking, floral, framing, home décor, seasonal offerings and children's hobbies that enable us to satisfy the diverse needs of our customers. We have also developed a robust online platform which promotes social networking, and includes expert tips, project ideas, marketing content and information on upcoming store events. In recent years, we have capitalized on our market-leading scale to create a team and infrastructure dedicated to designing, sourcing and delivering high quality, on-trend merchandise, including a growing number of products under our portfolio of private brands.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Our private branded products, which represented approximately 48% of total Net sales in fiscal 2013, are only available at Michaels and allow us to further differentiate our merchandise while enhancing product margins. We are also able to use our scale and market leadership to identify and secure exclusive third-party products. We believe our compelling store experience and broad product offering distinguish us from our competitors and position Michaels as the leading brand that defines arts and crafts.

Our experienced management team has undertaken a series of key initiatives designed to enhance the strength of our market position and our potential for future growth. These initiatives include:

making our stores more inviting to a broader set of customers, including those new to do-it-yourself ("DIY") projects and more experienced crafters;

enhancing our in-store shopping experience by creating a more visually appealing environment through improved signage and open sightlines to make it easier for our customers to shop;

becoming a true multi-channel retailer with our e-commerce platform launch in 2014 to complement our existing web and mobile platforms;

strengthening our connections with existing customers and reaching new customers through an expanded marketing program including print, digital, direct mail, broadcast and community events;

broadening our merchandising and sourcing capabilities to better identify and source new trends, merchandise and categories that enhance our portfolio of exclusive brands and products; and

developing flexible store formats to address different markets and facilitate expansion.

### **Financial performance**

We believe the strength of our business model and the impact of our initiatives have delivered consistent sales growth and Net income improvement. We believe these strong results place us among the best performers in the specialty retail sector and create a foundation for future growth.

In fiscal 2013, Net sales increased to \$4,570 million, a 3.7% improvement over the previous year, which included a 53<sup>rd</sup> week, driven by comparable store sales growth of 2.9% and the opening of 56 new Michaels and Aaron Brothers stores, including the relocation of 14 Michaels and 2 Aaron Brothers stores.

During the third quarter of fiscal 2013, we introduced, and were the exclusive big-box retailer of, the Rainbow Loom. In an effort to drive sales of the Rainbow Loom, we dedicated significant advertising and marketing efforts to this on-trend children's craft product. Sales of the Rainbow Loom and replacement rubber bands contributed 2.9% to our comparable stores sales increase for fiscal 2013.

In the nine months ended November 1, 2014, Net sales increased to \$3,130 million, a 3.8% improvement over the nine months ended November 2, 2013.

### **Our industry and our customer**

We operate within the large, growing and fragmented arts and crafts industry. According to the CHA 2011 Attitude & Usage Study, which represents the most recent available third-party estimate of industry size, the arts and crafts industry generated approximately \$30.3 billion in sales for the twelve months ended June 30, 2011, up from \$27.3 billion in sales for the twelve months ended December 31, 2008. This represents

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

a compounded annual growth rate of 4.3%, but excludes custom framing, which is one of our key categories. According to the CHA 2012 State of the Craft Industry report, our industry remains highly

Table of Contents

fragmented as craft and fabric chain stores ("multi-store chains") comprise approximately 26% of the market. The balance consists of mass merchants, discounters, independent operators and online retailers.

Our core customer is an important driver of our success. Based on an internal study, we believe our typical customer is female (76%), spans a broad age range (65% are under 55, with 48% between the ages of 34 and 54), and has an average household income of approximately \$82,000.

According to CHA, approximately 55% of United States, or U.S., households participated in at least one crafting project during 2012, which represented over 62 million households. Additionally, these households purchased crafting supplies, on average, 1.9 times per month and reported participating in approximately three crafting categories during the year. We believe the broad, multi-generational appeal, high personal attachment and the low-cost, project-based nature of crafting creates a loyal, resilient following. This is supported by CHA findings that nearly half of crafters report being a crafter for 10 or more years.

We further believe the rapid expansion and acceptance of digital social communities and societal trends towards DIY creative expression have expanded our potential customer base beyond the historical experienced crafter to include project-focused beginners. According to the CHA, nearly two-thirds of crafters use the Internet to source ideas and information about crafting, with retail websites (31%) and social media websites (23%) being cited as the most frequently used Internet sources.

## **Our competitive strengths**

***Leading market position in an attractive industry.*** We believe our leading market position provides us with a number of advantages relative to our competitors and positions us to continue to capture market share. Our scale allows us to invest in product sourcing and innovation as well as proprietary store and online content, which we believe differentiates us from local and regional arts and crafts retailers. The breadth and depth of our assortment, combined with a large share of private brand products, strengthen our competitive position relative to mass merchants, which devote only a small portion of shelf space to the category. Our category leadership attracts significant traffic to our websites, which include engaging online content and information on upcoming store events designed to be an extension of the Michaels brand.

***Sophisticated global sourcing and innovation capabilities.*** Our infrastructure and our internal product development and global sourcing team position us to continue to deliver a differentiated level of innovation, quality and value to our customers. Our global sourcing network allows us to control new product introductions, maintain quality standards, monitor delivery times, and manage product costs and inventory levels in order to enhance profitability. Further, through our wholly-owned subsidiary Artistree, we operate a vertically integrated custom frame design and manufacturing business, which delivers high-quality and innovative framing products at competitive prices, while capturing both manufacturing and retail margins.

***Industry defining brands.*** We believe Michaels is the leading brand in the arts and crafts category. We are the only arts and crafts retailer named on Interbrand's list of Best Retail Brands in the United States, ranking 33<sup>rd</sup> in April 2014.

The strength of the Michaels brand reflects, in part, our ability to offer unique merchandise at a compelling value. We believe products offered under our internally developed portfolio of 11 private brands are of equal or better quality than third-party branded products and generate higher gross margins. In fiscal 2013, sales of our private brands exceeded \$2.2 billion.

Table of Contents

**Highly effective customer engagement strategy.** We engage with our customers through a data-driven, multi-channel communication strategy. Our marketing approach has expanded beyond the primary use of newspaper circulars to a strategy using multiple forms of media, including digital, social media, direct marketing, broadcast and event-based promotions. Our nationally coordinated craft education program offers a broad curriculum of hands-on instruction in stores. We successfully grew total participation in this program to 799,000 in fiscal 2013 from 257,000 in fiscal 2009.

Our customer engagement strategy provides us with a deep understanding of customers' buying preferences, including assortment, brand and price. This strategy enables us to be a source of ideas and creativity, which ultimately increases loyalty and comparable store sales growth. It also allows us to better understand and cater to the needs of both our core expert crafters, as well as beginners. Further, we believe our new e-commerce platform launched in 2014 builds on our existing marketing-focused website and opens additional avenues to engage with our customers and increase sales.

**Strong cash flow generation.** Our ability to deliver strong financial performance, including the generation of net cash from operations of \$2.0 billion from fiscal 2009 through fiscal 2013, allows us to take advantage of the opportunities listed above, as well as invest in new initiatives to drive continued growth.

**Experienced management team.** Our current management team has deep leadership experience across multiple retail operations and consumer product companies.

## **Our business strategy**

We intend to strengthen our position in the marketplace by executing store, e-commerce, marketing and merchandising initiatives through the following strategies:

### ***Drive comparable store sales growth***

**Engaging with our customers.** We believe we will capture additional market share from our existing customers and attract new customers by enhancing our customer engagement strategy. We expect to drive sustainable long-term sales growth by improving our brand positioning, expanding our marketing channels to include more direct mail, digital and broadcast efforts, and building customer loyalty by leveraging our large customer database. For example, we utilize our proprietary customer database, along with our email marketing database of more than 13 million customers, to offer increasingly personalized marketing communications to augment our already effective mass marketing vehicles.

**Compelling store experience.** We will further enhance our in-store shopping experience to broaden our customer base. Giving our stores a more consistent look and feel, including improved visual merchandising and more open sightlines, will make it easier for our customers to shop, as well as more efficient for us to operate our stores. We continue to refine our store operating model to increase efficiency and the amount of interaction our associates have with customers. Furthermore, our stores and community rooms have increasingly become a popular destination for a variety of events such as birthday parties and children's seasonal crafting programs. These initiatives strengthen our relationship with customers, create further opportunities to visit our stores and attract new customers to the Michaels experience.

**Providing differentiated and inspiring merchandise.** We will leverage our merchandising, global sourcing and trend teams to continually introduce new, exclusive and on-trend products and creative solutions. We plan to emphasize speed to market to capitalize on changing consumer demand that continues to accelerate with the success of social media sites like Pinterest and Facebook. We believe this will further differentiate us from our competitors, attract more customers, and increase the frequency of visits to our stores and websites.

Table of Contents

**Expanding our customer base.** We will broaden our target customer base to include more beginners: consumers who are interested in customizing and personalizing creative projects, but who may be hesitant to try due to time constraints or limited experience. We expect to achieve this through changes to our product assortment, packaging, visual merchandising, and in-store and online education.

**Expand multi-channel business platform**

**Driving store growth.** Based on our detailed market-by-market analysis, we believe there is opportunity for continued new store growth, with the potential for approximately 1,500 Michaels stores in North America. During the five fiscal years ended fiscal 2013, we opened 201 Michaels stores, including 57 relocations, and expanded our target geographic markets beyond the traditional suburban community to include urban and smaller markets that we had not previously targeted. Based on recent performance, we believe our new stores will continue to generate an attractive pre-tax cash-on-cash return of approximately 30% on our initial net investment by their fourth year after opening.

As of January 3, 2015, we opened 45 new Michaels stores, including 13 relocations, in fiscal 2014, and plan to open approximately 47 new Michaels stores, including 17 relocations, in fiscal 2015. We funded these openings, and expect to fund future openings, with our strong operating cash flow.

**e-commerce platform.** Our e-commerce platform, launched in 2014, is designed to leverage our highly visited marketing and educational websites to sell a broad range of products directly to customers online. Over the last 12 months, we have had approximately 199 million visits to [www.michaels.com](http://www.michaels.com); we also have approximately 1.9 million Facebook followers, more than 455,000 Pinterest followers and over 141,000 Twitter followers. We expect our new e-commerce platform will allow us to sell much of our current assortment while also expanding into e-commerce-only products. Although we expect this channel will produce a more limited sales penetration than more commoditized retail categories, we believe it will augment our multi-channel strategy to broaden our customer base and improve the shopping experience.

**Enhance operating margins and cash flow**

**Exclusive brand and global sourcing initiatives.** We plan to increase the penetration of our exclusive products, largely through private brands, and believe additional opportunities exist to expand our global sourcing and product design capabilities. We believe this will allow us to improve our selection and introduce new products tailored to our customers' tastes, while more effectively controlling costs and expanding our margins.

**Pricing and promotional strategies.** We will continue to leverage our understanding of customer demand and improve our merchandising systems to deliver promotions that enhance customer value and improve margin. Our refined pricing and promotional models can be customized at the store level to better capture the price elasticity of our products and target promotional messages to customers. This analytically-based strategy allows us to optimize the types of offers sent through our mass and targeted marketing channels.

**Operating leverage.** As we continue to grow, we will seek to further benefit from our scale and the infrastructure and capabilities we have developed to support our store network. From fiscal 2009 through fiscal 2013, we have been able to leverage our scale to reduce Selling, general, and administrative expense as a percentage of sales by 130 basis points.

**Summary risk factors**

The fragmented arts and crafts industry can be highly competitive, specifically in regard to comparable products sold online or by mass merchandisers, and we may face intense competition in the future that

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

could impact our planned growth and results of operations as discussed in the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus. You should carefully consider all of the information set forth in this prospectus and, in particular, you should evaluate the risk factors in the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus before deciding whether to invest in our Common Stock. Among the important risks relating to our business and our ability to successfully execute our business strategy are the following:

General economic factors and changes in consumer preference may adversely affect our performance and could materially adversely affect our sales, results of operations and cash flow.

Our substantial debt, of which \$3.3 billion was outstanding at November 1, 2014, could adversely affect our ability to raise additional capital to fund our operations, limit our ability to react to changes in the economy or our industry, expose us to interest rate risk associated with our \$2.5 billion in variable rate debt, prevent us from meeting our obligations under our notes and credit facilities and limit our flexibility in operating our business.

Our failure to adequately maintain security and prevent unauthorized access to electronic and other confidential information, which could result in additional data breaches, could materially adversely affect our reputation, financial condition and operating results.

Competition, including Internet-based competition, could negatively impact our business.

Our significant reliance on foreign suppliers, particularly those located in China, increases our risk of obtaining adequate, timely, and cost-effective product supplies.

Even if we are able to substantially continue our strategy of expanding our store base, our success will depend on how well we manage our business.

Damage to the reputations of the Michaels brand or our private and exclusive brands could adversely affect our sales.

Our fourth quarter has historically been our highest quarter for sales and profitability, and a weak fourth quarter could have material adverse impacts on us.

If a supplier fails us, transitioning to other qualified vendors could affect our sales and profitability.

Our promotional and merchandising programs are dependent on consumer responses, which could be unfavorable or unexpected, adversely impacting our sales.

Our holding company structure makes us, and certain of our direct and indirect subsidiaries, dependent on the operations of our, and their, subsidiaries to meet our, and their, financial obligations.

Investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors (as defined below) will own approximately 73% of the outstanding shares of our Common Stock upon the consummation of this offering and as a result will have the ability to control the outcome of matters submitted for stockholder approval, including the ability to direct the election of all of the members of our Board of Directors, and they may have interests that differ from those of our other stockholders.

The risks described above and other risks we face are described in further detail under the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus, which you should carefully review.



Table of Contents

## **The Reorganization**

In July 2013, the Company's corporate structure was reorganized into a holding company structure (the "Reorganization"). The Michaels Companies, Inc., Michaels FinCo Holdings, LLC ("FinCo Holdings"), Michaels FinCo, Inc. ("FinCo Inc."), Michaels Funding, Inc. ("Holdings") and Michaels Stores MergerCo, Inc. ("MergerCo") were formed in connection with the Reorganization and (i) MergerCo was merged with and into MSI with MSI being the surviving corporation; (ii) each share of MSI common stock was converted into the right to receive one share of Common Stock of the Company, subject to the same vesting conditions, if any, as applied to the share so converted, and each such share of MSI common stock was cancelled and retired and ceased to exist; and (iii) each option to purchase one or more shares of common stock of MSI was assumed by the Company and converted into an option to purchase an equivalent number of shares of Common Stock of the Company with the remaining terms of each such option remaining unchanged, except as was necessary to reflect the Reorganization. Approximately 174.8 million shares of MSI common stock were converted into an equivalent number of shares of Common Stock of the Company. The MSI shares were then cancelled and retired. MSI then issued 100 shares of stock with a \$0.10 par value to Holdings. As a result of the Reorganization, FinCo Holdings is wholly owned by the Company, FinCo Inc. and Holdings are wholly owned by FinCo Holdings, and MSI is wholly owned by Holdings.

## **Our history**

We were incorporated in Delaware in July 2013 in connection with the Reorganization of MSI into a holding company structure. MSI was incorporated in Delaware in 1983 and is headquartered in Irving, Texas. On October 31, 2006, substantially all of the common stock of MSI was acquired through a merger transaction (the "Merger") by affiliates of or funds advised by two investment firms, Bain Capital Partners, LLC and The Blackstone Group L.P. (collectively, together with their applicable affiliates, the "Sponsors"), with certain shares retained by investment funds managed by Highfields Capital Management LP ("Highfields") (then-existing shareholders of Michaels Stores, Inc.). As a result of the Merger and the Reorganization, Michaels Holdings LLC, an entity controlled by our Sponsors, owned approximately 93% of our outstanding Common Stock and, following the completion of our initial public offering, our Sponsors held approximately 80% of our outstanding Common Stock. Upon the completion of this offering, our Sponsors will continue to hold a controlling interest in us.

On July 2, 2014, we completed our initial public offering in which we issued and sold 27.8 million shares of common stock at a public offering price of \$17.00 per share. On June 27, 2014, our common stock was listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "MIK".

## **Our Sponsors**

Bain Capital, LLC ("Bain Capital") ([www.baincapital.com](http://www.baincapital.com)) is a global private investment firm that, together with its affiliates (including Bain Capital Partners, LLC), manages several pools of capital including private equity, venture capital, public equity, credit products and absolute return investments with approximately \$80 billion in assets under management. Since its inception in 1984, Bain Capital has made private equity, growth, and venture capital investments in over 400 companies in a variety of industries around the world. Bain Capital consumer and retail private equity investments have included such leading businesses as Toys "R" Us, Bright Horizons Family Solutions, Dollarama, Burlington Coat Factory, Dunkin' Brands and Gymboree. Headquartered in Boston, Bain Capital has offices in New York, Chicago, Palo Alto, London, Luxembourg, Mauritius, Munich, Melbourne, Hong Kong, Shanghai, Tokyo and Mumbai.

Table of Contents

The Blackstone Group L.P. ("The Blackstone Group") is one of the world's leading investment and advisory firms. The Blackstone Group seeks to create positive economic impact and long term value for its investors, the companies it invests in, the companies it advises and the broader global economy. The Blackstone Group does this through the commitment of its extraordinary people and flexible capital. The Blackstone Group's asset management businesses include investment vehicles focused on private equity, real estate, hedge fund solutions, non-investment grade credit, secondary funds, and multi asset class exposures falling outside of other funds mandates. The Blackstone Group also provides various financial advisory services, including financial and strategic advisory, restructuring and reorganization advisory and fund placement services. Further information is available at [www.blackstone.com](http://www.blackstone.com).

**Recent developments**

**Interim Results.** Net sales for the 11-week period from November 2, 2014 to January 17, 2015 increased 3.5% and comparable store sales increased 1.5% from the comparable prior year period.

For the fourth quarter of fiscal 2014, net sales are expected to be in the range of \$1,599 million to \$1,605 million with an expected increase in comparable store sales range of 0.8% to 1.2%. Fourth quarter operating income is expected to be \$286 million to \$291 million including an estimated \$0.7 million in expenses related to this offering.

This financial data is preliminary and may change. This preliminary financial data has been prepared by, and is the responsibility of our management. Ernst & Young LLP, our independent registered public accounting firm, has not audited, reviewed, compiled or performed any procedures with respect to this preliminary financial data, nor have any other independent accountants. Accordingly, Ernst & Young LLP does not express an opinion or any other form of assurance with respect thereto. There can be no assurance that our actual results for this quarterly period will not differ from the preliminary financial data, including as a result of post-holiday sales and the impact of inclement weather conditions or as a result of quarter-end and annual closing procedures or review adjustments, and such changes could be material. In addition, these estimates should not be viewed as a substitute for full financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP. In addition, this preliminary financial data is not necessarily indicative of the results to be achieved for any future period.

**Holdco Notes.** On December 10, 2014, we redeemed \$180 million in principal amount of the 7.50%/8.25% Senior PIK Toggle Notes that mature August 1, 2018 (the "Holdco Notes"). Debt extinguishment costs related to the redemption of the Holdco Notes were approximately \$6.4 million.

**Company information**

Our principal executive offices are located at 8000 Bent Branch Drive, Irving, Texas 75063; our telephone number at that address is (972) 409-1300 and our Internet address is [www.michaels.com](http://www.michaels.com). Our website, and the information contained on our website, is not part of this prospectus.

Table of Contents

## The offering

<b>Common Stock offered by the Selling Stockholders</b>	16,000,000 shares
<b>Underwriters' option to purchase additional shares</b>	The selling stockholders have granted the underwriters a 30-day option to purchase up to 2,400,000 additional shares of Common Stock.
<b>Use of proceeds</b>	We will not receive any of the proceeds from the sale of shares of Common Stock in this offering.
<b>Dividend policy</b>	We have no current plans to pay dividends on our Common Stock in the foreseeable future.
<b>Principal stockholders</b>	Following the completion of this offering, investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors will continue to indirectly beneficially own a controlling interest in us. As a result, we will continue to avail ourselves of the controlled company exemption under the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market. For more information, see "Risk Factors Risk Factors Relating to This Offering and Ownership of Our Common Stock We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market and, as a result, expect to qualify for, and intend to rely on, exemptions from certain corporate governance requirements. You will not have the same protections as those afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to such governance requirements" and "Management Corporate Governance Board Committees".
<b>Risk factors</b>	You should carefully read and consider the information set forth in the "Risk Factors" section of this prospectus and all other information set forth in this prospectus before investing in our Common Stock.
<b>NASDAQ symbol</b>	"MIK"

Table of Contents

## **Summary consolidated financial and operating data**

The following table sets forth our summary consolidated financial and operating data as of the dates and for the periods indicated. Our summary consolidated balance sheet data as of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, and our consolidated results of operations data and cash flow data for each of the three years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012, respectively, have been derived from our audited Consolidated Financial Statements, which are included elsewhere in this prospectus. Our summary consolidated balance sheet data as of January 28, 2012 has been derived from our historical audited financial statement for such year, which are not included in this prospectus. Other operating data and store counts included in the following table are unaudited for all periods presented. The summary consolidated results of operations, cash flow data and balance sheet data presented as of and for the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 are derived from our unaudited Consolidated Financial Statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. The results of operations for any period are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any future period.

We operate on a fiscal calendar, which in a given fiscal year consists of a 52- or 53-week period ending on the Saturday closest to January 31. Fiscal 2013 is the 52-week period ended February 1, 2014, fiscal 2012 is the 53-week period ended February 2, 2013 and fiscal 2011 is the 52-week period ended January 28, 2012. References to "the nine months ended November 1, 2014" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and the "the nine months ended November 2, 2013" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 2, 2013.

Our discussion of financial information for fiscal 2013 includes data from the period preceding the Reorganization (February 3, 2013 to July 21, 2013) and data from the period following the Reorganization (July 22, 2013 to February 1, 2014) on a combined basis.

The historical results presented below are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any future period. The following summaries of our consolidated financial and operating data for the periods presented should be read in conjunction with "Risk Factors", "Capitalization", "Management's Discussion

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and our Consolidated Financial Statements and the related notes, which are included elsewhere in this prospectus.

(in millions, except earnings per common share, operating and store count data)	Fiscal year			Nine months ended	
	2013	2012	2011	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
<b>Results of Operations Data:</b>					
Net sales	\$ 4,570	\$ 4,408	\$ 4,210	\$ 3,130	\$ 3,015
Operating income	610	592	538	333	334
Interest expense	215	245	254	159	154
Net income(1)	243	200	157	61	110
Earnings per Common share, basic	\$ 1.39	\$ 1.14	\$ 0.90	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.63
Earnings per Common share, diluted	\$ 1.36	\$ 1.12	\$ 0.89	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.62
Weighted average shares used in computing per share amounts, basic	174.8	174.7	174.6	187.8	174.8
Weighted average shares used in computing per share amounts, diluted	178.7	178.2	176.7	191.6	178.7
<b>Balance Sheet Data:</b>					
Cash and equivalents	\$ 239	\$ 56	\$ 371	\$ 194	\$ 73
Merchandise inventories	901	862	845	1,116	1,119
Current portion of long-term debt	16	150	127	205	203
Long-term debt	3,678	2,891	3,363	3,131	3,678
Working capital	450	188	478	409	293
<b>Cash flow data:</b>					
Cash flows provided by (used in) operating activities	\$ 449	\$ 299	\$ 409	\$ 36	\$ 69
Cash flows used in investing activities	(112)	(124)	(109)	(103)	(82)
Cash flows (used in) provided by financing activities	(154)	(490)	(248)	22	30
<b>Other Operating Data:</b>					
Average net sales per selling square foot(2)	\$ 218	\$ 215	\$ 212		
Comparable store sales increase (decrease)(3)	2.9%	1.5%	3.2%	1.9%	2.1%
Total selling square footage (in millions)	21.1	20.6	20.1	21.6	21.1
Adjusted EBITDA (in millions)(4)	\$ 792	\$ 747	\$ 707	\$ 480	\$ 459
<b>Stores Open at End of Period:</b>					
Michaels	1,136	1,099	1,064	1,166	1,137
Aaron Brothers	121	125	134	121	122
Total stores open at end of period	1,257	1,224	1,198	1,287	1,259

(1) Fiscal 2013 refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt include \$7 million (\$4 million, net of tax) of refinancing costs associated with our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and a \$7 million (\$4 million, net of tax) loss related to the redemption of \$137 million in aggregate principal amount of our 113/8% Senior Subordinated Notes due November 1, 2016 ("2016 Senior Subordinated Notes"). Fiscal 2012 refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt include \$12 million (\$8 million, net of tax) of refinancing costs associated with our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, an \$8 million (\$5 million, net of tax) loss related to our amended and restated senior secured term loan facility and prepayment of our B-1 Term Loans, an \$11 million (\$7 million, net of tax) loss related to the redemption of our remaining outstanding 13% Subordinated Discount Notes due November 1, 2016 ("Subordinated Discount Notes"), and a \$2 million (\$1 million, net of tax) loss related to the amendment and restatement of our senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. Fiscal 2011 refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt include an \$18 million (\$11 million, net of tax) loss related to the early extinguishment of \$163 million face value, or \$155 million accreted value, of our outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes and \$7 million face value of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. During the nine months ended November 1, 2014, we recorded a loss on the early extinguishment of debt of \$56 million (\$35 million, net of tax) related to the redemption

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A  
of the 73/4% Senior Notes that mature on November 1, 2018 (the "2018 Senior Notes") and

Table of Contents

a loss on the early extinguishment of debt of \$12 million (\$7.5 million, net of tax) related to the redemption of part of the outstanding amount under the Holdco Notes in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 470, Debt ("ASC 470"), and a write off of \$5 million of unamortized net premiums.

(2) The calculation of average net sales per selling square foot includes only Michaels comparable stores, as defined below. Aaron Brothers, which is a smaller store model, is excluded from the calculation.

(3) Comparable store sales increase (decrease) represents the increase (decrease) in Net sales for stores open the same number of months in the indicated and comparable period of the previous year, including stores that were relocated or expanded during either period, as well as e-commerce operations. A store is deemed to become comparable in its 14th month of operation in order to eliminate grand opening sales distortions. A store temporarily closed more than two weeks is not considered comparable during the month it is closed. If a store is closed longer than two weeks but less than two months, it becomes comparable in the month in which it reopens, subject to a mid-month convention. A store closed longer than two months becomes comparable in its 14th month of operation after its reopening.

(4) The table presents Adjusted Earnings before Interest, Taxes, Depreciation and Amortization ("Adjusted EBITDA"). The Company defines Adjusted EBITDA as Earnings before Interest, Taxes, Depreciation and Amortization ("EBITDA") (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) adjusted for certain defined amounts that are added to, or subtracted from, EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) (collectively, the "Adjustments") in accordance with the Company's Restated Term Loan Credit Facility and Restated Revolving Credit Facility. The Adjustments are described in further detail in the table and the footnotes to the table below.

The Company has presented EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) and Adjusted EBITDA to provide investors with additional information to evaluate our operating performance and our ability to service our debt. Adjusted EBITDA is a required calculation under the Company's Restated Term Loan Credit Facility and Restated Revolving Credit Facility. As it relates to the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, Adjusted EBITDA is used in the calculations of fixed charge coverage and leverage ratios, which, under certain circumstances may result in limitations on MSI's ability to make restricted payments as well as the determination of mandatory repayments of the loans. Under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, Adjusted EBITDA is used in the calculation of fixed charge coverage ratios, which under certain circumstances, may restrict MSI's ability to make certain payments (characterized as restricted payments), investments (including acquisitions) and debt repayments, and which under certain circumstances will be used as a maintenance covenant.

As EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) and Adjusted EBITDA are not measures of operating performance or liquidity calculated in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ("GAAP"), these measures should not be considered in isolation of, or as a substitute for, Net income, as an indicator of operating performance, or Net cash provided by operating activities as an indicator of liquidity. Our computation of EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) and Adjusted EBITDA may differ from similarly titled measures used by other companies. As EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) and Adjusted EBITDA exclude certain financial information compared with Net income and Net cash provided by operating activities, the most directly comparable GAAP financial measures, users of this financial information should consider the types of events and transactions which are excluded.

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

The table below shows a reconciliation of EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) and Adjusted EBITDA to Net income and Net cash provided by operating activities.

(in millions)	Nine months ended				
	2013	2012	2011	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	\$ 449	\$ 299	\$ 409	\$ 36	\$ 69
Depreciation and amortization	(106)	(97)	(101)	(82)	(74)
Share-based compensation	(34)	(21)	(41)	(15)	(19)
Debt issuance costs amortization	(10)	(14)	(17)	(8)	(7)
Accretion of long-term debt	1		(35)		1
Change in fair value of contingent consideration			4		
Change in fair value of interest rate cap			(5)		
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	(14)	(33)	(18)	(68)	(7)
Impairment of intangible assets		(8)			
Changes in assets and liabilities	(43)	74	(39)	198	147
Net income	243	200	157	61	110
Interest expense	215	245	254	159	154
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	14	33	18	68	7
Provision for income taxes	136	115	100	44	62
Depreciation and amortization	106	97	101	82	74
EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt)	714	690	630	414	407
Adjustments:					
Share-based compensation and related taxes	35	21	41	15	19
Management fees to Sponsors and others	14	13	13	35	10
Impairment of intangible assets		8			
Termination expense	5	1	1	2	2
Store pre-opening costs	5	5	4	4	5
Store remodel costs	7	2	2	4	6
Foreign currency transaction losses (gains)	2	(1)	4	1	1
Store closing costs	5	4	7	2	4
Gain on contingent consideration			(4)		
Loss on interest rate cap			5		
Initial public offering costs				2	
Other(1)	5	4	4	1	5
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 792	\$ 747	\$ 707	\$ 480	\$ 459

(1) Other adjustments relate to items such as moving & relocation expenses, franchise taxes, foreign currency hedge, sign on bonuses and certain legal settlements.

Table of Contents

## **Risk factors**

*An investment in our Common Stock involves various risks. We are a holding company with no material assets other than our interest in our direct and indirect subsidiaries, including MSI. We do not have any independent operations and our only source of liquidity is from our subsidiaries. You should carefully consider the following risks and all of the other information contained in this prospectus before investing in our Common Stock. The risks described below are those which we believe are the material risks we face. Any of the risk factors described could significantly and adversely affect our business, prospects, sales, revenues, gross profit, cash flows, financial condition, and results of operations. In any such case, the trading price of our Common Stock could decline, and you may lose all or part of your investment in our Common Stock.*

### **Risks relating to our business and industry**

*We face risks related to the effect of economic uncertainty.*

In the event of a prolonged economic downturn or slow recovery, our growth, prospects, results of operations, cash flows and financial condition could be adversely impacted. Our stores offer arts and crafts supplies and products for the crafter, and custom framing for the do-it-yourself home decorator, which some customers may perceive as discretionary. Pressure on discretionary income brought on by economic downturns and slow recoveries, including housing market declines, rising energy prices and weak labor markets, may cause consumers to reduce the amount they spend on discretionary items. For example, as a result of the recession during fiscal 2007 and fiscal 2008, despite adding a number of new stores, our total Net sales decreased from \$3,862 million to \$3,817 million. The current economic environment may continue to adversely affect consumer confidence and retail spending, decreasing demand for our merchandise. Current economic conditions also make it difficult for us to accurately forecast future demand trends, which could cause us to purchase excess inventories, resulting in increases in our inventory carrying cost, or limit our ability to satisfy customer demand and potentially lose market share.

*We face risks related to our substantial indebtedness.*

Our substantial leverage could adversely affect our ability to raise additional capital to fund our operations, limit our ability to react to changes in the economy or our industry, expose us to interest rate risk associated with our variable rate debt and prevent us from meeting our obligations under our notes and credit facilities. As of November 1, 2014, we had total outstanding debt of \$3,336 million, of which approximately \$2,460 million was subject to variable interest rates and \$876 million was subject to fixed interest rates, and an additional approximately \$588 million of additional borrowing capacity (after giving effect to \$62 million of letters of credit then outstanding) under our Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Our substantial indebtedness could have important consequences to us, including:

making it more difficult for us to satisfy our obligations with respect to our debt, and any failure to comply with the obligations under our debt instruments, including restrictive covenants, could result in an event of default under the agreements governing our indebtedness;

increasing our vulnerability to general economic and industry conditions;

requiring a substantial portion of our cash flow from operations to be dedicated to the payment of principal and interest on our debt, thereby reducing our ability to use our cash flow to fund our operations, capital expenditures, selling and marketing efforts, product development, future business opportunities and other purposes;

Table of Contents

exposing us to the risk of increased interest rates as certain of our borrowings, including under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities, which consist of the Restated Revolving Credit Facility and the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility (each, as defined below), are at variable rates;

restricting us from making strategic acquisitions or causing us to make non-strategic divestitures;

limiting our ability to obtain additional financing for working capital, capital expenditures, product development, debt service requirements, acquisitions, and general corporate or other purposes; and

limiting our ability to plan for, or adjust to, changing market conditions and placing us at a competitive disadvantage compared to our competitors who may be less highly leveraged.

The occurrence of any one of these events could have an adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations, and ability to satisfy our obligations under our indebtedness.

We and our subsidiaries may be able to incur substantial additional indebtedness in the future, subject, in the case of Holdings, MSI and FinCo Holdings and their subsidiaries, to the restrictions contained in our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and the indentures governing our notes. In addition, our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and indentures governing our notes do not restrict our owners from creating new holding companies that may be able to incur indebtedness without regard to the restrictions set forth in our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and indentures governing our notes. If new indebtedness is added to our current debt levels, the related risks that we now face could intensify.

***Changes in customer demands could materially adversely affect our sales, results of operations and cash flow.***

Our success depends on our ability to anticipate and respond in a timely manner to changing customer demands and preferences for products and supplies used in creative activities. If we misjudge the market, we may significantly overstock unpopular products and be forced to take significant inventory markdowns, or experience shortages of key items, either of which could have a material adverse impact on our operating results and cash flow. In addition, adverse weather conditions, economic instability and consumer confidence volatility could have material adverse impacts on our sales and operating results.

Our fiscal 2013 results of operations were significantly enhanced by sales of one product, the Rainbow Loom. Sales of the Rainbow Loom and replacement rubber bands were the primary driver of the increase in our Net sales in the fiscal year ended February 1, 2014 compared to the prior fiscal year. Based on our retail experience, we expect that the popularity of this product will diminish over time, and our results of operations could be affected by our inability to anticipate demand for this product and stock the appropriate level of inventory. Similarly, if we identify products in the future that have a significant effect on our results of operations, we could face similar challenges and risks that could affect our profitability.

***We have recently experienced a data breach and such data breach and any future failure to adequately maintain security and prevent unauthorized access to electronic and other confidential information could result in an additional data breach which could materially adversely affect our reputation, financial condition and operating results.***

The protection of our customer, associate and Company data is critically important to us. Our customers and associates have a high expectation that we will adequately safeguard and protect their sensitive personal information. We have become increasingly centralized and dependent upon automated information technology processes. In addition, a portion of our business operations is conducted electronically, increasing the risk of attack or interception that could cause loss or misuse of data, system failures or

Table of Contents

disruption of operations. This risk has increased with the recent launch of our e-commerce platform in 2014. Improper activities by third parties, exploitation of encryption technology, new data-hacking tools and discoveries and other events or developments may result in a future compromise or breach of our networks, payment card terminals or other payment systems. In particular, the techniques used by criminals to obtain unauthorized access to sensitive data change frequently and often are not recognized until launched against a target; accordingly, we may be unable to anticipate these techniques or implement adequate preventative measures. Any failure to maintain the security of our customers' sensitive information, or data belonging to ourselves or our suppliers, could put us at a competitive disadvantage, result in deterioration of our customers' confidence in us, and subject us to potential litigation, liability, fines and penalties, resulting in a possible material adverse impact on our financial condition and results of operations. While we maintain insurance coverage that may, subject to policy terms and conditions, cover certain aspects of cyber risks, such insurance coverage may be insufficient to cover all losses and would not remedy damage to our reputation.

In January 2014, we learned of possible fraudulent activity on some U.S. payment cards that had been used at Michaels, suggesting we may have experienced a data security attack. The Company retained two independent, expert security firms to conduct an extensive investigation. The Company also worked closely with law enforcement authorities, banks, credit card issuers and payment processors to determine the facts.

After extensive analysis, we discovered evidence confirming that systems of Michaels stores in the United States and its subsidiary, Aaron Brothers, were attacked by criminals using highly sophisticated malware that had not been encountered previously by either of the security firms (the "Data Breach").

The Company believes the malware no longer presents a threat while shopping at Michaels or Aaron Brothers. During the course of the investigation, we determined the following:

The affected systems contained certain payment card information, such as payment card number and expiration date, about both Michaels and Aaron Brothers customers. We found no evidence that other customer personal information, such as name, address or PIN, was at risk in connection with this issue.

Regarding Michaels stores, the attack potentially targeted a limited portion of the point-of-sale systems at a varying number of stores between May 8, 2013 and January 27, 2014. Only a small percentage of payment cards used in the affected stores during the times of exposure were impacted by this issue. The analysis conducted by the security firms and the Company showed that approximately 2.6 million cards may have been impacted, which represented about 7% of payment cards used at Michaels stores in the U.S. during the relevant time period.

Regarding Aaron Brothers, we have confirmed that between June 26, 2013 and February 27, 2014, 54 Aaron Brothers stores were affected by this malware. We estimate that approximately 400,000 cards were potentially impacted during this period.

We have received a limited number of reports from the payment card brands and banks of fraudulent use of payment cards potentially connected to Michaels or Aaron Brothers.

We are offering identity protection, credit monitoring and fraud assistance services to affected Michaels and Aaron Brothers customers in the United States for 12 months at no cost to them. In addition, the Data Breach has given rise to putative class action litigation on behalf of customers and regulatory investigations, as further described under "Business Legal Proceedings".

Table of Contents

There can be no assurance that we will not suffer a similar criminal attack in the future, that unauthorized parties will not gain access to personal information, or that any such incident will be discovered in a timely way. Regardless of the conclusion of the investigation, the Data Breach could adversely affect the Michaels and Aaron Brothers brands, has caused us to incur legal and other fees and may cause us to incur additional material fees, and could discourage customers from shopping in our stores.

***Competition, including Internet-based competition, could negatively impact our business.***

The retail arts and crafts industry, including custom framing, is competitive, which could result in the pressure to reduce prices and losses in our market share. We must remain competitive in the areas of quality, price, breadth of selection, customer service, and convenience. We compete with mass merchants (e.g., Wal-Mart Stores, Inc. and Target Corporation), which dedicate a portion of their selling space to a limited selection of craft supplies and seasonal and holiday merchandise, along with national and regional chains and local merchants. We also compete with specialty retailers, which include Hobby Lobby Stores, Inc., A.C. Moore Arts & Crafts, Inc. and Jo-Ann Stores, Inc. Some of our competitors, particularly the mass merchants, are larger and have greater financial resources than we do. We also face competition from Internet-based retailers, such as Amazon.com, Inc., in addition to traditional store-based retailers, who may be larger, more experienced and able to offer products we cannot. This could result in increased price competition since our customers could more readily search and compare non-private brand products. Furthermore, we ultimately compete with alternative sources of entertainment and leisure for our customers.

***Our reliance on foreign suppliers increases our risk of obtaining adequate, timely and cost-effective product supplies.***

We rely to a significant extent on foreign manufacturers for our merchandise, particularly manufacturers located in China. In addition, many of our domestic suppliers purchase a portion of their products from foreign sources. This reliance increases the risk that we will not have adequate and timely supplies of various products due to local political, economic, social, or environmental conditions (including acts of terrorism, the outbreak of war, or the occurrence of natural disaster), transportation delays (including dock strikes and other work stoppages, such as the ongoing negotiations of the longshore labor agreements on the West Coast which has caused inventory restocking delays which may continue for so long as the negotiations continue or if a strike were to occur), restrictive actions by foreign governments, or changes in U.S. laws and regulations affecting imports or domestic distribution. Reliance on foreign manufacturers also increases our exposure to trade infringement claims and reduces our ability to return product for various reasons.

We are at a risk for higher costs associated with goods manufactured in China. Significant increases in wages or wage taxes paid by contract facilities may increase the cost of goods manufactured, which could have a material adverse effect on our profit margins and profitability.

All of our products manufactured overseas and imported into the United States are subject to duties collected by the U.S. Customs Service. We may be subjected to additional duties, significant monetary penalties, the seizure and forfeiture of the products we are attempting to import, or the loss of import privileges if we or our suppliers are found to be in violation of U.S. laws and regulations applicable to the importation of our products.

Table of Contents

***Our success will depend on how well we manage our business.***

Even if we are able to continue our strategy of expanding our store base, or additionally, to expand our business through acquisitions or vertical integration opportunities, we may experience problems which may adversely impact profitability or cash flow. For example:

the costs of opening and operating new stores may offset the increased sales generated by the additional stores;

the closure of unsuccessful stores may result in the retention of liability for expensive leases;

a significant portion of our management's time and energy may be consumed with issues unrelated to advancing our core business strategies;

our e-commerce platform may be unprofitable, cannibalize sales from our existing stores, or be uncompetitive against other Internet-based retailers who sell similar merchandise;

the implementation of future operational efficiency initiatives, which may include the consolidation of certain operations and/or the possible co-sourcing of additional selected functions, may not produce the desired reduction in costs and may result in disruptions arising from such actions;

failure to maintain stable relations with our labor force may impact our store operations and sales;

our suppliers may be unable to meet the increased demand of additional stores in a timely manner; and

we may be unable to expand our existing distribution centers or use third-party distribution centers on a cost-effective basis to provide merchandise to our new stores.

***Our growth depends on our ability to open new stores and increase comparable store sales.***

One of our key business strategies is to expand our base of retail stores. If we are unable to continue this strategy, our ability to increase our sales, profitability and cash flow could be impaired. To the extent we are unable to open new stores as we anticipate, our sales growth would come only from increases in comparable store sales. Growth in profitability in that case would depend significantly on our ability to improve gross margin. We may be unable to continue our store growth strategy if we cannot identify suitable sites for additional stores, negotiate acceptable leases, access sufficient capital to support store growth, or hire and train a sufficient number of qualified associates.

***Damage to the reputation of the Michaels brand or our private and exclusive brands could adversely affect our sales.***

We believe the Michaels brand name and many of our private and exclusive brand names are powerful sales and marketing tools and we devote significant resources to promoting and protecting them. To be successful in the future, we must continue to preserve, grow and utilize the value of Michaels' reputation. Reputational value is based in large part on perceptions of subjective qualities, and even isolated incidents may erode trust and confidence. In addition, we develop and promote private and exclusive brands, which we believe have generated national recognition. Our private brands amounted to approximately 48% of Net sales in fiscal 2013 and approximately 49% of Net sales for the nine months ended November 1, 2014. Damage to the reputations (whether or not justified) of our brand names could arise from product failures, data privacy or security incidents, litigation or various forms of adverse publicity (including adverse publicity generated as a result of a vendor's or a supplier's failure to comply with general social accountability practices), especially in social media outlets, and may generate negative customer sentiment, potentially resulting in a reduction in our sales and earnings.

Table of Contents

***A weak fourth quarter could materially adversely affect our result of operations.***

Our business is highly seasonal. Our inventories and short-term borrowings may grow in the third fiscal quarter as we prepare for our peak selling season in the third and fourth fiscal quarters. Our most important quarter in terms of sales, profitability and cash flow historically has been the fourth fiscal quarter. If for any reason our fourth fiscal quarter results were substantially below expectations, our operating results for the full year would be materially adversely affected, and we could have substantial excess inventory, especially in seasonal merchandise that is difficult to liquidate.

***Suppliers from whom our products are sourced may fail us and transitioning to other qualified vendors could materially adversely affect our revenue and gross profit.***

The products we sell are sourced from a wide variety of domestic and international vendors. Global sourcing has become an increasingly important part of our business, as we have undertaken efforts to increase the amount of product we source directly from overseas manufacturers. Our ability to find qualified vendors who meet our standards and supply products in a timely and efficient manner is a significant challenge, especially with respect to goods sourced from outside the United States. Any issues related to transitioning vendors could adversely affect our revenue and gross profit.

Many of our suppliers are small firms that produce a limited number of items. Given their limited resources, these firms are susceptible to cash flow issues, access to capital, production difficulties, quality control issues and problems in delivering agreed-upon quantities on schedule. We may not be able, if necessary, to return products to these suppliers and obtain refunds of our purchase price or obtain reimbursement or indemnification from them if their products prove defective. These suppliers may also be unable to withstand a downturn in economic conditions. Significant failures on the part of our key suppliers could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations.

In addition, many of these suppliers require extensive advance notice of our requirements in order to supply products in the quantities we desire. This long lead time may limit our ability to respond timely to shifts in demand.

***Unexpected or unfavorable consumer responses to our promotional or merchandising programs could materially adversely affect our sales, results of operations, cash flow and financial condition.***

Brand recognition, quality and price have a significant influence on consumers' choices among competing products and brands. Advertising, promotion, merchandising and the cadence of new product introductions also have a significant impact on consumers' buying decisions. If we misjudge consumer responses to our existing or future promotional activities, this could have a material adverse impact on our sales, results of operations, cash flow and financial condition.

We believe improvements in our merchandise offering help drive sales at our stores. We could be materially adversely affected by poor execution of changes to our merchandise offering or by unexpected consumer responses to changes in our merchandise offering.

***Our marketing programs, e-commerce initiatives and use of consumer information are governed by an evolving set of laws and enforcement trends, and unfavorable changes in those laws or trends, or our failure to comply with existing or future laws, could substantially harm our business and results of operations.***

We collect, maintain and use data provided to us through our online activities and other customer interactions in our business. Our current and future marketing programs depend on our ability to collect, maintain and use this information, and our ability to do so is subject to certain contractual restrictions in

Table of Contents

third-party contracts as well as evolving international, federal and state laws and enforcement trends. We strive to comply with all applicable laws and other legal obligations relating to privacy, data protection and consumer protection, including those relating to the use of data for marketing purposes. It is possible, however, that these requirements may be interpreted and applied in a manner that is inconsistent from one jurisdiction to another, may conflict with other rules or may conflict with our practices. If so, we may suffer damage to our reputation and be subject to proceedings or actions against us by governmental entities or others. Any such proceeding or action could hurt our reputation, force us to spend significant amounts to defend our practices, distract our management, increase our costs of doing business and result in monetary liability.

In addition, as data privacy and marketing laws change, we may incur additional costs to ensure we remain in compliance. If applicable data privacy and marketing laws become more restrictive at the federal or state level, our compliance costs may increase, our ability to effectively engage customers via personalized marketing may decrease, our investment in our e-commerce platform may not be fully realized, our opportunities for growth may be curtailed by our compliance capabilities or reputational harm and our potential liability for security breaches may increase.

***Product recalls and/or product liability, as well as changes in product safety and other consumer protection laws, may adversely impact our operations, merchandise offerings, reputation, results of operations, cash flow and financial condition.***

We are subject to regulations by a variety of federal, state and international regulatory authorities, including the Consumer Product Safety Commission. In fiscal 2013, we purchased merchandise from approximately 600 vendors. Since a majority of our merchandise is manufactured in foreign countries, one or more of our vendors might not adhere to product safety requirements or our quality control standards, and we might not identify the deficiency before merchandise ships to our stores. Any issues of product safety, including but not limited to those manufactured in foreign countries, could cause us to recall some of those products. If our vendors fail to manufacture or import merchandise that adheres to our quality control standards, our reputation and brands could be damaged, potentially leading to increases in customer litigation against us. Furthermore, to the extent we are unable to replace any recalled products, we may have to reduce our merchandise offerings, resulting in a decrease in sales, especially if a recall occurs near or during a seasonal period. If our vendors are unable or unwilling to recall products failing to meet our quality standards, we may be required to recall those products at a substantial cost to us. Moreover, changes in product safety or other consumer protection laws could lead to increased costs to us for certain merchandise, or additional labor costs associated with readying merchandise for sale. Long lead times on merchandise ordering cycles increase the difficulty for us to plan and prepare for potential changes to applicable laws. The Consumer Product Safety Improvement Act of 2008 imposes significant requirements on manufacturing, importing, testing and labeling requirements for our products. In the event that we are unable to timely comply with regulatory changes or regulators do not believe we are complying with current regulations applicable to us, significant fines or penalties could result, and could adversely affect our reputation, results of operations, cash flow and financial condition.

***Significant increases in inflation or commodity prices such as petroleum, natural gas, electricity, steel, wood and paper may adversely affect our costs, including cost of merchandise.***

Significant future increases in commodity prices or inflation could adversely affect our costs, including cost of merchandise and distribution costs. Furthermore, the transportation industry may experience a shortage or reduction of capacity, which could be exacerbated by higher fuel prices. Our results of operations may

Table of Contents

be adversely affected if we are unable to secure, or are able to secure only at significantly higher costs, adequate transportation resources to fulfill our receipt of goods or delivery schedules to the stores.

***Improvements to our supply chain may not be fully successful.***

An important part of our efforts to achieve efficiencies, cost reductions, and sales and cash flow growth is the identification and implementation of improvements to our supply chain, including merchandise ordering, transportation, and receipt processing. We continue to implement enhancements to our distribution systems and processes, which are designed to improve efficiency throughout the supply chain and at our stores. Significant changes to our supply chain could have a material adverse impact on our results of operations.

***We may be subject to information technology system failures or network disruptions, or our information systems may prove inadequate, resulting in damage to our reputation, business operations and financial condition.***

We depend on our management information systems for many aspects of our business, including our perpetual inventory, automated replenishment, and weighted average cost stock ledger systems which are necessary to properly forecast, manage, analyze and record our inventory. The Company may be subject to information technology system failures and network disruptions. These may be caused by natural disasters, accidents, power disruptions, telecommunications failures, acts of terrorism or war, denial-of-service attacks, computer viruses, physical or electronic break-ins, or similar events or disruptions. System redundancy may be ineffective or inadequate, and the Company's disaster recovery planning may not be sufficient for all eventualities. Such failures or disruptions could prevent access to the Company's online services and preclude store transactions. System failures and disruptions could also impede the manufacturing and shipping of products, transactions processing and financial reporting. Additionally, we may be materially adversely affected if we are unable to improve, upgrade, maintain, and expand our systems.

***Changes in newspaper subscription rates may result in reduced exposure to our circular advertisements.***

A substantial portion of our promotional activities utilize circular advertisements in local newspapers. A continued decline in consumer subscriptions of these newspapers could reduce the frequency with which consumers receive our circular advertisements, thereby negatively affecting sales, results of operations and cash flow.

***Changes in regulations or enforcement, or our failure to comply with existing or future regulations, may adversely impact our business.***

We are subject to federal, state, provincial and local regulations with respect to our operations in the U.S. and Canada. There are a number of legislative and regulatory initiatives that could adversely impact our business if they are enacted or enforced. Those initiatives include wage or workforce issues (such as minimum-wage requirements, overtime and other working conditions and citizenship requirements), collective bargaining matters, environmental regulation, price and promotion regulation, trade regulations and others.

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, which was signed into law on March 23, 2010, may increase our annual associate health care costs. Proposed changes in tax regulations may also change our effective tax rate as our business is subject to a combination of applicable tax rates in the various countries, states and other jurisdictions in which we operate. New accounting pronouncements and interpretations of existing accounting rules and practices have occurred and may occur in the future. A

Table of Contents

change in accounting standards or practices can have a significant effect on our reported results of operations. Failure to comply with legal requirements could result in, among other things, increased litigation risk that could affect us adversely by subjecting us to significant monetary damages and other remedies or by increasing our litigation expenses, administrative enforcement actions, fines and civil and criminal liability. For example, in fiscal 2012, we settled a pricing and promotion investigation by the New York State Attorney General's office through the payment of a fine and other consideration pursuant to an Assurance of Discontinuance, and could be subject to similar investigations, as well as lawsuits, in the future. We are currently subject to various class action lawsuits alleging violations of wage and workforce laws and similar matters (see "Business Legal Proceedings"). If such issues become more expensive to address, or if new issues arise, they could increase our expenses, generate negative publicity, or otherwise adversely affect us.

***Our debt agreements contain restrictions that limit our flexibility in operating our business.***

Our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and the indentures governing our notes contain various covenants that limit our ability to engage in specified types of transactions. These covenants limit the ability of the relevant borrowers, issuers, guarantors and their restricted subsidiaries to, among other things:

incur or guarantee additional debt;

pay dividends or distributions on our capital stock or redeem, repurchase or retire our capital stock or indebtedness;

issue stock of subsidiaries;

make certain investments, loans, advances and acquisitions;

create liens on our assets to secure debt;

enter into transactions with affiliates;

merge or consolidate with another company; and

sell or otherwise transfer assets.

In addition, under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, MSI is required to meet specified financial ratios in order to undertake certain actions, and under our Restated Revolving Credit Facility, MSI is required to meet specified financial ratios in order to undertake certain actions, and under certain circumstances, MSI may be required to maintain a specified fixed charge coverage ratio. Our ability to meet those tests can be affected by events beyond our control, and we cannot assure you we will meet them. A breach of any of these covenants could result in a default under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities, which could also lead to an event of default under our notes if any of the Senior Secured Credit Facilities were accelerated. Upon the occurrence of an event of default under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities, the lenders could elect to declare all amounts outstanding under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities to be immediately due and payable and terminate all commitments to extend further credit. If we were unable to repay those amounts, the lenders under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities could proceed against the collateral granted to them to secure such indebtedness. Holdings, MSI and certain of MSI's subsidiaries have pledged substantially all of their assets, including the capital stock of MSI and certain of its subsidiaries, as collateral under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities. If the indebtedness under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities or our notes were to be accelerated, our assets may not be sufficient to repay such indebtedness in full. See "Description of Certain Indebtedness."

Table of Contents

***Disruptions in the capital markets could increase our costs of doing business.***

Any disruption in the capital markets could make it difficult for us to raise additional capital when needed, or to eventually refinance our existing indebtedness on acceptable terms or at all. Similarly, if our suppliers face challenges in obtaining credit when needed, or otherwise face difficult business conditions, they may become unable to offer us the merchandise we use in our business thereby causing reductions in our revenues, or they may demand more favorable payment terms, all of which could adversely affect our results of operations, cash flows and financial condition.

***Our real estate leases generally obligate us for long periods, which subject us to various financial risks.***

We lease virtually all of our store, distribution center, and administrative locations, generally for long terms. While we have the right to terminate some of our leases under specified conditions by making specified payments, we may not be able to terminate a particular lease if or when we would like to do so. If we decide to close stores, we are generally required to continue paying rent and operating expenses for the balance of the lease term, or paying to exercise rights to terminate, and the performance of any of these obligations may be expensive. When we assign or sublease vacated locations, we may remain liable on the lease obligations if the assignee or sublessee does not perform. In addition, when leases for the stores in our ongoing operations expire, we may be unable to negotiate renewals, either on commercially acceptable terms, or at all, which could cause us to close stores. Accordingly, we are subject to the risks associated with leasing real estate, which can have a material adverse effect on our results.

***We have co-sourced certain of our information technology, accounts payable, payroll, accounting and human resources functions and may co-source other administrative functions, which makes us more dependent upon third parties.***

We place significant reliance on third-party providers for the co-sourcing of certain of our information technology ("IT"), accounts payable, payroll, accounting and human resources functions. This co-sourcing initiative is a component of our ongoing strategy to increase efficiencies, increase our IT capabilities, monitor our costs and seek additional cost savings. These functions are generally performed in offshore locations, with Michaels oversight. As a result, we are relying on third parties to ensure that certain functional needs are sufficiently met. This reliance subjects us to risks arising from the loss of control over these processes, changes in pricing that may affect our operating results, and potentially, termination of provision of these services by our suppliers. If our service providers fail to perform, we may have difficulty arranging for an alternate supplier or rebuilding our own internal resources, and we could incur significant costs, all of which may have a significant adverse effect on our business. We may co-source other administrative functions in the future, which would further increase our reliance on third parties. Further, the use of offshore service providers may expose us to risks related to local political, economic, social or environmental conditions (including acts of terrorism, the outbreak of war, or the occurrence of natural disaster), restrictive actions by foreign governments or changes in U.S. laws and regulations. The success of our e-commerce platform, launched in 2014, is in part dependent on such co-sourced resources and therefore might impact these risks.

***We are exposed to fluctuations in exchange rates between the U.S. and Canadian dollar, which is the functional currency of our Canadian subsidiary.***

Our Canadian operating subsidiary purchases inventory in U.S. dollars, which is sold in Canadian dollars and exposes us to foreign exchange rate fluctuations. As well, our customers at border locations can be sensitive to cross-border price differences. Substantial foreign currency fluctuations could adversely affect our business.

Table of Contents

***We are dependent upon the services of our senior management team.***

We are dependent on the services, abilities and experience of our executive officers, including Carl S. Rubin, our Chief Executive Officer, and Charles M. Sonstebly, our Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer. The permanent loss of the services of any of these senior executives and any change in the composition of our senior management team could have a negative impact on our ability to execute on our business and operating strategies.

***Failure to attract and retain quality sales, distribution center and other associates in appropriate numbers as well as experienced buying and management personnel could adversely affect our performance.***

Our performance depends on recruiting, developing, training and retaining quality sales, distribution center and other associates in large numbers as well as experienced buying and management personnel. Many of our store level associates are in entry level or part-time positions with historically high rates of turnover. Our ability to meet our labor needs while controlling labor costs is subject to external factors such as unemployment levels, prevailing wage rates, minimum wage legislation, changing demographics, health and other insurance costs and governmental labor and employment requirements. In the event of increasing wage rates, if we fail to increase our wages competitively, the quality of our workforce could decline, causing our customer service to suffer, while increasing our wages could cause our earnings to decrease. The market for retail management is highly competitive and, similar to other retailers, we face challenges in securing sufficient management talent. If we do not continue to attract, train and retain quality associates and management personnel, our performance could be adversely affected.

***Our results may be adversely affected by serious disruptions or catastrophic events, including geo-political events and weather.***

Unforeseen public health issues, such as pandemics and epidemics, and geo-political events, such as civil unrest in a country in which our suppliers are located or terrorist or military activities disrupting transportation, communication or utility systems, as well as natural disasters such as hurricanes, tornadoes, floods, earthquakes and other adverse weather and climate conditions, whether occurring in the United States or abroad, particularly during peak seasonal periods, could disrupt our operations or the operations of one or more of our vendors or could severely damage or destroy one or more of our stores or distribution facilities located in the affected areas. For example, day-to-day operations, particularly our ability to receive products from our vendors or transport products to our stores could be adversely affected, or we could be required to close stores or distribution centers in the affected areas or in areas served by the affected distribution center. These factors could also cause consumer confidence and spending to decrease or result in increased volatility in the U.S. and global financial markets and economy. Such occurrences could significantly impact our operating results and financial performance. For example, during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2012, our Net sales were adversely affected by Hurricane Sandy.

***Our holding company structure makes us, and certain of our direct and indirect subsidiaries, dependent on the operations of our, and their, subsidiaries to meet our financial obligations.***

We, and certain of our direct and indirect subsidiaries, have no significant assets other than our, and their, interest in our, and their, direct and indirect subsidiaries, including MSI. As a result, we, and certain of our direct and indirect subsidiaries, rely exclusively upon payments, dividends and distributions from our, and their, direct and indirect subsidiaries for our, and their, cash flows. Our ability to pay dividends, if any are declared, to our shareholders is dependent on the ability of our subsidiaries to generate sufficient net income and cash flows to pay upstream dividends and make loans or loan repayments.

Table of Contents

*We are controlled by the Sponsors, whose interests may conflict with yours and those of our Company.*

We are currently controlled, and after this offering is completed will continue to be controlled, by the Sponsors. Upon completion of this offering, investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors will beneficially own 73% of our outstanding common stock (72% if the underwriters exercise in full their option to purchase additional shares from the selling stockholders). For as long as the Sponsors continue to beneficially own a majority of the outstanding shares of our Common Stock, they will be able to direct the election of all of the members of our Board of Directors ("Board") and could exercise a controlling influence over our business and affairs, including any determinations with respect to mergers or other business combinations, the acquisition or disposition of assets, the incurrence of indebtedness, the issuance of any additional Common Stock or other equity securities, the repurchase or redemption of Common Stock and the payment of dividends. Similarly, the Sponsors will have the power to determine matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders without the consent of our other stockholders, will have the power to prevent a change in our control and could take other actions that might be favorable to them. Even if their ownership falls below a majority, so long as the Sponsors continue to hold a significant portion of our outstanding Common Stock, the Sponsors may continue to be able to strongly influence or effectively control our decisions. Additionally, the Sponsors are in the business of making investments in companies and may acquire and hold interests in businesses that compete directly or indirectly with us. One or more of the Sponsors may also pursue acquisition opportunities that may be complementary to our business and, as a result, those acquisition opportunities may not be available to us.

**Risk factors relating to this offering and ownership of our Common Stock**

*We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market and, as a result, rely on exemptions from certain corporate governance requirements. You will not have the same protections as those afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to such governance requirements.*

We are a "controlled company" within the meaning of the corporate governance standards of The NASDAQ Stock Market and we expect that, after the completion of this offering, the Sponsors will continue to control a majority of the voting power of our outstanding Common Stock. Under The NASDAQ Stock Market rules, a company of which more than 50% of the voting power is held by an individual, group or another company is a "controlled company" and may elect not to comply with certain corporate governance requirements, including:

the requirement that a majority of our Board consist of independent directors;

the requirement that we have a Nominating Committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the Committee's purpose and responsibilities; and

the requirement that we have a Compensation Committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the committee's purpose and responsibilities.

We will continue to utilize these exemptions. As a result, we do not have a majority of independent directors and our Compensation Committee does not consist entirely of independent directors. Accordingly, you will not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the corporate governance requirements of The NASDAQ Stock Market.

The Sponsors are not subject to any contractual obligation to retain their controlling interest, except that they have agreed, subject to certain exceptions, not to sell or otherwise dispose of any shares of our Common Stock or other securities exercisable or convertible into our Common Stock for a period of at

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

least 90 days after the date of this prospectus without the prior written consent of J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. There can be no assurance as to the period of time during which any of the Sponsors will in fact maintain its ownership of our Common Stock following the offering.

***Our stock price could be extremely volatile and may decline and, as a result, you may not be able to resell your shares at or above the price you paid for them.***

Since listing our Common Stock on The NASDAQ Global Select Market in June 2014 in connection with our initial public offering, the price of our Common Stock has ranged from a low of \$14.51 on August 1, 2014 to a high of \$25.60 on January 8, 2015. In addition, the stock market in general has been highly volatile. As a result, the market price of our Common Stock is likely to be similarly volatile, and investors in our Common Stock may experience a decrease, which could be substantial, in the value of their stock, including decreases unrelated to our operating performance or prospects, and could lose part or all of their investment. The price of our Common Stock could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to a number of factors, including those described elsewhere in this prospectus and others such as:

variations in our operating performance and the performance of our competitors;

actual or anticipated fluctuations in our quarterly or annual operating results;

publication of research reports by securities analysts about us or our competitors or our industry;

our failure or the failure of our competitors to meet analysts' projections or guidance that we or our competitors may give to the market;

additions and departures of key personnel;

strategic decisions by us or our competitors, such as acquisitions, divestitures, spin-offs, joint ventures, strategic investments or changes in business strategy;

the passage of legislation or other regulatory developments affecting us or our industry;

speculation in the press or investment community;

changes in accounting principles;

terrorist acts, acts of war or periods of widespread civil unrest;

natural disasters and other calamities; and

changes in general market and economic conditions.

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been initiated against companies following periods of volatility in their stock price. This type of litigation could result in substantial costs and divert our management's attention and resources, and could also require us to make substantial payments to satisfy judgments or to settle litigation.

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

*Your percentage ownership in us may be diluted by future issuances of capital stock, which could reduce your influence over matters on which stockholders vote.*

Our Board has the authority, without action or vote of our stockholders, to issue all or any part of our authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock, including shares issuable upon the exercise of options, or shares of our authorized but unissued preferred stock. Issuances of Common Stock or voting preferred stock would reduce your influence over matters on which our stockholders vote, and, in the case of

Table of Contents

issuances of preferred stock, would likely result in your interest in us being subject to the prior rights of holders of that preferred stock.

***There may be sales of a substantial amount of our Common Stock after this offering by our current stockholders, and these sales could cause the price of our Common Stock to fall.***

As of January 3, 2015, there were 204,303,715 shares of Common Stock outstanding. Of our issued and outstanding shares, all the Common Stock sold in our initial public offering or this offering will be freely transferable, except for any shares held by our "affiliates", as that term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"). Following completion of this offering, approximately 78% of our outstanding Common Stock will be held by investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors, Highfields and members of our management and employees.

Each of our directors, executive officers and significant equity holders (including affiliates of the Sponsors) have entered into a lock-up agreement with J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. on behalf of the underwriters which restricts their sales of our Common Stock for a period of 90 days after the date of this prospectus, subject to certain exceptions and automatic extensions in certain circumstances.

Sales of substantial amounts of our Common Stock in the public market after this offering, or the perception that such sales will occur, could adversely affect the market price of our Common Stock and make it difficult for us to raise funds through securities offerings in the future. Of the shares to be outstanding after the offering, the shares sold in our initial public offering and the shares offered by this prospectus will be eligible for immediate sale in the public market without restriction by persons other than our affiliates. Our remaining outstanding shares will become available for resale in the public market as shown in the chart below, subject to the provisions of Rule 144 and Rule 701.

Number of shares	Date available for resale
41,824,287	On the date of this offering ( , 2015)
162,479,428	90 days after this offering ( , 2015), subject to certain exceptions and automatic extensions in certain circumstances

Beginning 90 days after this offering, subject to certain exceptions and automatic extensions in certain circumstances, certain holders of shares of our Common Stock may require us to register their shares for resale under the federal securities laws, and holders of additional shares of our Common Stock would be entitled to have their shares included in any such registration statement, all subject to reduction upon the request of the underwriter of the offering, if any. Registration of those shares would allow the holders to immediately resell their shares in the public market. Any such sales or anticipation thereof could cause the market price of our Common Stock to decline.

In addition, we have registered shares of Common Stock that are reserved for issuance under our 2014 Omnibus Plan.

***Provisions in our charter documents and Delaware law may deter takeover efforts that may be beneficial to stockholder value.***

In addition to the Sponsors' beneficial ownership of a controlling percentage of our Common Stock, Delaware law and provisions in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws could make it harder for a third party to acquire us, even if doing so might be beneficial to our stockholders. These provisions include limitations on actions by our stockholders. In addition, our Board has the right to issue preferred stock without stockholder approval that could be used to dilute a potential hostile acquiror. Our certificate of

Table of Contents

incorporation imposes some restrictions on mergers and other business combinations between us and any holder of 15% or more of our outstanding Common Stock other than the Sponsors. As a result, you may lose your ability to sell your stock for a price in excess of the prevailing market price due to these protective measures and efforts by stockholders to change the direction or management of the company may be unsuccessful. See "Description of Capital Stock".

***Our certificate of incorporation designates the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware as the sole and exclusive forum for certain types of actions and proceedings that may be initiated by our stockholders, which could limit our stockholders' ability to obtain a favorable judicial forum for disputes with us or our directors, officers or employees.***

Our certificate of incorporation provides that, subject to limited exceptions, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the sole and exclusive forum for (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee to us or our stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against us arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or our certificate of incorporation or the bylaws or (iv) any action asserting a claim against us governed by the internal affairs doctrine. Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in shares of our capital stock shall be deemed to have notice of and to have consented to the provisions of our certificate of incorporation described above. This choice of forum provision may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers or other employees, which may discourage such lawsuits against us and our directors, officers and employees. Alternatively, if a court were to find these provisions of our certificate of incorporation inapplicable to, or unenforceable in respect of, one or more of the specified types of actions or proceedings, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such matters in other jurisdictions, which could adversely affect our business and financial condition.

***If you purchase shares in this offering, you will suffer immediate and substantial dilution.***

If you purchase shares of our Common Stock in this offering, you will incur immediate and substantial dilution in the as adjusted book value of your stock, which dilution would have been \$(34.69) per share as of November 1, 2014, based on an assumed public offering price of \$22.89 (the closing price of our Common Stock on January 16, 2015) because the price that you pay will be substantially greater than the net tangible book value per share of the shares you acquire. You will experience additional dilution upon the exercise of options to purchase our Common Stock, including those options currently outstanding and those granted in the future, and the issuance of restricted stock or other equity awards under our stock incentive plans. To the extent we raise additional capital by issuing equity securities, our stockholders will experience substantial additional dilution.

***Because our executive officers hold or may hold restricted stock or option awards that will vest upon a change of control, these officers may have interests in us that conflict with yours.***

As of November 1, 2014, our executive officers hold, in the aggregate, 839,749 shares of restricted stock and options to purchase 2,725,421 shares that would automatically vest upon a change of control. See "Executive Compensation Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control" for additional information. As a result, these officers may view certain change of control transactions more favorably than an investor in this offering due to the vesting opportunities available to them and, as a result, may have an economic incentive to support a transaction that you may not believe to be favorable to stockholders who purchased shares in this offering. This offering will not constitute a change of control for purposes of the relevant awards and agreements.

Table of Contents

***The Sponsors will continue to have significant influence over us after this offering, including control over decisions that require the approval of stockholders, which could limit your ability to influence the outcome of key transactions, including a change of control.***

We are currently controlled, and after this offering is completed will continue to be controlled, by the Sponsors who currently own approximately 80% of our Common Stock in the aggregate. Upon the completion of this offering, investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors will beneficially own approximately 73% of our outstanding Common Stock (approximately 72% if the underwriters exercise in full the option to purchase additional shares from the selling stockholders). For as long as the Sponsors continue to beneficially own shares of Common Stock representing more than 50% of the voting power of our Common Stock, they will be able to direct the election of all of the members of our Board of Directors and could exercise a controlling influence over our business and affairs, including any determinations with respect to mergers or other business combinations, the acquisition or disposition of assets, the incurrence of indebtedness, the issuance of any additional Common Stock or other equity securities, the repurchase or redemption of Common Stock and the payment of dividends. Similarly, these entities will have the power to determine matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders without the consent of our other stockholders, will have the power to prevent a change in our control and could take other actions that might be favorable to them. Even if their ownership falls below 50%, the Sponsors may continue to be able to strongly influence or effectively control our decisions so long as they continue to hold a significant portion of our Common Stock. In addition, each of the Sponsors will have a contractual right to nominate three directors to our Board for as long as such Sponsor owns at least 25% of our outstanding Common Stock, two directors for so long as such Sponsor owns at least 10% of our outstanding Common Stock and one director for so long as such Sponsor owns at least 3% of our outstanding Common Stock.

Additionally, the Sponsors are in the business of making investments in companies and may acquire and hold interests in businesses that compete directly or indirectly with us. One or more of the Sponsors may also pursue acquisition opportunities that may be complementary to our business and, as a result, those acquisition opportunities may not be available to us.

***Because we have no current plans to pay cash dividends on our Common Stock for the foreseeable future, you may not receive any return on investment unless you sell your Common Stock for a price greater than you paid.***

We may retain future earnings, if any, for future operation, expansion and debt repayment and have no current plans to pay any cash dividends for the foreseeable future. Any decision to declare and pay dividends in the future will be made at the discretion of our Board and will depend on, among other things, our results of operations, financial condition, cash requirements, contractual restrictions and other factors that our Board may deem relevant. In addition, our ability to pay dividends may be limited by covenants of any existing and future outstanding indebtedness we or our subsidiaries incur, including our Senior Secured Credit Facilities. As a result, you may not receive any return on an investment in our Common Stock unless you sell our Common Stock for a price greater than you paid.

Table of Contents

## Cautionary note regarding forward-looking statements

This prospectus contains forward-looking statements within the meaning of federal securities laws that relate to future events or our future financial performance. In many cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terminology such as "aim", "anticipate", "assume", "believe", "can have", "continue", "could", "due", "estimate", "expect", "forecast", "goal", "intend", "likely", "may", "objective", "outlook", "plan", "potential", "positioned", "predict", "pro forma", "project", "should", "target", "will", "would" or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology. These forward-looking statements are made based on our management's expectations and beliefs concerning future events affecting us and are subject to uncertainties and factors relating to our operations and business environment, all of which are difficult to predict and many of which are beyond our control. These uncertainties and other factors could cause our actual results to differ materially from those matters expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements.

Although we believe that the expectations reflected in the forward-looking statements are reasonable, we cannot guarantee future results, levels of activity, performance or achievements. Important factors that may cause actual results to differ materially from the results expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements are set forth under "Risk Factors". All forward-looking statements in this prospectus are based on information available to us on the date of this prospectus. We undertake no obligation, except as may be required by law, to publicly update or revise any of the forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

Some of the important factors that could cause our actual results, performance or financial condition to differ materially from expectations are:

general economic factors and changes in consumer preference may adversely affect our performance and could materially adversely affect our sales, results of operations and cash flow;

our substantial debt could adversely affect our ability to raise additional capital to fund our operations, limit our ability to react to changes in the economy or our industry, expose us to interest rate risk, prevent us from meeting our obligations under our notes and credit facilities and limit our flexibility in operating our business;

a failure to adequately maintain security and prevent unauthorized access to electronic and other confidential information, which could result in additional Company data breaches, could materially adversely affect our reputation, financial condition and operating results;

competition, including Internet-based competition, could negatively impact our business;

our significant reliance on foreign suppliers, particularly those located in China, increases our risk of obtaining adequate, timely, and cost-effective product supplies;

even if we are able to substantially continue our strategy of expanding our store base, our success will depend on how well we manage our business;

damage to the reputations of the Michaels brand or our private and exclusive brands could adversely affect sales;

our fourth quarter has historically been our highest quarter for sales and profitability, and a weak fourth quarter could have material adverse impacts on us;

Table of Contents

our promotional and merchandising programs are dependent on consumer responses, which could be unfavorable or unexpected, adversely impacting our sales;

our holding company structure makes us, and certain of our direct and indirect subsidiaries, dependent on the operations of our, and their, subsidiaries to meet our, and their, financial obligations; and

investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors will have the ability to control the outcome of matters submitted for stockholder approval and they may have interests that differ from those of our other stockholders.

The above is not a complete list of factors or events that could cause actual results to differ from our expectations, and it is not possible for us to predict all of them. We derive many of our forward-looking statements from our own operating budgets and forecasts, which are based upon many detailed assumptions. While we believe that our assumptions are reasonable, we caution that it is very difficult to predict the impact of known factors, and it is impossible for us to anticipate all factors that could affect our actual results. Important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from our expectations, or cautionary statements, are disclosed under "Risk Factors" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" in this prospectus. All written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us, or persons acting on our behalf, are expressly qualified in their entirety by the cautionary statements contained in this prospectus as well as other cautionary statements that are made from time to time in our other Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") filings and public communications. You should evaluate all forward-looking statements made in this prospectus in the context of these risks and uncertainties.

Potential investors and other readers are urged to consider these factors carefully in evaluating the forward-looking statements and are cautioned not to place undue reliance on the forward-looking statements. These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this prospectus. Except as required by law, we undertake no obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statements publicly whether as a result of new information, future developments or otherwise.

Table of Contents

## **Use of proceeds**

We will not receive any proceeds from the sale of shares of our common stock in this offering.

Table of Contents**Market price of our common stock**

Our common stock has been listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "MIK" since June 27, 2014. Prior to that time, there was no public market for our common stock. The following table sets forth for the periods indicated the high and low sales prices per share of our common stock as reported on The NASDAQ Global Select Market:

	<b>High</b>	<b>Low</b>
<b>2014:</b>		
Second quarter(1)	\$ 17.28	\$ 14.51
Third quarter	\$ 18.50	\$ 14.64
Fourth quarter (through January 16, 2015)	\$ 25.60	\$ 17.82

(1) Represents the period from June 27, 2014, the date on which our common stock first began to trade on The NASDAQ Global Select Market after pricing our initial public offering, through August 2, 2014, the end of our second quarter.

A recent reported closing price for our common stock is set forth on the cover page of this prospectus. Wells Fargo Transfer Agent Services is the transfer agent and registrar for our common stock. As of January 3, 2015, there were 75 holders of record of our common stock.

Table of Contents

**Dividend policy**

The Company does not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the near future. Instead, we anticipate that all of our earnings for the foreseeable future will be used to repay debt, for working capital, to support our operations and to finance the growth and development of our business. Any future determination to pay dividends will be at the discretion of our Board, subject to compliance with applicable law and any contractual provisions, including under agreements for indebtedness, that restrict or limit our ability to pay dividends, and will depend upon, among other factors, our results of operations, financial condition, earnings, capital requirements and other factors that our Board may deem relevant. For additional information concerning restrictions relating to agreements for indebtedness, see "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations Liquidity and Capital Resources."

In July 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. issued the Holdco Notes. FinCo Holdings distributed the proceeds, net of expenses, to us. We used this cash to pay a cash dividend, distribution and other payments to our equity and equity award holders of approximately \$781 million (excluding approximately \$2 million currently held in escrow for the benefit of holders of restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock) and pay related fees and expenses.

Table of Contents**Capitalization**

The following table sets forth our cash, cash equivalents and capitalization as of November 1, 2014:

on an actual basis; and

on an as adjusted basis to give effect to the redemption of \$180 million principal amount of Holdco Notes on December 10, 2014.

You should read the following table together with our Consolidated Financial Statements and the related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus and the sections of this prospectus titled "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and "Selected Historical Consolidated Financial and Operating Data".

(In millions, except share data)	As of November 1, 2014	
	Actual	As adjusted
Cash and cash equivalents(1)	\$ 194	\$ 6
Restated Term Loan Credit Facility	\$ 2,460	\$ 2,460
Restated Revolving Credit Facility		
Holdco Notes due 2018	361	181
Senior Subordinated Notes due 2020	515	515
Total debt	3,336	3,156
Stockholders' deficit:		
Common Stock \$0.06775 par value; 350,000,000 shares authorized and 204,241,913 shares issued and outstanding	14	14
Additional paid-in capital	549	549
Accumulated deficit(2)	(2,830)	(2,834)
Accumulated other comprehensive (loss)	(2)	(2)
Total stockholders' deficit	\$ (2,269)	\$ (2,273)
Total capitalization	\$ 1,067	\$ 883

(1) Reflects approximately \$8.4 million of redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including the redemption date of our Holdco Notes, paid on December 10, 2014.

(2) Reflects approximately \$4.0 million of debt extinguishment costs, net of tax, related to the redemption of the Holdco Notes, recorded as of December 10, 2014.

Table of Contents

**Selected historical consolidated financial and operating data**

The following table sets forth our selected historical consolidated financial and operating data as of the dates and for the periods indicated. Our selected historical consolidated balance sheet data as of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, and our selected historical consolidated results of operations data and cash flow data for each of the three years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012, respectively, have been derived from our audited Consolidated Financial Statements, which are included elsewhere in this prospectus. Other operating data included in the table is unaudited for all periods presented. The selected historical consolidated results of operations, cash flow data and balance sheet data presented as of and for the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 are derived from our unaudited Consolidated Financial Statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. The results of operations for any period are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any future period.

We operate on a fiscal calendar, which in a given fiscal year consists of a 52- or 53-week period ending on the Saturday closest to January 31. Fiscal 2013 is the 52-week period ended February 1, 2014, and fiscal 2012 is the 53-week period ended February 2, 2013. Fiscal 2011 ended on January 28, 2012, fiscal 2010 ended on January 29, 2011 and fiscal 2009 ended on January 30, 2010; all of which are 52-week periods. References to the "nine months ended November 1, 2014" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and references to the "nine months ended November 2, 2013" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 2, 2013.

The historical results presented below are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any future period. The following summaries of our consolidated financial and operating data for the periods presented should be read in conjunction with "Risk Factors", "Capitalization", "Management's Discussion

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and our Consolidated Financial Statements and the related notes, which are included elsewhere in this prospectus.

(in millions, except earnings per common share, other operating and store count data)	Fiscal year(1)				Nine months ended		
	2013	2012	2011	2010	November 2009	November 2014	November 2, 2013
<b>Results of Operations Data:</b>							
Net sales	\$ 4,570	\$ 4,408	\$ 4,210	\$ 4,031	\$ 3,888	\$ 3,130	\$ 3,015
Operating income	610	592	538	488	397	333	334
Interest expense	215	245	254	276	257	159	154
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt(2)	14	33	18	53		68	7
Net income	243	200	157	103	103	61	110
Comprehensive income	237	200	156	104	104	59	108
Earnings per Common Shares, basic	\$ 1.39	\$ 1.14	\$ 0.90	\$ 0.59	\$ 0.59	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.63
Earnings per Common Share, diluted	\$ 1.36	\$ 1.12	\$ 0.89	\$ 0.58	\$ 0.59	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.62
Weighted average shares used in computing per share amounts, basic	174.8	174.7	174.6	174.8	174.7	187.8	174.8
Weighted average shares used in computing per share amounts, diluted	178.7	178.2	176.7	176.1	174.8	191.6	178.7
<b>Balance Sheet Data:</b>							
Cash and equivalents	\$ 239	\$ 56	\$ 371	\$ 319	\$ 217	\$ 194	\$ 73
Merchandise inventories	901	862	845	826	873	1,116	1,119
Total current assets	1,276	1,044	1,339	1,271	1,199	1,488	1,349
Total assets	1,811	1,555	1,838	1,780	1,722	2,030	1,880
Total current liabilities	826	856	861	685	719	1,079	1,056
Current portion of long-term debt	16	150	127	1	119	205	203
Long-term debt	3,678	2,891	3,363	3,667	3,684	3,131	3,678
Total liabilities	4,593	3,859	4,339	4,434	4,488	4,299	4,850
Stockholders' deficit	(2,782)	(2,304)	(2,501)	(2,654)	(2,766)	(2,269)	(2,970)
<b>Cash Flow Data:</b>							
Cash flows provided by (used in) operating activities	\$ 449	\$ 299	\$ 409	\$ 438	\$ 405	\$ 36	\$ 69
Cash flows used in investing activities	(112)	(124)	(109)	(83)	(43)	(103)	(82)
Cash flows (used in) provided by financing activities	(154)	(490)	(248)	(253)	(178)	22	30
<b>Other Operating Data:</b>							
Average net sales per selling square foot(3)	\$ 218	\$ 215	\$ 212	\$ 205	\$ 201		
Comparable store sales increase (decrease)(4)	2.9%	1.5%	3.2%	2.5%	0.2%	1.9%	2.1%
Total selling square footage (in millions)	21.1	20.6	20.1	19.9	19.6	21.6	21.1
<b>Stores Open at End of Period:</b>							
Michaels	1,136	1,099	1,064	1,045	1,023	1,166	1,137
Aaron Brothers	121	125	134	137	152	121	122
Total stores open at end of period	1,257	1,224	1,198	1,182	1,175	1,287	1,259

(1) Fiscal 2012 consisted of 53 weeks while all other fiscal years presented consisted of 52 weeks.

(2) Fiscal 2013 refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt include \$7 million of refinancing costs associated with our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and a \$7 million loss related to the redemption of \$137 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. Fiscal 2012 refinancing costs and losses on early

extinguishments of debt include \$12 million of refinancing costs associated with our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, an \$8 million loss related to our amended and restated senior secured term loan facility and prepayment of our B-1 Term Loans, an \$11 million loss related to the redemption of our remaining outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes and a \$2 million loss related to our senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. Fiscal 2011 refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt include an \$18 million loss related to the early extinguishment of \$163 million face value, or \$155 million accreted value, of our outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes and \$7 million face value of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. Fiscal 2010 refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt include a \$53 million loss related to the early extinguishment of our 10% Senior Notes due November 1, 2014 ("2014 Senior Notes"). During the nine months ended November 1, 2014, we recorded a loss on the early extinguishment of debt of \$56 million (\$35 million, net of tax) related to the redemption of the 2018 Senior Notes and a loss on the early

Table of Contents

extinguishment of debt of \$12 million (\$7.5 million, net of tax) related to the redemption of the Holdco Notes in accordance with ASC 470, and a write off of \$5 million of unamortized net premiums.

(3) The calculation of average net sales per selling square foot includes only Michaels comparable stores, as defined below. Aaron Brothers, which is a smaller store model, is excluded from the calculation.

(4) Comparable store sales increase (decrease) represents the increase (decrease) in net sales for stores open the same number of months in the indicated and comparable period of the previous year, including stores that were relocated or expanded during either period as well as e-commerce sales. A store is deemed to become comparable in its 14th month of operation in order to eliminate grand opening sales distortions. A store temporarily closed more than two weeks is not considered comparable during the month it is closed. If a store is closed longer than two weeks but less than two months, it becomes comparable in the month in which it reopens, subject to a mid-month convention. A store closed longer than two months becomes comparable in its 14th month of operation after its reopening.

Table of Contents

## **Management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations**

*The following discussion should be read in conjunction with our Consolidated Financial Statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. The following discussion, as well as other portions of this prospectus, contains forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, and beliefs. Any statements contained herein (including, but not limited to, statements to the effect that Michaels or its management "anticipates," "plans," "estimates," "expects," "believes," "intends," and other similar expressions) that are not statements of historical fact should be considered forward-looking statements and should be read in conjunction with our Consolidated Financial Statements and related notes contained elsewhere in this prospectus. Specific examples of forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements regarding our forecasts of financial performance, capital expenditures, working capital requirements, and forecasts of effective tax rate. Our actual results could materially differ from those discussed in these forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to such differences include, but are not limited to, those discussed below and elsewhere in this prospectus, and particularly in "Risk Factors" and "Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."*

*We report on the basis of a 52- or 53-week fiscal year, which ends on the Saturday closest to January 31. References to a fiscal year mean the year in which that fiscal year began. References herein to "fiscal 2014" relate to the 52 weeks ending January 31, 2015, references to "fiscal 2013" relate to the 52 weeks ended February 1, 2014, references to "fiscal 2012" relate to the 53 weeks ended February 2, 2013 and references to "fiscal 2011" relate to the 52 weeks ended January 28, 2012. In addition, all references herein to "the third quarter of fiscal 2014" relate to the 13 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and all references to "the third quarter of fiscal 2013" relate to the 13 weeks ended November 2, 2013. Finally, all references to "the nine months ended November 1, 2014" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and the "the nine months ended November 2, 2013" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 2, 2013. Because of the seasonal nature of our business, the results of operations for the 13 and 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014 are not indicative of the results to be expected for the entire year.*

*Our discussion of financial information for fiscal 2013 includes data from the period preceding the Reorganization (February 3, 2013 to July 21, 2013) and data from the period following the Reorganization (July 22, 2013 to February 1, 2014) on a combined basis.*

### **How we assess the performance of our business**

In assessing our performance, we consider a variety of performance and financial measures. The key measures we assess to evaluate the performance of our business are set forth below:

*Net sales* Our Net sales are comprised of gross sales, net of merchandise returns, coupons and discounts.

*Comparable store sales* Comparable store sales increase (decrease) represents the increase (decrease) in Net sales for stores open the same number of months in the indicated and comparable period of the previous year, including stores that were relocated or expanded during either period, as well as e-commerce operations. A store is included in comparable store sales in its 14<sup>th</sup> month of operation, which is when we believe comparability is achieved. When a store that is included in comparable store sales is relocated or remodeled, we continue to consider sales from that store to be comparable store sales at the time of opening. A store temporarily closed more than two weeks is not considered comparable during the month it is closed. If a store is closed longer than two weeks but less than two months, it becomes comparable in the month in which it reopens, subject to mid-month convention. A store closed longer than

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

two months becomes comparable in its 14<sup>th</sup> month of operation after its reopening. There may be variations in the way that our competitors calculate comparable or "same store" sales. As a result, data in this prospectus regarding our comparable store sales may not be comparable to similar data made available by other retailers.

Various factors may affect comparable store sales, including:

- the number of customer transactions;
- changes in our merchandise mix;
- changes in product pricing including promotional activities;
- the level of customer service that we provide in our stores;
- our store events;
- our ability to source and receive products accurately and efficiently;
- our opening of new stores in the vicinity of our existing stores;
- the number of stores we open, remodel or relocate in any period;
- consumer preferences and buying trends;
- our competitors opening or closing stores near our stores; and
- overall economic trends and conditions.

As we continue to pursue our growth strategy, we expect a portion of our Net sales will continue to come from new stores not included in comparable store sales. Accordingly, comparable store sales is only one measure we use to assess our performance.

*Gross profit* Gross profit is equal to our Net sales less our Cost of sales and occupancy expense. Gross margin measures gross profit as a percentage of Net sales.

The following Cost of sales is included in merchandise inventories and expensed as the merchandise is sold:

- purchase price of merchandise, net of shrink, damages, vendor allowances and rebates;
- inbound freight, inspection costs, duties and import agent commissions;
- warehousing, handling and transportation costs (including internal transfer costs and related systems such as distribution center-to-store freight costs) and purchasing and receiving costs;
- internal costs of sourcing and design (including technology); and
- share-based compensation costs for those employees involved in preparing inventory for sale

Included in our occupancy expense is the following:

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

store expenses such as rent, insurance, taxes, common area maintenance, utilities, repairs and maintenance;

amortization of store buildings and leasehold improvements;

store closure costs; and

store remodel costs.

We record rent expense ratably over the term of the lease beginning with the date we take possession of or control the physical access to the premises. We record leasehold improvement reimbursements as a

Table of Contents

liability and ratably adjust the liability as a reduction to rent expense over the lease term beginning with either the date we take possession, or control of, the physical access to the premises.

The components of our Cost of sales and occupancy expense may not be comparable to our competitors. As a result, data in this prospectus regarding our gross profit and gross margin may not be comparable to similar data made available by our competitors.

*Selling, general, and administrative expense* Included in our Selling, general, and administrative costs are store personnel costs, store operating expenses, advertising expenses, store depreciation expense and corporate overhead costs.

*Operating income* Operating income consists of Gross profit less Selling, general, and administrative expense, Share-based compensation, Impairment of intangible assets, Related party expenses and Store pre-opening costs.

**Executive overview**

We believe Michaels is where creativity happens. With over \$4.5 billion in sales in fiscal 2013, we are the largest arts and crafts specialty retailer in North America based on store count. Our primary business is the operation of 1,166 Michaels stores across the United States and Canada. We also operate 121 Aaron Brothers stores, offering ready-made frames, custom framing services and art supplies. All store counts are as of November 1, 2014.

Highlights for fiscal 2013 include the following:

Net sales increased to \$4,570 million, a 3.7% improvement over fiscal 2012, which included a 53rd week, driven by comparable store sales growth and the opening of 56 new Michaels and Aaron Brothers stores, including the relocation of 14 Michaels and two Aaron Brothers stores.

In the first half of fiscal 2013, Net sales increased by \$26 million or 1.4% compared to the first half of fiscal 2012; and in the second half of fiscal 2013, Net sales increased by \$136 million, or 5.4% over the second half of fiscal 2012.

Comparable store sales increased 2.9% for fiscal 2013. Comparable store sales for the first half of fiscal 2013 decreased 1.0% and for the second half, increased 5.9%.

During the third quarter of fiscal 2013, we introduced, and are the exclusive big-box retailer of, the Rainbow Loom. In an effort to drive sales of the Rainbow Loom, we dedicated significant advertising and marketing efforts to this on-trend children's craft product. Sales of the Rainbow Loom and replacement rubber bands contributed 2.9% to our comparable stores sales increase for fiscal 2013.

Our Michaels retail stores' private brand merchandise drove 48% of Net sales in fiscal 2013 compared to 49% of Net sales in fiscal 2012.

We reported record operating income of \$610 million, an increase of 3.0% from fiscal 2012.

Net income increased by \$43 million to \$243 million. Adjusted EBITDA, a non-GAAP measure that is a required calculation in our debt agreements, improved by 6.0%, from \$747 million in fiscal 2012 to \$792 million in fiscal 2013 (see "Prospectus summary Summary consolidated financial and operating data").

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

We refinanced our remaining outstanding 2016 Subordinated Notes totaling \$256 million with \$260 million of 5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes due December 15, 2020.

We continued to build our relationship with our customers through our marketing vehicles, Internet site, mobile platform, in-store experience, and social media outlets.

Highlights for the nine months ended November 1, 2014 include the following:

We completed an initial public offering in which we issued and sold 27.8 million shares of common stock at a public offering price of \$17.00 per share.

Comparable store sales increased 1.9%.

We launched our e-commerce platform to complement our existing web and mobile platforms.

Net sales increased to \$3,130 million, a 3.8% improvement over the nine months ended November 2, 2013, driven by a \$57 million increase in comparable store sales and a \$58 million increase primarily related to 28 additional stores opened (net of closures) since November 2, 2013.

We reported operating income of \$333 million for the nine months ended November 1, 2014. Adjusted EBITDA, a non-GAAP measure that is a required calculation in our debt agreements, improved by 4.6%, from \$459 million in the nine months ended November 2, 2013 to \$480 million in the nine months ended November 1, 2014 (see "Prospectus summary Summary consolidated financial and operating data").

In the remainder of fiscal 2014 and in fiscal 2015, we intend to continue to lead industry growth and innovation through strategic initiatives such as:

making our stores more inviting to a broader set of customers, including those new to do-it-yourself projects and more experienced crafters;

enhancing our in-store shopping experience by creating a more visually appealing environment through improved signage and open sightlines to make it easier for our customers to shop;

strengthening our connections with existing customers and reaching new customers through an expanded marketing program, including print, digital, direct mail, broadcast and community events;

broadening our merchandising and sourcing capabilities to better identify and source new trends, merchandise and categories that enhance our portfolio of exclusive brands and products; and

expanding our omni-channel offering of merchandise, promotional, and marketing events.

### **Critical accounting policies and estimates**

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

We have prepared our financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP, and these financial statements necessarily include some amounts that are based on our informed judgments and estimates. Our senior management has discussed the development and selection of these critical accounting estimates, and the disclosure in this section of this prospectus regarding them, with the Audit Committee of our Board. Our significant accounting policies are discussed in Note 1 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014. Our critical accounting policies represent those policies that are subject to judgments and uncertainties. As discussed below, our financial position and results of operations may be materially different when reported under different conditions or when using different assumptions in the

Table of Contents

application of these policies. In the event estimates or assumptions prove to be different from actual amounts, adjustments are made in subsequent periods to reflect more current information. Our critical accounting policies include:

*Merchandise inventories* Merchandise inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, with cost determined using a weighted average method. Cost is calculated based upon the price paid for an item at the time it is received by us, and also includes the cost of warehousing, handling, purchasing, and importing the inventory, as well as inbound and outbound transportation, partially offset by vendor allowances. This net inventory cost is recognized through cost of sales when the inventory is sold. It is impractical for us to assign specific allocated overhead costs and vendor allowances to individual units of inventory. As such, to match net inventory costs against the related revenues, we estimate the net inventory costs to be deferred and recognized each period as the inventory is sold.

Vendor allowances, which primarily represent volume rebates and cooperative advertising funds, are recorded as a reduction of the cost of the merchandise inventories and a subsequent reduction in cost of sales when the inventory is sold. We generally earn vendor allowances as a percentage of certain merchandise purchases with no minimum purchase requirements. Typically, our vendor allowance programs extend for a period of 12 months. We recognized vendor allowances of \$102 million, or 2.2% of Net sales in fiscal 2013, \$110 million, or 2.5% of Net sales in fiscal 2012, and \$115 million, or 2.7% of Net sales in fiscal 2011. During the three fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, the number of vendors from which vendor allowances were received ranged from approximately 620 to 660. As a result of our increased direct import volume, vendor allowances, as a percentage of Net sales, have been declining and we expect this trend to continue in future years.

We utilize perpetual inventory records to value inventory in our stores. Physical inventory counts are performed in a significant number of stores during each fiscal quarter by a third-party inventory counting service. Substantially all stores open longer than one year are subject to at least one count each fiscal year. We adjust our perpetual records based on the results of the physical counts. We maintain a provision for estimated shrinkage based on the actual historical results of our physical inventories. We compare our estimates to the actual results of the physical inventory counts as they are taken and adjust the shrink estimates accordingly. A 10% change in our estimated shrinkage reserve would have affected Net income by approximately \$1 million for fiscal 2013. We also evaluate our merchandise to ensure that the expected net realizable value of the merchandise held at the end of a fiscal period exceeds cost. In the event that the expected net realizable value is less than cost, we reduce the value of that inventory accordingly. A 10% change in our inventory valuation reserve would have affected Net income by approximately \$1 million for fiscal 2013.

*Goodwill* We review goodwill for impairment each year in the fourth quarter, or more frequently if required. Beginning in fiscal 2011, in conducting our impairment review, we elected to first perform a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is more likely than not (that is, a likelihood of more than 50 percent) the fair value of our reporting units is less than its carrying value. Factors used in our qualitative assessment include, but are not limited to, macroeconomic conditions, industry and market conditions, cost factors, overall financial performance, company and reporting unit specific events, and the margin between the fair value and carrying value in recent valuations.

If, after assessing the totality of events or circumstances such as those described above, we determine that it is more likely than not that the fair value of our reporting unit is greater than its carrying amount, no further action is required. If we determine that it is more likely than not that the fair value of our reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, we will compare the reporting unit's carrying value to its

Table of Contents

estimated fair value, determined through estimated discounted future cash flows and market-based methodologies. If the carrying value exceeds the estimated fair value, we determine the fair value of all assets and liabilities of the reporting unit, including the implied fair value of goodwill. If the carrying value of goodwill exceeds the implied fair value, we recognize an impairment charge equal to the difference.

Factors used in the valuation of goodwill include, but are not limited to, management's plans for future operations, recent operating results and discounted projected future cash flows. Material assumptions used in our impairment analysis include the weighted average cost of capital percentage, terminal growth rate and forecasted long-term sales growth. During fiscal 2012, we recognized a goodwill impairment charge of \$1 million for our online scrapbooking business. See Note 10 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014 for further information. During fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2011, there was no impairment charge taken on our goodwill.

*Impairment of long-lived assets* We evaluate long-lived assets, other than goodwill and assets with indefinite lives, for indicators of impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate their carrying amounts may not be recoverable. Additionally, for store assets, we evaluate the performance of individual stores for indicators of impairment and underperforming stores are selected for further evaluation of the recoverability of the carrying amounts. The evaluation of long-lived assets is performed at the lowest level of identifiable cash flows, which is at the individual store level.

Our evaluation requires consideration of a number of factors including changes in consumer demographics and uncertain future events. Accordingly, our accounting estimates may change from period to period. These factors could cause management to conclude impairment indicators exist and require that tests be performed, which could result in a determination that the value of long-lived assets is impaired, resulting in a writedown to fair value.

Our initial indicator that store assets are considered to be recoverable is that the estimated undiscounted cash flows for the remaining lease term, assuming zero growth over current year store performance, exceed the carrying value of the assets. This evaluation is performed on stores open longer than 36 months (unless significant impairment indicators exist), as we consider a store to become mature after that time period. Any stores that do not meet the initial criteria are further evaluated taking into consideration the estimated undiscounted store-specific cash flows for the remaining lease term compared to the carrying value of the assets. To estimate store-specific future cash flows, management must make assumptions about key store variables, including sales, growth rate, gross margin, payroll and other controllable expenses. Furthermore, management considers other factors when evaluating stores for impairment, including the individual store's execution of its operating plan and other local market conditions.

An impairment is recognized once all the factors noted above are taken into consideration and it is determined the carrying amount of the store's assets are not recoverable. The impairment is based on estimated fair value of the assets, excluding assets that can be redeployed. In fiscal 2013, we recorded an impairment charge, net of tax, of approximately \$1 million. In fiscal 2012, we recorded an impairment charge, net of tax, of \$4 million related to the write off of long-lived assets associated with our online scrapbooking business. We recorded an impairment charge, net of tax, of less than \$1 million in fiscal 2011. In addition to recording impairment charges based on the previously discussed criteria, we maintain a list of stores we consider at risk and monitor those stores closely. As of February 1, 2014, we had one Michaels store which had been open longer than 36 months, which we considered at risk for impairment.

Table of Contents

*Reserve for closed facilities* We maintain a reserve for future rental obligations, carrying costs, and other closing costs related to closed facilities, primarily closed and relocated stores. In accordance with ASC 420, *Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations*, we recognize exit costs for any store closures at the time the store is closed. Such costs are recorded within the Cost of sales and occupancy expense line item on our Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

The cost of closing a store or facility is calculated as the lesser of the present value of future rental obligations remaining under the lease (less estimated sublease rental income) or the lease termination fee. The determination of the reserves is dependent on our ability to make reasonable estimates of costs to be incurred post-closure and of rental income to be received from subleases. In planning our store closures, we try to time our exits as close to the lease termination date as possible to minimize any remaining lease obligation. As of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, our reserves for closed facilities were \$5 million and \$8 million, respectively. If our estimates only included rental income under actual subleases and not potential future subleases, the reserves would increase by approximately \$4 million.

*Self-insurance* We have insurance coverage for losses in excess of self-insurance limits for medical liability, general liability and workers' compensation claims. Health care reserves are based on actual claims experience and an estimate of claims incurred but not reported. Reserves for general liability and workers' compensation are determined through the use of actuarial studies. Due to the significant judgments and estimates utilized in determining these reserves, they are subject to a high degree of variability. In the event our insurance carriers are unable to pay claims submitted to them, we would record a liability for such estimated payments we expect to incur. A 10% change in our self-insurance liability would have affected Net income by approximately \$4 million for fiscal 2013.

*Revenue recognition* Revenue from sales of our merchandise is recognized when the customer takes possession of the merchandise. Revenue is presented net of sales taxes collected. Sales related to custom framing are deferred until the order is picked up by the customer, which we estimate based on historical customer behavior. We deferred nine days of custom framing revenue at the end of fiscal 2013, 10 days at the end of fiscal 2012 and 13 days at the end of fiscal 2011. A one day change in our custom frame deferral would have had a minimal impact on our fiscal 2013 Net income. As of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, our deferred framing revenue was approximately \$9 million and \$8 million, respectively.

We allow for merchandise to be returned under most circumstances within 60 days of purchase date and provide a reserve for estimated returns. We use historical customer return behavior to estimate our reserve requirements. As of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, our sales returns reserve was approximately \$3 million.

We record a gift card liability on the date we issue the gift card to the customer. We record revenue and reduce the gift card liability as the customer redeems the gift card. The deferred revenue associated with outstanding gift cards increased \$3 million from \$33 million at February 2, 2013 to \$36 million as of February 1, 2014. We escheat the value of unredeemed gift cards where required by law. Any remaining liabilities not subject to escheatment are evaluated to determine whether the likelihood of the gift card being redeemed is remote (gift card breakage). We recognize gift card breakage as revenue, by applying our estimate of the rate of gift card breakage over the period of estimated performance. Our estimates of the gift card breakage rate are applied to the estimated amount of gift cards that are expected to go unused and that are not subject to escheatment, and such estimates are based on customers' historical redemption rates and patterns. We recognized revenue of approximately \$3 million in fiscal 2013, \$3 million in fiscal 2012 and \$1 million in fiscal 2011 related to such gift card balances. We do not believe there is a reasonable likelihood that there will be a material change in the future estimates or assumptions

Table of Contents

we use to recognize income related to unredeemed gift cards. However, if actual results are not consistent with our assumptions, we may record additional income or expense.

*Cost of sales and occupancy expense* Cost of sales and occupancy expense include the following which may not be comparable to other companies:

Cost of sales are included in merchandise inventories and expensed as the merchandise is sold. Included in our Cost of sales are the following:

purchase price of merchandise, net of vendor allowances and rebates;

inbound freight, inspection costs, duties and import agent commissions;

warehousing, handling, and transportation costs (including internal transfer costs such as distribution center-to-store freight costs) and purchasing and receiving costs; and

share-based compensation costs for those employees involved in preparing inventory for sale.

Included in our occupancy expenses are the following costs which are recognized as period costs as described below:

store expenses such as rent, insurance, taxes, common area maintenance, utilities, repairs and maintenance;

amortization of store buildings and leasehold improvements;

store closure costs; and

store remodel costs.

We record rent expense ratably over the term of the lease beginning with the date we take possession of or control the physical access to the premises. We record leasehold improvement reimbursements as a liability and ratably adjust the liability as a reduction to rent expense over the lease term beginning with the date we take possession of or control the physical access to the premises. At times, we receive landlord reimbursements for leasehold improvements made during the lease term, which we record as a liability and ratably adjust as a reduction to rent expense over the remaining lease term.

*Share-based compensation expenses* ASC 718 *Stock Compensation* ("ASC 718"), requires all share-based payments to employees, including grants of employee stock options, to be recognized in the financial statements. During the first two quarters of fiscal 2011 and the last quarter of fiscal 2013, the Company measured employee stock option expense for new awards using the grant date fair value accounting guidance of ASC 718. During the last two quarters of fiscal 2011, all of fiscal 2012, and the first three quarters of fiscal 2013, the Company determined its employee stock options should be recorded under the liability accounting guidance of ASC 718. As such, we measured share-based compensation based on either the grant date fair value of the equity awards, the fair value of our option awards at the end of the period, or at the fair value as most recently determined. Expense for unvested options and stock awards is recognized ratably over the requisite service period. We estimate the fair value of stock option awards using a Black-Scholes option value model.

All grants of our stock options have an exercise price equal to or greater than the fair market value of our Common Stock on the date of grant. Because we were privately held and there was no public market for our Common Stock prior to our initial public offering, the fair value of our equity was historically estimated

Table of Contents

by our management, relying in part on an independent appraisal of our fair market value by a third-party valuation firm and approved by our Board at the time option grants are awarded. Since the second quarter of 2011, our management had performed contemporaneous quarterly valuations of our Common Stock on the last day of each quarterly period; option grants or equity grants occurring between valuations are valued at the last Board approved fair value of our Common Stock. In estimating the fair value of our Common Stock, management and the Board considered factors it believed were material to the valuation process including the Company's actual and projected financial results, the principal amount of the Company's indebtedness and formal valuation ranges of the Company, prepared by a third-party valuation firm. In fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, valuations completed relied on projections of our future performance, estimates of our weighted average cost of capital, and metrics based on the performance of a peer group of similar companies, including valuation multiples and stock price volatility.

From February 2, 2013 to February 1, 2014, the estimated fair value of common stock decreased from \$18.25 to \$16.03 per share. A cash dividend paid to all equity holders in July 2013 decreased the fair value of the common stock by the amount of the cash dividend of \$4.38 per share. The fair value decrease from the dividend was partially offset due to recent market trends for guideline company transactions.

The following table details information on stock options granted by quarter for fiscal year 2013. The exercise price and the fair value of common stock at grant in the table below have been reduced by the cash dividend of \$4.38 per share, if applicable.

Quarter end date	# of options granted	Exercise price	Fair value of common stock at grant	Average fair value of option at February 1, 2014
May 4, 2013	1,988,093	\$ 13.80	\$ 13.80	\$ 4.49
August 3, 2013	944,418	\$ 13.90	\$ 13.90	\$ 4.78
November 2, 2013	114,980	\$ 14.76	\$ 14.76	\$ 5.11
February 1, 2014	168,633	\$ 15.56	\$ 15.56	\$ 3.83

Other assumptions used in the option value models for estimating the fair value of stock option awards included expected volatility of our common stock share price, expected terms of the options, expected dividends, and historical risk-free rates. The expected volatility rate was based on both historical volatility as well as implied volatilities from the exchange-traded options on the common stock of a peer group of companies. We utilized historical exercise and post-vesting employment behavior to estimate the expected terms of the options and did not use a dividend rate assumption. The risk-free interest rate was based on the yields of U.S. Treasury instruments with approximately the same term as the expected life of the stock option award. Our forfeiture assumptions were estimated based on historical experience and anticipated events. We updated our assumptions quarterly based on historical trends and current market observations.

As of February 1, 2014, compensation cost not yet recognized related to non-vested awards totaled \$24 million and is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.9 years. In the event of a Change in Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement), all non-vested awards will vest and the \$24 million would be immediately recognized.

Table of Contents

*Income taxes* We record income tax expense using the liability method for taxes and are subject to income tax in many jurisdictions, including the United States, various states and localities, and Canada. A current tax liability or asset is recognized for the estimated taxes payable or refundable on the tax returns for the current year and a deferred tax liability or asset is recognized for the estimated future tax effects attributable to temporary differences and carryforwards. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted income tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect of a change in tax rates is recognized as income or expense in the period that includes the enactment date. A valuation allowance is recorded to reduce the carrying amounts of deferred tax assets unless it is more likely than not that such assets will be realized. In evaluating our ability to realize our deferred tax asset, we considered the following sources of future taxable income:

- future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences;
- future taxable income, exclusive of reversing temporary differences and carryforwards;
- taxable income in prior carryback years; and
- tax-planning strategies.

Our evaluation regarding whether a valuation allowance is required or should be adjusted also considers, among other things, the nature, frequency, and severity of recent losses, forecasts of future profitability and the duration of statutory carryforward periods. Our forecast of future profitability represents our best estimate of these future events. After conducting this assessment, the valuation allowance recorded, net of federal benefit, against our deferred tax assets was \$9 million and \$10 million as of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, respectively. If actual results differ from estimated results, or if we adjust these assumptions in the future, we may need to adjust our deferred tax assets or liabilities, which could impact our effective tax rate.

The amount of income taxes we pay is subject to ongoing audits in the taxing jurisdictions in which we operate. During these audits, the taxing authorities may challenge items on our tax returns. Because the tax matters challenged by tax authorities are typically complex, the ultimate outcome of these challenges is uncertain. We recognize tax benefits for uncertain positions only to the extent that we believe it is more likely than not that the tax position will be sustained. Our future results may include favorable or unfavorable adjustments to our unrecognized tax benefits due to closure of income tax audits, new regulatory or judicial pronouncements, or other relevant events. As a result, our effective tax rate may fluctuate significantly on a quarterly and annual basis.

Table of Contents**Results of operations**

The following table sets forth the percentage relationship to Net sales of line items of our Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income. This table should be read in conjunction with the following discussion and with our Consolidated Financial Statements, including the related notes.

	November 1, 2014	Quarter ended November 2, 2013	November 1, 2014	Nine months ended November 2, 2013
<b>Net sales</b>	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	60.0	59.5	60.4	60.2
<b>Gross profit</b>	40.0	40.5	39.6	39.8
Selling, general, and administrative expense	26.9	27.6	27.3	27.7
Share-based compensation	0.3	0.4	0.3	0.5
Related party expenses		0.3	1.1	0.3
Store pre-opening costs	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.2
<b>Operating income</b>	12.6	12.1	10.6	11.1
Interest expense	3.6	5.5	5.1	5.1
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt			2.2	0.2
Other (income) and expense, net	0.1			
<b>Income before income taxes</b>	8.9	6.5	3.3	5.7
Provision for income taxes	3.2	2.3	1.4	2.1
<b>Net income</b>	5.7%	4.2%	1.9%	3.6%

	2013	Fiscal year 2012	2011
<b>Net sales</b>	100.0%	100.0%	100.0%
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	60.1	60.0	60.1
<b>Gross profit</b>	39.9	40.0	39.9
Selling, general, and administrative expense	25.6	25.7	25.9
Share-based compensation	0.5	0.3	0.8
Impairment of intangible assets		0.2	
Related party expenses	0.3	0.3	0.3
Store pre-opening costs	0.1	0.1	0.1
<b>Operating income</b>	13.3	13.4	12.8
Interest expense	4.7	5.6	6.0
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	0.3	0.7	0.4
Other (income) and expense, net			0.2
<b>Income before income taxes</b>	8.3	7.1	6.2
Provision for income taxes	3.0	2.6	2.4

<b>Net income</b>	5.3%	4.5%	3.8%
-------------------	------	------	------

Table of Contents

***Quarter ended November 1, 2014 compared to the quarter ended November 2, 2013***

***Net sales*** Net sales increased \$12 million for the third quarter of fiscal 2014, or 1.1%, compared to the third quarter of fiscal 2013. The increase in net sales was due to a \$21 million increase primarily related to 28 additional stores opened (net of closures) since November 2, 2013, partially offset by a \$9 million decrease in comparable store sales. Comparable store sales decreased 0.8%, or 0.2% at constant exchange rates, due to a decrease in customer transactions, partially offset by an increase in the average ticket.

***Gross profit*** Gross profit was 40.0% of net sales in the third quarter of fiscal 2014 compared to 40.5% in the third quarter of fiscal 2013. The 50 basis point decline is primarily related to a 130 basis points increase in merchandise costs, higher promotional activity, an increase in e-commerce operation expenses and an increase in occupancy costs. These increases were partially offset by a 70 basis points improvement primarily due to favorable shrink experience and distribution related cost.

***Selling, general, and administrative expense*** Selling, general and administrative ("SG&A") was 26.9% of net sales for the third quarter of fiscal 2014 compared to 27.6% in the third quarter of fiscal 2013. SG&A decreased \$5 million to \$304 million for the third quarter of fiscal 2014. The decrease is due to a \$7 million reduction in performance-based compensation and an \$8 million decrease in professional costs. The decrease was partially offset by a \$7 million increase in costs associated with operating 28 additional stores (net of closures) and a \$4 million increase in marketing costs.

***Share-based compensation*** Share-based compensation was consistent at \$4 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2014 and 2013.

***Related party expenses*** Related party expenses decreased \$3 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2014 due the termination of the management services agreement in connection with the initial public offering completed in July 2014.

***Interest expense*** Interest expense decreased \$21 million to \$41 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2014. The decrease is primarily attributable to interest savings from the redemption of the 2018 Senior Notes and the partial pay down of the Holdco Notes in the second quarter of fiscal 2014. The decrease was partially offset by an increase in interest expense related to the additional \$850 million of debt issued on July 2, 2014 under our existing term loan facility (the "Additional Term Loans").

***Provision for income taxes*** The effective tax rate was 36.0% for the third quarter of fiscal 2014 compared to 35.6% for the third quarter of fiscal 2013. The effective tax rate in the third quarter of fiscal 2014 is higher than the prior year due primarily to fewer credits under the Work Opportunity Tax Credit program.

***Nine months ended November 1, 2014 compared to the nine months ended November 2, 2013***

***Net sales*** Net sales increased \$115 million for the first nine months of fiscal 2014, or 3.8%, compared to the first nine months of fiscal 2013. The increase in net sales was due primarily to a \$57 million increase in comparable store sales and a \$58 million increase primarily related to 28 additional stores opened (net of closures) since November 2, 2013. Comparable store sales increased 1.9%, or 2.5% at constant exchange rates due primarily to an increase in average ticket.

***Gross profit*** Gross profit was 39.6% of net sales for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 compared to 39.8% for the first nine months of fiscal 2013. The 20 basis point decrease is primarily related to a 110 basis points increase in merchandise costs, higher promotional activity and an increase in e-commerce operation expenses. The decrease was partially offset by a 70 basis points improvement due to favorable shrink experience and leverage associated with occupancy expense as a result of higher sales.

Table of Contents

*Selling, general and administrative* SG&A was 27.3% of net sales for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 compared to 27.7% for the first nine months of fiscal 2013. SG&A increased \$21 million to \$856 million for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 due primarily to \$21 million of costs associated with operating 28 additional stores (net of closures) and a \$5 million increase in marketing. The increase was partially offset by a \$4 million decrease in payroll related costs.

*Share-based compensation* Share-based compensation decreased by \$5 million to \$10 million in the first nine months of fiscal 2014 due primarily to option awards which became fully vested in the second quarter of fiscal 2014.

*Related party expenses* Related party expenses increased \$25 million to \$35 million in the first nine months of fiscal 2014 due to a \$30 million fee paid to terminate the management services agreement in connection with our initial public offering completed in July 2014.

*Interest expense* Interest expense increased \$5 million to \$159 million in the first nine months of fiscal 2014. The increase is primarily attributable to the \$800 million of Holdco Notes that were issued in July 2013. This increase was partially offset by interest savings from the debt refinancing in the second quarter of fiscal 2014.

*Losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs* We recorded a loss on the early extinguishment of debt of \$68 million during the first nine months of fiscal 2014 related to the redemption of our 2018 Senior Notes and the partial redemption of our Holdco Notes, consisting of \$55 million of redemption premiums and \$18 million to write off related debt issuance costs. The loss was partially offset by a \$5 million write off of the unamortized net premium.

*Provision for income taxes* The effective tax rate for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 was 41.9% compared to 36.0% in the same period in the prior year. The effective tax rate for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 is higher than the prior year primarily due to a change in the status of our Canadian subsidiary, which resulted in the write off of certain deferred tax assets. In addition, the prior year includes higher state tax credits due to a change in tax law. We currently estimate our annualized effective tax rate for fiscal 2014 to be approximately 39%.

***Fiscal 2013 compared to fiscal 2012***

*Net sales* Net sales of \$4,570 million increased for fiscal 2013 by \$162 million, or 3.7%, over fiscal 2012 due to \$102 million of incremental revenue from our non-comparable stores and a \$126 million increase in comparable store sales, partially offset by \$66 million related to the 53rd week of fiscal 2012. Comparable store sales increased 2.9% driven by an increase in the average ticket of 3.3%, partially offset by a decrease in transactions of 0.4%. Comparable store sales growth was strongest in our children's crafts categories due primarily to sales of the Rainbow Loom and replacement rubber bands.

*Cost of sales and occupancy expense* Cost of sales and occupancy expense increased \$105 million to \$2,748 million in fiscal 2013 from \$2,643 million in fiscal 2012 due primarily to a \$68 million increase in merchandise costs associated with higher sales, an \$8 million increase in inventory reserve expense due to an increase in discontinued stock keeping units associated with planned merchandise resets and a slower sell-through of this merchandise and an \$8 million reduction in the recognition of vendor allowances compared to the prior year, partially offset by a \$6 million decrease in freight and distribution costs. In addition, we had a \$6 million decrease from favorable shrink experience in fiscal 2013 compared to fiscal 2012. We also had a \$32 million increase in occupancy expenses, including \$20 million from opening new stores, a \$5 million increase in store remodel expenses and a \$9 million increase from higher maintenance

Table of Contents

costs in fiscal 2013 compared to fiscal 2012. These increases were partially offset by \$2 million lower utilities expenses due to more favorable weather in fiscal 2013 compared to fiscal 2012.

Cost of sales and occupancy expense increased 10 basis points, as a percentage of Net sales, to 60.1% in fiscal 2013 from 60.0% in fiscal 2012. Occupancy costs increased 20 basis points in fiscal 2013 compared to fiscal 2012 due to higher remodel and maintenance costs. Cost of sales decreased 10 basis points in fiscal 2013 compared to fiscal 2012 primarily due to improved operational efficiencies at our vertically integrated framing operations.

*Selling, general, and administrative expense* Selling, general, and administrative expense was \$1,170 million in fiscal 2013 compared to \$1,132 million in fiscal 2012. Selling, general, and administrative expense increased \$38 million driven by \$26 million of incremental new store costs; Michaels retail store count increased by 37 stores in fiscal 2013 and 35 stores in fiscal 2012. Additionally, Selling, general, and administrative expense increased by \$8 million for outside professional fees for strategic initiatives and by \$27 million for higher store and corporate payroll, benefits and other personnel expenses. The higher payroll, benefits and other personnel expenses were partially offset by approximately \$23 million from additional store and corporate payroll associated with the 53<sup>rd</sup> week of fiscal 2012. As a percentage of Net sales, Selling, general, and administrative expense decreased 10 basis points primarily due to increased leverage of payroll and benefits from higher comparable store sales.

*Share-based compensation* Share-based compensation expenses increased to \$23 million for fiscal 2013 from \$15 million in fiscal 2012 due to new option grants and changes in estimates for expected forfeitures.

*Impairment of intangible assets* Impairment of intangible assets for fiscal 2012 was related to an impairment charge of \$7 million for long-lived assets and \$1 million for goodwill, associated with our online scrapbooking business.

*Related party expenses* Related party expenses were \$14 million for fiscal 2013 and \$13 million for fiscal 2012, consisting of management fees and associated expenses paid to our Sponsors and Highfields.

*Interest expense* Interest expense decreased from \$245 million in fiscal 2012 to \$215 million in fiscal 2013, due to a reduction in the overall average interest rate on our higher outstanding debt balance.

*Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt* During fiscal 2013, we recorded a \$7 million loss related to the redemption of \$137 million of our then outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. The \$7 million loss was comprised of a \$5 million redemption premium and \$2 million to write off related debt issuance costs. In addition, we recorded refinancing costs of \$7 million related to subsequent refinancing of our remaining outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. During fiscal 2012, we recorded refinancing costs of \$12 million related to our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility. We also recorded a loss of \$8 million to write off debt issuance costs related to our Senior Secured Term Loan Facility and prepayment of our B-1 Term Loans. In addition, we recorded an \$11 million loss related to the redemption of our remaining outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes. The \$11 million loss was comprised of an \$8 million redemption premium and \$3 million to write off related debt issuance costs. Finally we recorded a loss of \$2 million to write off debt issuance costs related to our senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. See Note 5 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014.

*Other (income) and expense, net* Other income for fiscal 2013 was primarily related to foreign exchange transaction losses. Other income for fiscal 2012 is primarily related to foreign exchange transaction gains.

Table of Contents

*Provision for income taxes* Our effective tax rate for fiscal 2013 was 35.9%. Our effective tax rate was 36.5% for fiscal 2012. Our effective rate was higher than the statutory rate due primarily to the impact of state taxes.

***Fiscal 2012 compared to fiscal 2011***

*Net sales* Net sales of \$4,408 million increased by \$198 million, or 4.7%, over fiscal 2011 due to \$70 million of incremental revenue from our non-comparable stores, \$66 million from the 53<sup>rd</sup> week of fiscal 2012, and a \$62 million increase in comparable store sales. Comparable store sales increased 1.5% driven by an increase in transactions of 0.8% and an increase in the average ticket of 0.7%. Comparable store sales dollar growth was strongest in custom framing within our framing department and percentage growth was the strongest in home accents within our seasonal and home décor department.

*Cost of sales and occupancy expense* Cost of sales and occupancy expense increased \$111 million to \$2,643 million in fiscal 2012 from \$2,532 million in fiscal 2011 due primarily to a \$95 million increase in merchandise costs associated with higher sales, including \$66 million of sales from the 53<sup>rd</sup> week of fiscal 2012. The increase was partially offset by a \$14 million decrease in merchandise costs related to our increased direct import volume, private brand initiative, and improved pricing and promotion management. These initiatives allowed us to reduce design, sourcing and intermediary product costs. In addition, we had a \$7 million increase from favorable shrink experience in fiscal 2011 compared to more normal levels in fiscal 2012, and a \$5 million increase from lower recognition of vendor allowances compared to prior year. Finally, rent and related expenses increased \$15 million due mainly to \$10 million of new store rent and a \$3 million increase in occupancy insurance premiums.

Cost of sales and occupancy expense decreased 10 basis points, as a percentage of Net sales, to 60.0% in fiscal 2012 from 60.1% in fiscal 2011. Merchandise cost decreased 30 basis points driven by our increased direct import volume, private brand initiative, and improved pricing and promotion management, while occupancy decreased 30 basis points due to increased leverage on higher store sales. These improvements were partially offset by a 20 basis point increase from the recognition of vendor allowances compared to prior year.

*Selling, general, and administrative expense* Selling, general, and administrative expense was \$1,132 million in fiscal 2012 compared to \$1,090 million in fiscal 2011. Selling, general, and administrative expense increased \$42 million driven by \$23 million of incremental store costs for operating 35 additional Michaels stores and a \$17 million increase in store payroll from additional payroll associated with the 53<sup>rd</sup> week of fiscal 2012, as well as a higher average hourly wage rate. In addition, we had a \$6 million increase in corporate payroll due primarily to the 53<sup>rd</sup> week of fiscal 2012, an increase in wage rate and an increased headcount. Finally, we had a \$4 million increase in group insurance claims and payroll tax increased \$4 million mainly due to an increase in unemployment insurance rates compared to last year. These amounts were partially offset by an \$18 million decrease in bonus expense from a lower bonus payout recognized in fiscal 2012 compared to fiscal 2011.

As a percentage of Net sales, Selling, general, and administrative expense decreased 20 basis points primarily due to a 50 basis point decrease in bonus expense compared to fiscal 2011.

*Share-based compensation expense* Share-based compensation expense decreased to \$15 million for fiscal 2012 from \$33 million in fiscal 2011 due to the change in fair value of option awards under liability accounting.

Table of Contents

*Impairment of intangible assets* Impairment of intangible assets for fiscal 2012 is related to an impairment charge of \$7 million for long-lived assets associated with our online scrapbooking business and a goodwill impairment charge of \$1 million, which represents the carrying amount of the goodwill of our online scrapbooking business.

*Related party expenses* Related party expenses were \$13 million for each of fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, consisting of management fees and associated expenses paid to our Sponsors and Highfields.

*Interest expense* Interest expense decreased from \$254 million in fiscal 2011 to \$245 million in fiscal 2012, as a result of a \$449 million reduction in our total debt outstanding, partially offset by a higher average interest rate on our outstanding debt.

*Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt* During fiscal 2012, we recorded refinancing costs of \$12 million related to our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility. We also recorded a loss of \$8 million to write off debt issuance costs related to our Senior Secured Term Loan Facility and prepayment of our B-1 Term Loans. In addition, we recorded an \$11 million loss related to the redemption of our remaining outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes. The \$11 million loss was comprised of an \$8 million redemption premium and \$3 million to write off related debt issuance costs. Finally, we recorded a loss of \$2 million to write off debt issuance costs related to our senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. During fiscal 2011, we recorded a loss of \$18 million related to the early extinguishment of \$163 million face value, or \$155 million accreted value, of our Subordinated Discount Notes and \$7 million face value of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. The \$18 million loss was comprised of \$11 million to recognize the unrealized interest accretion and the write off of related debt issuance costs, as well as \$7 million of purchase premiums. See Note 5 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014.

*Other (income) and expense, net* Other income for fiscal 2012 is primarily related to foreign exchange transaction gains. Other expense for fiscal 2011 is related to a \$5 million unfavorable change in the fair value of the interest rate derivative (the "interest rate cap"), as more fully described in Note 9 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014, and \$4 million in foreign exchange transaction losses.

*Provision for income taxes* Our effective tax rate for fiscal 2012 was 36.5%. Our effective tax rate for fiscal 2011 was 38.9%. Our rate was lower than the prior year rate due primarily to the reversal of accruals for uncertain tax positions as a result of the closure of tax audits and the expiration of the statute of limitations on previously open tax years.

## **Liquidity and capital resources**

We require cash principally for day-to-day operations, to finance capital investments, to purchase inventory, to service our outstanding debt, and for seasonal working capital needs. We expect that our available cash, cash flow generated from operating activities, and funds available under our Restated Revolving Credit Facility will be sufficient to fund planned capital expenditures, working capital requirements, debt repayments, debt service requirements and anticipated growth for the foreseeable future. Our ability to satisfy our liquidity needs and continue to refinance or reduce debt could be adversely affected by the occurrence of any of the events described under "Risk Factors" or our failure to meet our debt covenants as described in "Cash Flow from Financing Activities." Our Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides senior secured financing of up to \$650 million. As of November 1, 2014, the borrowing base was \$650 million, of which we had no outstanding borrowings, \$62 million of outstanding

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

letters of credit and \$588 million of unused borrowing capacity. Our cash and cash equivalents increased \$121 million from \$73 million at November 2, 2013 to \$194 million at November 1, 2014.

On October 31, 2006, substantially all of the common stock of MSI was acquired by the Sponsors through a merger transaction. To finance the Merger, MSI issued the 2014 Senior Notes, 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes and Subordinated Discount Notes and executed a Senior Secured Term Loan Facility and a senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility which in the aggregate was approximately \$4.0 billion. Since October 31, 2006, MSI has retired or purchased some of this debt through redemptions, repurchases or exchanges and has issued new debt or amended existing debt facilities.

In July 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. issued the Holdco Notes. FinCo Holdings distributed the proceeds, net of expenses, to The Michaels Companies, Inc. We used this cash to pay a cash dividend, distribution and other payments to our equity and equity award holders and pay related fees and expenses.

Our substantial indebtedness could adversely affect our ability to raise additional capital, limit our ability to react to changes in the economy or our industry, expose us to interest rate risk, and prevent us from meeting our obligations. Management reacts strategically to changes in economic conditions and monitors compliance with debt covenants to seek to mitigate any potential material impacts to our financial condition and flexibility.

We intend to use excess operating cash flows to repay portions of our indebtedness and to invest in growth opportunities, depending on market conditions. If we use our excess cash flows to repay our debt, it will reduce the amount of excess cash available for additional capital expenditures.

As of February 2, 2013, we had an aggregate principal amount of \$393 million of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes scheduled to mature in November 2016. On February 27, 2013, we redeemed \$137 million in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes with cash on hand and borrowings made under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility for an aggregate redemption price (including the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest) of \$147 million. On December 19, 2013, we issued an irrevocable notice of redemption to the holders of our remaining outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes, deposited the net proceeds of the offering of our 5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2020 ("2020 Senior Subordinated Notes") and additional cash with the trustee under the indenture governing the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes ("2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture") and instructed the trustee to (a) redeem the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes on January 21, 2014 and (b) discharge our obligations under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture. Accordingly, our obligations under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture were discharged.

As of May 3, 2014, we had an aggregate principal amount of \$1,006 million of our 2018 Senior Notes outstanding. On June 16, 2014 and July 2, 2014, we issued irrevocable notices of redemption to the holders of our 2018 Senior Notes with respect to the redemption of an aggregate principal amount of \$235 million of 2018 Senior Notes on July 16, 2014 and \$765 million of 2018 Senior Notes on August 1, 2014, respectively. On July 2, 2014, we also deposited the net proceeds of the offering of our Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the borrowing of the Additional Term Loans with the trustee under the indenture governing the 2018 Senior Notes (the "Senior Notes Indenture") and instructed the trustee to (a) redeem the 2018 Senior Notes on the applicable redemption dates and (b) discharge our obligations under the 2018 Senior Notes Indenture on August 1, 2014. Accordingly, our obligations under the Senior Notes Indenture were discharged.

Table of Contents

As of May 3, 2014, we had an aggregate principal amount of \$800 million of our Holdco Notes scheduled to mature in August 2018. On August 1, 2014, we redeemed \$439 million in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Holdco Notes with proceeds from our initial public offering for an aggregate redemption price (including the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest) of \$474 million. On December 10, 2014, we redeemed a further \$180 million in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Holdco Notes with cash on hand for an aggregate redemption price (including the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest) of \$188 million.

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes mature in 2020, the Holdco Notes mature in 2018 and the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility matures in 2020. Although no assurance can be given, depending on market conditions and other factors, we plan to repay or refinance such indebtedness prior to maturity.

The Indenture for the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes (the "2020 Senior Subordinated Indenture") contains covenants limiting, among other things, MSI's ability and the ability of MSI's restricted subsidiaries to:

incur additional debt

pay dividends or distributions on MSI's capital stock or repurchase MSI's capital stock, subject to certain exceptions, including dividends, distributions and repurchases up to an amount in excess of (i) \$100 million plus (ii) a basket that builds based on 50% of MSI's Consolidated Net Income (as defined in the 2020 Senior Subordinated Indenture) and certain other amounts, in each case, to the extent such payment capacity is not applied as otherwise permitted under the 2020 Senior Subordinated Indenture and subject to certain conditions. As of November 1, 2014, after giving effect to the partial redemption of the Holdco Notes on December 10, 2014, the permitted restricted payment amount was approximately \$351 million.

We had \$3,336 million of indebtedness outstanding at November 1, 2014, of which \$2,460 million was subject to variable interest rates and \$876 million was subject to fixed interest rates. On an as adjusted basis as of November 1, 2014, after giving effect to the partial redemption of the Holdco Notes on December 10, 2014, we would have had total indebtedness of \$3,156 million, of which approximately \$2,460 million was subject to variable interest rates and \$696 million was subject to fixed interest rates, and approximately \$588 million of additional borrowing capacity (after giving effect to then-outstanding letters of credit) under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. See "Prospectus summary Recent developments."

We and our subsidiaries, affiliates, and significant shareholders may from time to time seek to retire or purchase our outstanding debt (including publicly issued debt) through cash purchases and/or exchanges, in open market purchases, privately negotiated transactions, by tender offer or otherwise. Such repurchases or exchanges, if any, will depend on prevailing market conditions, liquidity requirements, contractual restrictions and other factors.

***Cash flow from operating activities***

Cash flow provided by operating activities during the first nine months of fiscal 2014 was \$36 million compared to \$69 million during the first nine months of fiscal 2013. The \$33 million decrease was primarily related to additional interest payments made in connection with the Holdco Notes issued in July 2013, partially offset by the debt refinancing during the second quarter of 2014. Average inventory per Michaels store (including e-commerce and distribution centers) decreased 2.9% to \$923,000 at November 1, 2014,

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

from \$951,000 at November 2, 2013, primarily due to better than expected sales during the third quarter of fiscal 2014 and a more efficient replenishment process.

Cash flow provided by operating activities in fiscal 2013 was \$449 million compared to \$299 million in fiscal 2012. The \$150 million change was due in part to a \$137 million increase from the timing of accounts payable, a \$43 million increase in net income and a \$33 million increase in interest accruals. This increase was partially offset by a \$25 million decrease from the timing of income tax payments, a \$19 million decrease in refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt and a \$17 million decrease due to higher merchandise inventories. Average inventory per Michaels store (including supporting distribution centers) was \$764,000, up from last year's average inventory balance of \$754,000.

### *Cash flow from investing activities*

Cash flow used in investing activities represents the following capital expenditures:

(In millions)	Fiscal year			Nine months ended	
	2013	2012	2011	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
New and relocated stores and stores not yet opened(1)	\$ 39	\$ 42	\$ 28	\$ 24	\$ 32
Existing stores	26	30	25	38	17
Information systems(2)	28	36	45	29	19
Corporate and other	19	16	11	12	14
	\$ 112	\$ 124	\$ 109	\$ 103	\$ 82

(1) In fiscal 2013, we incurred capital expenditures related to the opening of 54 Michaels stores, including the relocation of 14 Michaels stores. In fiscal 2012, we incurred capital expenditures related to the opening of 51 Michaels stores, including the relocation of 13 Michaels stores. In fiscal 2011, we incurred capital expenditures related to the opening of 40 Michaels stores, including the relocation of 15 Michaels stores. The average capital expenditure per store for fiscal 2013 was comparable to fiscal 2011. The increase in capital expenditures per store in fiscal 2012 is due mainly to an increase in leasehold improvements for three unique locations. Excluding those locations, the average per store is comparable for the three years presented. In the first nine months of fiscal 2014, we incurred capital expenditures related to the opening of 30 Michaels stores and five Aaron Brothers stores and the relocation of 13 Michaels stores. In the first nine months of fiscal 2013, we incurred capital expenditures related to the opening of 40 Michaels stores and the relocation of 14 Michaels stores and two Aaron Brothers stores.

(2) Our fiscal 2013 information systems capital expenditures decreased from fiscal 2012 primarily due to 2012 projects not recurring in 2013, for systems to enhance manufacturing capabilities and for system infrastructure for Québec.

We capitalize and depreciate significant renewals or betterments that substantially extend the life of the asset. We also capitalize certain costs related to the acquisition and development of internal use software that is expected to benefit future periods. In fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, we capitalized payroll and consulting costs of approximately \$39 million, \$30 million and \$34 million, respectively, related to our capital expenditures.

We currently estimate that our capital expenditures will be increased to approximately \$150 million in fiscal 2014 as we plan to invest in the infrastructure necessary to support the further development of our business and continued growth. In fiscal 2014, we plan to open 45 stores, including 13 relocations. We expect our capital expenditures will be financed with cash from operating activities. In fiscal 2015, we plan to open approximately 47 new Michaels stores, including 17 relocations.

*Cash flow from financing activities*

Cash flow provided by financing activities during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 was \$22 million compared to cash flow provided by financing activities of \$30 million during the nine months ended November 2, 2013. The cash flow provided by financing activities for the nine months ended November 1,

Table of Contents

2014 was impacted by the issuance of \$250 million of our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and also the issuance of the Additional Term Loans. The net proceeds from the issuance of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the incurrence of the Additional Term Loans were used to fully redeem the outstanding 2018 Senior Notes and to pay the applicable make-whole premium and accrued interest on the 2018 Senior Notes. In addition, on July 2, 2014, the Company completed its initial public offering and received net proceeds totaling \$446 million. The proceeds were used to redeem \$439 million of our then outstanding Holdco Notes and to pay other expenses of the offering.

Cash used in financing activities was \$154 million during fiscal 2013. Cash flow used in financing activities during fiscal 2012 was \$490 million. Cash flow used in financing activities for fiscal 2013 was impacted by the repurchase of \$137 million of the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price of 103.792%, or a total of \$142 million, and the repurchase of \$256 million of the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price of 101.896%, or a total of \$261 million. MSI also made payments of \$12 million under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility. In addition, MSI issued \$260 million of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

Additionally, on July 29, 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. issued the Holdco Notes. The Holdco Notes were issued in a private transaction, at 100.00% of face value, resulting in net proceeds of approximately \$783 million. FinCo Holdings distributed the net proceeds to The Michaels Companies, Inc. and the proceeds were used to fund a one-time cash dividend, distribution and other payments to the Company's equity and equity-award holders and pay related fees and expenses.

Cash flow used in financing activities for fiscal 2012 was impacted by the \$1,996 million prepayment of the Senior Secured Term Loan Facility and borrowings under our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility of \$1,640 million. In addition, we issued \$200 million of additional 2018 Senior Notes at a premium, for which we received \$213 million. Finally, we made the \$127 million applicable high yield discount obligation ("AHYDO") payment on the Subordinated Discount Notes (as defined below) during fiscal 2012 and redeemed the remaining \$180 million of outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes, for which we paid an \$8 million premium.

Cash flow used in financing activities for fiscal 2011 was impacted by the repurchases of \$163 million face value, or \$155 million accreted value, of the Subordinated Discount Notes and \$7 million face value of the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes, for which we paid \$7 million in purchase premiums. We also made a voluntary prepayment of \$50 million on the Senior Secured Term Loan Facility during the first quarter of fiscal 2011.

***Debt***

We currently have outstanding indebtedness consisting of 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and Holdco Notes, as well as the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility. There are currently no outstanding borrowings under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Future borrowings under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will be influenced by a number of factors as more fully described below.

On June 16, 2014, MSI and its subsidiaries that are guarantors under the indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes issued an additional \$250 million in aggregate principal amount of Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes. We used the net proceeds of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to redeem a portion of the outstanding 2018 Senior Notes, to pay the applicable make-whole premium and accrued and unpaid interest thereon to, but not including, the applicable redemption date and to pay related fees and expenses.

Table of Contents

In addition, on June 6, 2014, MSI priced an additional \$850 million in aggregate principal amount of the Additional Term Loans that mature in January 2020. On June 10, 2014, MSI entered into an amendment to its Amended Credit Agreement to effect the Additional Term Loans (the "First Amendment"). The closing of the First Amendment and funding of the Additional Term Loans was subject to, and concurrent with, the closing of our initial public offering on July 2, 2014. We used the net proceeds of the Additional Term Loans to redeem the remaining outstanding 2018 Senior Notes that were not redeemed with the net proceeds of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

*Notes*

On October 31, 2006, we issued (i) \$750 million in principal amount of 2014 Senior Notes; (ii) \$400 million in principal amount of 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes; and (iii) \$469 million in principal amount at maturity of Subordinated Discount Notes. During the third quarter of fiscal 2010, we retired the 2014 Senior Notes and issued \$800 million of 2018 Senior Notes at a discounted price of 99.262% of face value, resulting in an effective interest rate of 7<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>%. On September 27, 2012, we issued an additional \$200 million principal amount of 2018 Senior Notes (the "Additional 2018 Senior Notes"), at a premium of 106.25% of face value, resulting in an effective interest rate of 6<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>%. On February 27, 2013, we redeemed \$137 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price equal to 103.792%. On July 29, 2013, we issued \$800 million in principal amount of the Holdco Notes that mature August 1, 2018. On December 19, 2013, we issued \$260 million in principal amount of 5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes that mature December 15, 2020. We used the net proceeds of these notes to redeem the remaining outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes, in an aggregate principal amount of approximately \$255 million, to pay the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the applicable redemption date and to pay related fees and expenses. The 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes were redeemed on January 21, 2014, and our obligations under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture were discharged.

On June 16, 2014 and July 2, 2014, we issued irrevocable notices of redemption to the holders of our 2018 Senior Notes with respect to the redemption of an aggregate principal amount of \$235 million of 2018 Senior Notes on July 16, 2014 and \$765 million of 2018 Senior Notes on August 1, 2014, respectively. On July 2, 2014, we also deposited the net proceeds of the offering of our Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the borrowing of the Additional Term Loans with the trustee under the Senior Notes Indenture and instructed the trustee to (a) redeem the 2018 Senior Notes on the applicable redemption dates and (b) discharge our obligations under the Senior Notes Indenture on August 1, 2014. Accordingly, our obligations under the Senior Notes Indenture were discharged.

On August 1, 2014, we redeemed \$439 million in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Holdco Notes with proceeds from our initial public offering for an aggregate redemption price (including the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest) of \$474 million. On December 10, 2014, we redeemed a further \$180 million in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Holdco Notes with cash on hand for an aggregate redemption price (including the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest) of \$188 million. Following the completion of this partial redemption we had an aggregate principal amount of \$181 million of our Holdco Notes outstanding.

The Holdco Notes are not guaranteed by us or any of our subsidiaries, but the indenture governing the Holdco Notes contains restrictive covenants that apply to FinCo Holdings and its restricted subsidiaries, including Holdings, MSI and their subsidiaries.

Table of Contents

Interest on the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes is payable semi-annually in arrears on each June 15 and December 15, commencing on June 15, 2014, with respect to the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes issued on December 19, 2013, and December 15, 2014, with respect to the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes. Interest on the Holdco Notes is payable semi-annually in arrears on each February 1 and August 1. If interest on the Holdco Notes is paid in cash, annual interest payments will total \$60 million, at a rate of 7.50% per annum, or a total of approximately \$300 million from July 29, 2013 until August 1, 2018, the maturity date. If interest on the Holdco Notes is paid in-kind by increasing the principal amount of the Holdco Notes, or by issuing new Holdco Notes, the interest rate is 8.25% per annum, which is the cash interest rate plus 75 basis points.

Beginning on November 1, 2011, cash interest began accruing on the Subordinated Discount Notes and was payable semi-annually in arrears on each May 1 and November 1 (the first cash interest payment was May 1, 2012). On May 1, 2012, as required pursuant to the indenture ("Subordinated Discount Notes Indenture") governing its Subordinated Discount Notes, MSI redeemed that portion of each Subordinated Discount Note outstanding on such date equal to the amount sufficient, but not in excess of the amount necessary, to ensure that such Subordinated Discount Note would not be an AHYDO instrument within the meaning of Section 163(i)(1) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") (the "AHYDO Amount"). These redemptions were at a price equal to 100% of the Accreted Value (as defined in the Subordinated Discount Notes Indenture) of such portion as of the date of redemption. The aggregate payment of \$127 million made on May 1, 2012, was required to ensure the Subordinated Discount Notes would not be AHYDO instruments. On October 1, 2012, MSI delivered to the holders of its outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes an irrevocable notice of redemption relating to the redemption of all of its outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes. On November 1, 2012, MSI redeemed a portion of the Subordinated Discount Notes equal to the AHYDO Amount at a redemption price equal to 100% and the remaining Subordinated Discount Notes at a redemption price equal to 104.333%.

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes are guaranteed, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally, on an unsecured senior subordinated basis, in each case, by each of MSI's subsidiaries (each of which is directly or indirectly owned 100% by MSI) that guarantees indebtedness under MSI's Senior Secured Credit Facilities.

The indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes contain covenants limiting, among other things, MSI's ability, and the ability of MSI's restricted subsidiaries, to:

incur or guarantee additional debt;

pay dividends or distributions on MSI's capital stock or repurchase MSI's capital stock or prepay debt that is subordinated to the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes;

issue stock of subsidiaries;

make certain investments, loans, advances and acquisitions;

create liens on MSI's and such subsidiaries' assets to secure debt;

enter into transactions with affiliates;

merge or consolidate with another company; and

sell or otherwise transfer assets.

Table of Contents

The indenture governing the Holdco Notes contains restrictive covenants and events of default substantially similar to, but less restrictive than, those of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes described above, which restrict FinCo Holdings and its restricted subsidiaries, including Holdings, MSI and their subsidiaries.

***Restated Revolving Credit Facility***

On February 18, 2010, MSI entered into an agreement to amend and restate various terms of the then existing asset-based Revolving Credit Facility, dated as of October 31, 2006 (as so amended and restated, the "senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility"). On September 17, 2012, MSI entered into a second amended and restated credit agreement (the "Restated Credit Agreement") with Wells Fargo Bank, National Association ("Wells Fargo") and other lenders to amend various terms of its senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. On June 6, 2014, MSI amended its Restated Credit Agreement to, among other things, permit the incurrence of the Additional Term Loans and refinancing of the 2018 Senior Notes with the net proceeds of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the Additional Term Loans. The Restated Credit Agreement, as amended, together with related security, guarantee and other agreements, is referred to as the "Restated Revolving Credit Facility".

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides for senior secured financing of up to \$650 million, subject to a borrowing base, maturing on September 17, 2017 (the "ABL Maturity Date"). The borrowing base under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility equals the sum of (i) 90% of eligible credit card receivables and debit card receivables, plus (ii) 90% of the appraised net orderly liquidation value of eligible inventory, plus (iii) the lesser of (x) 90% of the appraised net orderly liquidation value of inventory supported by eligible letters of credit and (y) 90% of the face amount of eligible letters of credit, minus (iv) certain reserves.

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides MSI with the right to request up to \$200 million of additional commitments under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. The lenders under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will not be under any obligation to provide any such additional commitments, and any increase in commitments is subject to customary conditions precedent. If MSI were to request any such additional commitments, and the existing lenders or new lenders were to agree to provide such commitments, the facility size could be increased to up to \$850 million, but MSI's ability to borrow under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility would still be limited by the borrowing base.

Borrowings under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility bear interest at a rate per annum equal to, at MSI's option, either (a) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (1) the prime rate of Wells Fargo, (2) the federal funds effective rate plus 0.50% and (3) LIBOR subject to certain adjustments plus 1.00% or (b) a LIBOR subject to certain adjustments, in each case plus an applicable margin. The initial applicable margin is (a) 0.75% for prime rate borrowings and 1.75% for LIBOR borrowings. The applicable margin is subject to adjustment each fiscal quarter based on the excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Same-day borrowings bear interest at the base rate plus the applicable margin.

MSI is required to pay a commitment fee on the unutilized commitments under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, which initially is 0.375% per annum. The commitment fee is subject to adjustment each fiscal quarter. If average daily excess availability is less than or equal to 50% of the total commitments, the commitment fee will be 0.25% per annum, and if average daily excess availability is greater than 50% of the total commitments, the commitment fee will be 0.375%. In addition, MSI must pay customary letter of credit fees and agency fees.

All obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility are unconditionally guaranteed jointly and severally by Holdings and all of MSI's existing domestic material subsidiaries and are required to be

Table of Contents

guaranteed by certain of MSI's future domestic wholly-owned material subsidiaries (the "Subsidiary Guarantors"). All obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, and the guarantees of those obligations, are secured, subject to certain exceptions, by substantially all of the assets of Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, including:

first-priority security interest in personal property consisting of inventory and related accounts, cash, deposit accounts, all payments received by Holdings, MSI or the Subsidiary Guarantors from credit card clearinghouses and processors or otherwise in respect of all credit card charges and debit card charges for sales of inventory by Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, and certain related assets and proceeds of the foregoing;

second-priority pledge of all of MSI's capital stock and the capital stock held directly by MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors (which pledge, in the case of the capital stock of any foreign subsidiary, is limited to 65% of the voting stock of such foreign subsidiary and 100% of the non-voting stock of such subsidiary); and

second-priority security interest in, and mortgages on, substantially all other tangible and intangible assets of Holdings, MSI and each Subsidiary Guarantor, including substantially all of MSI's and its subsidiaries' owned real property and equipment.

If, at any time, the aggregate amount of outstanding loans, unreimbursed letter of credit drawings and undrawn letters of credit under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility exceeds the lesser of (i) the commitment amount and (ii) the borrowing base (the "Loan Cap"), MSI will be required to repay outstanding loans and cash collateralize letters of credit in an aggregate amount equal to such excess, with no reduction of the commitment amount. If excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility is less than (i) 12.5% of the Loan Cap for five consecutive business days, or (ii) \$65 million at any time, or if certain events of default have occurred, MSI will be required to repay outstanding loans and cash collateralize letters of credit with the cash it is required to deposit daily in a collection account maintained with the agent under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility means the Loan Cap minus the outstanding credit extensions. MSI may voluntarily reduce the unutilized portion of the commitment amount and repay outstanding loans at any time without premium or penalty other than customary breakage costs with respect to London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR") loans. There is no scheduled amortization under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility; the principal amount of the loans outstanding is due and payable in full on the ABL Maturity Date.

From the time when MSI has excess availability less than the greater of (a) 10% of the Loan Cap and (b) \$50 million, until the time when we have excess availability greater than the greater of (a) 10% of the Loan Cap and (b) \$50 million for 30 consecutive days, the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will require MSI to maintain a consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio of at least 1.0 to 1.0. The Restated Revolving Credit Facility also contains certain customary representations and warranties, affirmative covenants and provisions relating to events of default (including change of control and cross-default to material indebtedness).

As of November 1, 2014, the borrowing base was \$650 million, of which we had no outstanding borrowings, \$62 million of outstanding standby letters of credit and \$588 million of unused borrowing capacity.

Table of Contents

***Restated Term Loan Credit Facility***

On October 31, 2006, MSI executed a \$2.4 billion senior secured term loan facility (the "Senior Secured Term Loan Facility") with Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch ("Deutsche Bank") and other lenders. The full amount was borrowed on October 31, 2006, with the balance payable on October 31, 2013. On November 5, 2009, and December 15, 2011, MSI amended the Senior Secured Term Loan Facility to extend \$1.0 billion and \$619 million, respectively, of existing term loans (the "B-2 Term Loans" and "B-3 Term Loans", respectively) to July 31, 2016, with the remaining \$501 million of existing term loans (the "B-1 Term Loans") keeping the original maturity date of October 31, 2013. During fiscal 2012, MSI prepaid the \$501 million of outstanding B-1 Term Loans.

On January 28, 2013, MSI entered into an amended and restated credit agreement (the "Amended Credit Agreement") with Deutsche Bank and other lenders to amend various terms of the Senior Secured Term Loan Facility, as amended. On June 10, 2014, MSI entered into the First Amendment to effect the Additional Term Loans. The Amended Credit Agreement (as amended by the First Amendment), together with related security, guarantee and other agreements, is referred to as the "Restated Term Loan Credit Facility."

As of November 1, 2014, the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility provides for senior secured financing of \$2,460 million. MSI has the right under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility to request additional term loans in an aggregate amount of up to (a) \$500 million and (b) at MSI's option, an amount of term loans so long as MSI's Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement) is no more than 3.25 to 1.00 on a pro forma basis as of the last day of the most recently-ended four fiscal quarter-period for which internal financial statements are available. The lenders under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility will not be under any obligation to provide any such additional term loans, and the incurrence of any additional term loans is subject to customary conditions precedent.

Borrowings under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility bear interest at a rate per annum equal to, at MSI's option, either (a) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (1) the prime rate of Deutsche Bank, (2) the federal funds effective rate plus  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1%, subject to a 2% floor, in the case of the Additional Term Loans, and (3) LIBOR, subject to certain adjustments and a 1% floor, plus 1%, or (b) LIBOR, subject to certain adjustments and a 1% floor, in each case plus an applicable margin. The applicable margin is 1.75% (2.00%, with respect to the Additional Term Loans) with respect to base rate borrowings and 2.75% (3.00%, with respect to Additional Term Loans) with respect to LIBOR borrowings. In addition, the applicable margin is subject to a 0.25% decrease based on MSI's Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio, but such decrease will not apply to the Additional Term Loans.

The Restated Term Loan Credit Facility requires MSI to prepay outstanding term loans with (x) 100% of the net proceeds of any debt issued by MSI or its subsidiaries (with exceptions for certain debt permitted to be incurred under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility) and (y) 50% (which percentage will be reduced to 25% if MSI's Consolidated Total Leverage Ratio (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement) is less than 6.00:1.00 and will be reduced to 0% if MSI's Consolidated Total Leverage Ratio is less than 5.00:1.00) of MSI's annual Excess Cash Flow (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement).

MSI must offer to prepay outstanding term loans at 100% of the principal amount to be prepaid, plus accrued and unpaid interest, with the proceeds of certain asset sales or casualty events under certain circumstances.

MSI may voluntarily prepay outstanding loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility at any time without premium or penalty other than customary "breakage" costs with respect to LIBOR loans.

Table of Contents

MSI is required to make scheduled quarterly payments, each equal to 0.25% of the original principal amount of the term loans, subject to adjustments relating to the incurrence of additional term loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, for the first six years and three quarters, with the balance paid on January 28, 2020 (the "Maturity Date").

All obligations under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility are unconditionally guaranteed by Holdings, and each of MSI's wholly-owned domestic subsidiaries that guarantees obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. All obligations under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, and the guarantees of those obligations, are secured, subject to certain exceptions, by substantially all of the assets of Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, including:

a first-priority pledge of MSI's capital stock and all of the capital stock held directly by MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors (which pledge, in the case of any foreign subsidiary, is limited to 65% of the voting stock of such foreign subsidiary and 100% of the non-voting stock of such subsidiary);

a first-priority security interest in, and mortgages on, substantially all other tangible and intangible assets of Holdings, MSI and each Subsidiary Guarantor, including substantially all of MSI's and MSI's subsidiaries' owned real property and equipment, but excluding, among other things, the collateral described in the following bullet point; and

a second-priority security interest in personal property consisting of inventory and related accounts, cash, deposit accounts, all payments received by Holdings, MSI or the Subsidiary Guarantors from credit card clearinghouses and processors or otherwise in respect of all credit card charges and debit card charges for sales of inventory by Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, and certain related assets and proceeds of the foregoing.

The Restated Term Loan Credit Facility contains a number of negative covenants that are substantially similar to, but more restrictive in certain respects than, those governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, as well as certain other customary representations and warranties, affirmative and negative covenants and events of default.

The proceeds of the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility were used, among other things, to (i) prepay an aggregate principal amount of \$876 million of the Company's B-2 Term Loans and \$619 million of the Company's B-3 Term Loans under the Senior Secured Term Loan Facility and (ii) fund the redemption and related fees, on February 27, 2013, of an aggregate principal amount of \$137 million of the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes pursuant to a notice of redemption issued to the holders of such notes on January 28, 2013. The net proceeds of the Additional Term Loans were used to redeem the remaining outstanding 2018 Senior Notes that were not redeemed with the net proceeds of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

We and our subsidiaries may be able to incur substantial additional indebtedness in the future, subject, in the case of Holdings, MSI and FinCo Holdings and their subsidiaries, to the restrictions contained in our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and the indentures governing our notes. In addition, our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and indentures governing our notes do not restrict our owners from creating new holding companies that may be able to incur indebtedness without regard to the restrictions set forth in our Senior Secured Credit Facilities and the indentures governing our notes. If new indebtedness is added to our current debt levels, the related risks that we now face could intensify.

Table of Contents**Off-balance sheet arrangements**

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements as defined in Item 303(a)(4)(ii) of Regulation S-K. We do not typically enter into off-balance sheet arrangements, except for arrangements related to operating lease commitments, service contract commitments and trade letters of credit, as disclosed in the contractual obligations table below. Neither we nor our subsidiaries typically guarantee the obligations of unrelated parties.

**Contractual obligations**

All of our significant contractual obligations are recorded on our Consolidated Balance Sheets or disclosed in our Notes to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014.

As of February 1, 2014, our contractual obligations were as follows:

(In millions)	Total	Payments due by fiscal year			
		Less than 1 year	1 - 3 years	3 - 5 years	More than 5 years
<b>The Michaels Companies, Inc.</b>					
Operating lease commitments(1)	\$ 1,794	\$ 390	\$ 637	\$ 417	\$ 350
Other commitments(2)	95	59	36		
Total debt(3)	3,688	16	33	3,379	260
Interest payments(4)	1,072	216	430	395	31
	\$ 6,649	\$ 681	\$ 1,136	\$ 4,191	\$ 641
<b>Michaels Stores, Inc.</b>					
Operating lease commitments(1)	\$ 1,794	\$ 390	\$ 637	\$ 417	\$ 350
Other commitments(2)	95	59	36		
Total debt(3)	2,888	16	33	2,579	260
Interest payments(4)	772	156	310	275	31
	\$ 5,549	\$ 621	\$ 1,016	\$ 3,271	\$ 641

(1) Our operating lease commitments generally include non-cancelable leases for property and equipment used in our operations. Excluded from our operating lease commitments are amounts related to insurance, taxes, and common area maintenance associated with property and equipment. Such amounts historically represented approximately 31% of the total lease obligation over the previous three fiscal years.

(2) Other commitments include trade letters of credit and service contract obligations. Our service contract obligations were calculated based on the time period remaining in the contract or to the earliest possible date of termination, if permitted to be terminated by us upon notice, whichever is shorter.

(3) Included in Total debt is \$9 million of unamortized premium and \$3 million of unamortized discount on the 2018 Senior Notes, which has not been recognized as of February 1, 2014. See Note 5 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014.

(4) Debt associated with our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility was \$1,628 million at February 1, 2014, and is subject to variable interest rates. The amounts included in interest payments in the table for the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility were based on the indexed interest rate in effect at February 1, 2014. Approximately \$2,060 million of debt was subject to fixed interest rates. We had no outstanding borrowings under our Restated Revolving Credit

Facility at February 1, 2014 or at November 1, 2014. Under our Restated Revolving Credit Facility, we are required to pay a commitment fee of 0.375% per year on the unutilized commitments, subject to an adjustment each fiscal quarter. The amounts included in interest payments for the Restated Revolving Credit Facility were based on these annual commitment fees.

Additional information regarding our long term debt and commitments and contingencies is provided in Notes 5 and 12 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014 and Note 3 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the quarter ended November 1, 2014.

Table of Contents

**Recent accounting pronouncement**

In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board issued Accounting Standards Update No. 2014-09, "*Revenue from Contracts with Customers*" ("ASU 2014-09"). ASU 2014-09 supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in "*Revenue Recognition (Topic 605)*," and requires entities to recognize revenue in a way that depicts the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services. ASU 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period and is to be applied retrospectively, with early application not permitted. We are evaluating the new standard, but do not, at this time, anticipate a material impact to the financial statements once implemented.

**Quantitative and qualitative disclosures about market risk**

We are exposed to fluctuations in exchange rates between the U.S. and Canadian dollar, which is the functional currency of our Canadian subsidiaries. Our sales, costs and expenses of our Canadian subsidiaries, when translated into U.S. dollars, can fluctuate due to exchange rate movement. As of November 1, 2014, a 10% increase or decrease in the exchange rate of the U.S. and Canadian dollar would increase or decrease quarterly Net income for the nine months ended November 1, 2014 by approximately \$3 million.

We do not believe inflation and changing commodity prices have had a material impact on our Net sales, income from continuing operations, plans for expansion or other capital expenditures for any year during the three-year period ended February 1, 2014 or the nine months ended November 1, 2014. However, we cannot be sure inflation and changing commodity prices will not have an adverse impact on our operating results, financial condition, plans for expansion or other capital expenditures in future periods.

We have market risk exposure arising from changes in interest rates on our Senior Secured Credit Facilities. See "Liquidity and Capital Resources" for further detail. The interest rates on our Senior Secured Credit Facilities will reprice periodically, which will impact our earnings and cash flow. The interest rates on our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and Holdco Notes are fixed. Based on our overall interest rate exposure to variable rate debt outstanding as of November 1, 2014, a 1% increase or decrease in interest rates would increase or decrease Income before income taxes by approximately \$25 million. A 1% increase in interest rates would decrease the fair value of our long-term fixed rate debt by approximately \$19 million, and a 1% decrease in interest rates would increase the fair value of our long-term fixed rate debt by approximately \$20 million. A change in interest rates would not materially affect the fair value of our variable rate debt as the debt reprices periodically.

We invest cash balances in excess of operating requirements primarily in money market mutual funds and short-term interest-bearing securities, generally with maturities of 90 days or less. Due to the short-term nature of our investments, the fair value of our cash and equivalents at November 1, 2014, approximated carrying value.

Table of Contents

## **Business**

*The following discussion, as well as other portions of this prospectus, contains forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, and beliefs. Any statements contained herein (including, but not limited to, statements to the effect that Michaels or its management "anticipates", "plans", "estimates", "expects", "believes", and other similar expressions) that are not statements of historical fact should be considered forward-looking statements. Our actual results could materially differ from those discussed in these forward-looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to such differences include, but are not limited to, those discussed below and elsewhere in this prospectus, and particularly in "Risk Factors", "Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements", and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations".*

## **General**

With over \$4.5 billion in sales in fiscal 2013, the Company, together with its subsidiaries, is the largest arts and crafts specialty retailer in North America (based on store count) providing materials, project ideas and education for creative activities. Our mission is to inspire and enable customer creativity, create a fun and rewarding place to work, foster meaningful connections with our communities and lead the industry in growth and innovation. With crafting classes, store events, project sheets, store displays, mobile applications and online videos, we offer a shopping experience that can inspire creativity and confidence in our customers' artistic abilities.

As of November 1, 2014, we operate 1,166 Michaels retail stores in 49 states, as well as in Canada, with approximately 18,000 average square feet of selling space per store. We also operate 121 Aaron Brothers stores in 9 states, with approximately 5,400 average square feet of selling space per store, offering photo frames, a full line of ready-made frames, custom framing services, and a wide selection of art supplies.

We were incorporated in Delaware in July 2013 in connection with the Reorganization of MSI into a holding company structure. MSI was incorporated in Delaware in 1983 and is headquartered in Irving, Texas. On October 31, 2006, substantially all of the common stock of MSI was acquired through the Merger by the Sponsors, with certain shares retained by investment funds managed by Highfields (then-existing shareholders of MSI). As a result of the Merger and the Reorganization, Michaels Holdings LLC, an entity controlled by the Sponsors, owned approximately 93% of our outstanding Common Stock.

On July 2, 2014, we completed our initial public offering in which we issued and sold 27.8 million shares of common stock at a public offering price of \$17.00 per share. On June 27, 2014, our common stock was listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "MIK". Following the completion of our initial public offering, our Sponsors held approximately 80% of our outstanding Common Stock.

Table of Contents**Merchandising**

Each Michaels store offers approximately 35,000 basic SKUs in a number of product categories. The following table shows a breakdown of sales for Michaels stores by department as a percentage of total Net sales:

	<b>Fiscal year</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
General crafts	53%	51%	52%
Home décor and seasonal	20	21	20
Framing	17	17	17
Scrapbooking	10	11	11
	100%	100%	100%

We have a product design team focused on quality, innovation and cost mitigation. Our infrastructure and internal product development and global sourcing team position us to continue delivering a differentiated level of innovation, quality and value to our customers. Our global sourcing network allows us to control new product introductions, maintain quality standards, monitor delivery times, and manage product costs and inventory levels in order to enhance profitability.

We continue to search for ways to leverage our position as a market leader by establishing strategic partnerships and exclusive product relationships to provide our customers with exciting merchandise. During fiscal 2013, we partnered with popular celebrities and brands such as Cake Boss, Craftsy, Disney, Crayola, Martha Stewart Crafts and Rainbow Loom. We are continually exploring opportunities to form future partnerships and exclusive product associations.

We routinely identify merchandise that requires some price reduction to accelerate sales of the product. The need for this reduction is generally attributable to clearance of seasonal merchandise or product to be displaced from its assigned location in the store to make room for new merchandise. Additional SKUs considered for repricing are identified using our perpetual inventory data. In each case, the appropriate repricing is determined at our corporate support center office. Price changes are transmitted electronically to the store and instructions are provided to our stores regarding product placement, signage and display to ensure the product is effectively cleared.

Our Aaron Brothers stores offer on average approximately 7,200 SKUs, including photo frames, a full line of ready-made frames, art prints, framed art, art supplies and custom framing services. The merchandising strategy for our Aaron Brothers stores is to provide a unique, upscale framing assortment in an appealing environment with attentive customer service.

**Seasonality**

Our business is highly seasonal, with higher sales in the third and fourth fiscal quarters. Our fourth quarter, which includes the Christmas selling season, has on average accounted for approximately 34% of our Net sales and approximately 46% of our Operating income.

**Purchasing and inventory management**

We purchase merchandise from approximately 600 vendors through our wholly-owned subsidiary, Michaels Stores Procurement Company. We believe our buying power and ability to make centralized purchases

Table of Contents

enable us to acquire products on favorable terms. Centralized merchandising management teams negotiate with vendors in an attempt to obtain the lowest net merchandise costs and to improve product mix and inventory levels. In fiscal 2013, one sourcing agent supplied approximately 13% of our purchases, with no other vendor or sourcing agent accounting for more than 10% of total purchases.

In addition to purchasing from outside vendors, our Michaels and Aaron Brothers stores purchase custom frames, framing supplies and mats from our framing operation, Artistree, which consists of a manufacturing facility and four regional processing centers to support our retail stores. These intercompany transactions are eliminated in consolidation.

Substantially all of the products sold in Michaels stores are manufactured in Asia and North America. Goods manufactured in Asia generally require long lead times and are ordered four to six months in advance of delivery. Those products are either imported directly by us or acquired from distributors based in the United States, and purchase prices are denominated in U.S. dollars.

Our automated replenishment system uses perpetual inventory records to analyze individual store/SKU on-hand quantities, as well as other pertinent information such as sales forecasts, seasonal selling patterns, promotional events, and vendor lead times, to generate recommended merchandise reorder information. These recommended orders are reviewed daily and purchase orders are delivered electronically to our vendors and our distribution centers. In addition to improving our store in-stock position, these systems enable us to better forecast merchandise ordering quantities for our vendors and give us the ability to identify, order and replenish the stores' merchandise using less store associate labor. These systems also allow us to react more quickly to selling trends and allow our store associates to devote more time to customer service, thereby improving inventory productivity and sales opportunities.

## **Artistree**

We currently operate a vertically integrated framing operation leveraging Artistree, our wholly-owned manufacturing subsidiary, across our Michaels and Aaron Brothers store networks. Artistree supplies precut mats and high quality custom framing merchandise. We believe Artistree provides a competitive advantage to our Michaels and Aaron Brothers stores and gives us quality control over the entire process.

Our moulding manufacturing plant, located in Kernersville, North Carolina, converts lumber into finished frame moulding and supplies the finished frame moulding to our regional processing centers for custom framing orders for our stores. We manufacture approximately 35% of the moulding we process, import approximately 40% from quality manufacturers in Indonesia, Malaysia, China, and Italy, and purchase the balance from distributors. We directly source metal moulding for processing in our regional centers. The custom framing orders are processed (frames cut and joined, along with cutting mats and foamboard backing) and shipped to our stores where the custom frame order is completed for customer pick-up.

During fiscal 2013, we operated four regional processing centers in City of Industry, California; Coppell, Texas; Kernersville, North Carolina; and Mississauga, Ontario. Our precut mats and custom frame supplies are packaged and distributed out of our Coppell regional processing center. Combined, these facilities occupy approximately 538,000 square feet and, in fiscal 2013, processed approximately 30 million linear feet of frame moulding and approximately 5 million individually custom cut mats for our Michaels and Aaron Brothers stores.

In July 2012, we completed the implementation of a modified pricing and promotion cadence for our custom framing business. The program establishes a rotational collection cadence to limit the percentage of days that custom framing SKUs are on promotion, to more fully comply with regulatory requirements in various

Table of Contents

jurisdictions. The program is generally the same as that approved for the Company by the Attorney General for the State of New York. Based on results of this implementation in New York and other jurisdictions, we do not believe that this pricing and promotion cadence has had a material impact on our results of operations.

**Distribution**

We currently operate a distribution network through our wholly-owned subsidiary, Michaels Stores Procurement Company, to supply our stores with merchandise. Approximately 90% of Michaels stores' merchandise receipts are shipped through the distribution network with the remainder shipped directly from vendors to stores. Approximately 55% of Aaron Brothers stores' merchandise is shipped through the distribution network with the remainder shipped directly from vendors. Our seven distribution centers are located in California, Florida, Illinois, Pennsylvania, Texas, and Washington. In addition, we utilize a third-party warehouse to store and supply our seasonal merchandise in preparation for the holiday season, as well as a third-party fulfillment center for our e-commerce merchandise.

Michaels stores generally receive deliveries from the distribution centers weekly through a transportation network using a dedicated fleet of trucks and contract carriers. Aaron Brothers stores generally receive merchandise on a biweekly basis from a dedicated 174,000 square foot distribution center located in the Los Angeles, California area.

**Store expansion and relocation**

The following table shows our total store growth for the last five years and the nine months ended November 1, 2014:

	<b>Nine months ended</b>				<b>Fiscal year</b>	
	<b>November 1, 2014</b>	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>	<b>2010</b>	<b>2009</b>
<b>Michaels stores:</b>						
Retail stores open at beginning of period	1,136	1,099	1,064	1,045	1,023	1,009
Retail stores opened during the period	30	40	38	25	23	18
Retail stores opened relocations during the period	13	14	13	15	10	5
Retail stores closed during the period		(3)	(3)	(6)	(1)	(4)
Retail stores closed relocations during the period	(13)	(14)	(13)	(15)	(10)	(5)
Retail stores open at end of period	1,166	1,136	1,099	1,064	1,045	1,023
<b>Aaron Brothers stores:</b>						
Retail stores open at beginning of period	121	125	134	137	152	161
Retail stores opened during the period	5					
Retail stores opened relocations during the period		2				
Retail stores closed during the period	(5)	(5)	(8)	(3)	(15)	(9)
Retail stores closed relocations during the period		(1)	(1)			
Retail stores open at end of period	121	121	125	134	137	152
Total store count at end of period	1,287	1,257	1,224	1,198	1,182	1,175

Table of Contents

We believe, based on an internal real estate and market penetration study of Michaels stores, that the combined United States and Canadian markets can support approximately 1,500 Michaels stores. We opened 43 Michaels stores in the first nine months of fiscal 2014, including relocations of 13 Michaels stores. We continue to pursue a store relocation program to improve the real estate location quality and performance of our store base. During the fourth quarter of fiscal 2014, we opened 2 new Michaels stores and closed 1 Aaron Brothers store. Many of our store closings are stores that have reached the end of their lease term. We believe our ongoing store evaluation process results in strong performance across our store base. In fiscal 2015, we plan to open approximately 47 new Michaels stores, including 17 relocations.

We have developed a standardized procedure to allow for the efficient opening of new stores and their integration into our information and distribution systems. We develop the floor plan and merchandise layout and organize the advertising and promotions in connection with the opening of each new store. In addition, we maintain qualified store opening teams to provide new store associates with store training.

Our new store operating model, which is based on historical store performance, assumes a target store size of approximately 18,000 selling square feet. Our fiscal 2013 average initial net investment, which varies by site and specific store characteristics, is approximately \$1.2 million per store and consists of store build-out costs (net of tenant improvement allowances), pre-opening expenses and average first year inventory (net of payables).

## Competition

We are the largest arts and crafts specialty retailer in North America based on store count. The market we compete in is highly fragmented, including stores across the nation operated primarily by small, independent retailers along with a few regional and national chains. We believe customers choose where to shop based upon store location, breadth of selection, price, quality of merchandise, availability of product, and customer service. We compete with many different types of retailers and classify our competition within the following categories:

*Mass merchandisers.* This category includes companies such as Wal-Mart Stores, Inc., Target Corporation, and other mass merchandisers. These retailers typically dedicate only a small portion of their selling space to a limited selection of home décor, arts and crafts supplies, and seasonal merchandise, but they do seek to capitalize on the latest trends by stocking products that are complimentary to those trends and their current merchandise offerings. These mass merchandisers generally have limited customer service staffs with minimal amounts of experience in crafting projects.

*Multi-store chains.* This category includes several multi-store chains, each operating more than 100 stores, and comprises: Hobby Lobby Stores, Inc., which operates approximately 631 stores in 47 states; Jo-Ann Stores, Inc., which operates approximately 850 stores in 49 states; and A.C. Moore Arts & Crafts, Inc., which operates approximately 140 stores primarily in the Eastern United States. We believe all of these chains are significantly smaller than Michaels with respect to Net sales.

*Small, local specialty retailers.* This category includes local independent arts and crafts retailers and custom framing shops. Typically, these are single-store operations managed by the owner. These stores generally have limited resources for advertising, purchasing, and distribution. Many of these stores have established a loyal customer base within a given community and compete based on relationships and customer service.

*Internet.* This category includes all Internet-based retailers that sell arts and crafts merchandise, completed projects and custom framing online. Our Internet competition is inclusive of those companies

Table of Contents

discussed in the categories above, as well as others that may only sell products online. These retailers provide consumers with the ability to more easily search and compare products and prices compared to visiting a physical store. These sellers generally offer a wide variety of products but do not offer product expertise or project advice.

**Foreign sales**

All of our current international business is in Canada, which accounted for approximately 10% of total sales in both fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2012 and 9% of total sales in fiscal 2011. During the last three years, less than 8% of our assets have been located outside of the United States. See Note 14 and Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the periods ended February 1, 2014 and November 1, 2014, respectively, for Net sales and assets by country.

**Trademarks and service marks**

We own or have rights to trademarks, service marks or trade names that we use in connection with the operation of our business, including "Aaron Brothers," "Artistree," "Michaels," "Michaels the Arts and Crafts Store," "Recollections," "Where Creativity Happens," and the stylized Michaels logo. We have registered our primary private brands including Artist's Loft, ArtMinds, Celebrate It, Creatology, Craft Smart, imagin8, Recollections, Loops & Threads, Studio Décor, Bead Landing and Ashland, and various sub-brands associated with these primary marks. Solely for convenience, some of the trademarks, service marks and trade names referred to in this prospectus are listed without the ® and ™ symbols, but we will assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, our rights to our copyrights, trademarks, service marks, trade names and domain names.

**Employees**

As of January 1, 2015, we employed approximately 53,500 associates, approximately 42,000 of whom were employed on a part-time basis. The number of part-time associates substantially increases during the Christmas selling season. Of our full-time associates, approximately 3,200 are engaged in various executive, operating, training, distribution, and administrative functions in our support center and division offices and distribution centers, and the remainder are engaged in store operations. None of our associates are subject to a collective bargaining agreement.

**Legal proceedings**

*Employee claims*

*Rea claim*

On September 15, 2011, MSI was served with a lawsuit filed in the California Superior Court in and for the County of Orange ("Superior Court") by four former store managers as a class action proceeding on behalf of themselves and certain former and current store managers employed by MSI in California. The lawsuit alleges that MSI improperly classified its store managers as exempt employees and as such failed to pay all wages, overtime and waiting time penalties and failed to provide accurate wage statements. The lawsuit also alleges that the foregoing conduct was in breach of various laws, including California's unfair competition law. On December 3, 2013, the Superior Court entered an Order certifying a class of approximately 200 members. MSI successfully removed the case to the United States District Court for the Central District of California and on May 8, 2014, the class was de-certified. As a result of the decertification, we have approximately 50 individual claims pending. We believe we have meritorious

Table of Contents

defenses and intend to defend the lawsuits vigorously. We do not believe the resolution of the lawsuits will have a material effect on our consolidated financial statements.

*Graham claim*

On December 11, 2014, MSI was served with a lawsuit filed in the United States District Court-District of New Jersey by a former associate as a purported class action proceeding on her behalf and on behalf of similarly situated applicants who applied for employment to Michaels through an online application and on whom a background check for employment was procured. The lawsuit alleges violations of the Fair Credit Reporting Act as well as violations of the New Jersey Fair Credit Report Act by MSI allegedly failing to provide the proper disclosure and obtain the proper authorization to conduct background checks, and seeks statutory and punitive damages as well as reasonable attorneys' fees and costs. The Company intends to defend the lawsuit vigorously. Due to the early nature of the lawsuit, we cannot reasonably estimate the potential loss, or range of loss, related to the lawsuit, if any.

*Consumer class action claims*

*Data security incident*

Five putative class actions were filed against MSI relating to the Data Breach. The plaintiffs generally allege that MSI failed to secure and safeguard customers' private information including credit and debit card information, and as such, breached an implied contract, and violated the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act (and other states' similar laws) and are seeking damages including declaratory relief, actual damages, punitive damages, statutory damages, attorneys' fees, litigation costs, remedial action, pre and post judgment interest and other relief as available. The cases are as follows: *Christina Moyer v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on January 27, 2014; *Michael and Jessica Gouwens v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on January 29, 2014; *Nancy Maize and Jessica Gordon v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on February 21, 2014; and *Daniel Ripes v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on March 14, 2014. These four cases were filed in the United States District Court-Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division. On March 18, 2014, an additional putative class action was filed in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of New York, *Mary Jane Whalen v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, but was voluntarily dismissed by the plaintiff on April 11, 2014 without prejudice to her right to re-file a complaint. On April 16, 2014, an order was entered consolidating the remaining actions. On July 14, 2014, the Company's motion to dismiss the consolidated complaint was granted. On August 11, 2014, plaintiffs filed a motion to alter or amend the judgment, which was denied on October 14, 2014. The deadline to file a notice of appeal expired on November 13, 2014.

On December 2, 2014, Whalen filed a new lawsuit against MSI related to the Data Breach in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of New York, *Mary Jane Whalen v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, seeking damages including declaratory relief, monetary damages, statutory damages, punitive damages, attorneys' fees and costs, injunctive relief, pre and post judgment interest and other relief as available. The Company intends to defend the lawsuit vigorously. We cannot reasonably estimate the potential loss, or range of loss, related to the lawsuit, if any.

In connection with the breach, payment card companies and associations may seek to require us to reimburse them for unauthorized card charges and costs to replace cards and may also impose fines or penalties in connection with the Data Breach, and enforcement authorities may also impose fines or other remedies against us. We have also incurred other costs associated with the Data Breach, including legal fees, investigative fees, costs of communications with customers and credit monitoring services provided to our customers. In addition, state and federal agencies, including states' attorneys general and the Federal Trade Commission may investigate events related to the Data Breach, including how it occurred, its consequences and our responses. Although we intend to cooperate in these investigations, we may be

Table of Contents

subject to fines or other obligations, which may have an adverse effect on how we operate our business and our results of operations. We cannot reasonably estimate the potential loss or range of loss related to any reimbursement costs, fines or penalties that may be assessed, if any.

**General**

In addition to the litigation discussed above, we are now, and may be in the future, involved in various other lawsuits, claims and proceedings incident to the ordinary course of business. The results of litigation are inherently unpredictable. Any claims against us, whether meritorious or not, could be time consuming, result in costly litigation, require significant amounts of management time and result in diversion of significant resources.

For some of the matters disclosed above, as well as other matters previously disclosed in the Company's filings with the SEC, the Company is able to estimate a range of losses in excess of the amounts recorded, if any, in the accompanying financial statements. As of November 1, 2014, the aggregate estimated loss is approximately \$10 million, which includes amounts recorded by the Company. Additional information regarding our commitments and contingencies is provided in Note 12 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014 and Note 7 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the quarter ended November 1, 2014.

**Properties**

We lease substantially all of the sites for our Michaels and Aaron Brothers stores, with the majority of our stores having initial lease terms of approximately 10 years. The leases are generally renewable, with increases in lease rental rates. Lessors have made leasehold improvements to prepare our stores for opening under a majority of our existing leases. As of January 3, 2015, in connection with stores that we plan to open or relocate in future fiscal years, we had signed approximately 50 leases for Michaels stores.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

As of January 3, 2015, we lease the following non-store facilities:

	<b>Square footage</b>
<b>Distribution centers:</b>	
Hazleton, Pennsylvania	692,000
Jacksonville, Florida	506,000
Lancaster, California	763,000
Centralia, Washington	718,000
New Lenox, Illinois	693,000
Tarrant County, Texas	433,000
City of Commerce, California (Aaron Brothers)	174,000
	3,979,000
<b>Artistree:</b>	
Coppell, Texas (regional processing and fulfillment operations center)	230,000
Kernersville, North Carolina (manufacturing plant and regional processing center)	156,000
City of Industry, California (regional processing center)	90,000
Mississauga, Ontario (regional processing center)	62,000
	538,000
<b>Office space:</b>	
Irving, Texas (corporate headquarters)	296,000
Coppell, Texas (corporate satellite office)	67,000
Mississauga, Ontario (Canadian regional office)	3,000
	366,000
Coppell, Texas (new store staging warehouse)	82,000
	4,965,000

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

The following table indicates the number of our retail stores located in each state or province as of January 3, 2015:

State/province	Number of stores		
	Michaels	Aaron Brothers	Total
Alabama	12		12
Alaska	3		3
Alberta	18		18
Arizona	27	5	32
Arkansas	4		4
British Columbia	17		17
California	134	77	211
Colorado	22	3	25
Connecticut	17		17
Delaware	4		4
Florida	80		80
Georgia	34	1	35
Idaho	7	1	8
Illinois	38		38
Indiana	18		18
Iowa	8		8
Kansas	8		8
Kentucky	11		11
Louisiana	13		13
Maine	3		3
Manitoba	3		3
Maryland	24		24
Massachusetts	31		31
Michigan	35		35
Minnesota	23		23
Mississippi	7		7
Missouri	21		21
Montana	5		5
Nebraska	5		5
Nevada	10	5	15
New Brunswick	3		3
New Hampshire	9		9
New Jersey	30		30
New Mexico	3		3
New York	56		56
Newfoundland and Labrador	1		1
North Carolina	36		36
North Dakota	2		2
Nova Scotia	5		5
Ohio	31		31
Oklahoma	7		7

Table of Contents

State/province	Number of stores		
	Michaels	Aaron Brothers	Total
Ontario	53		53
Oregon	15	2	17
Pennsylvania	48		48
Prince Edward Island	1		1
Quebec	14		14
Rhode Island	4		4
Saskatchewan	3		3
South Carolina	13		13
South Dakota	2		2
Tennessee	15		15
Texas	79	19	98
Utah	13		13
Vermont	2		2
Virginia	35		35
Washington	23	8	31
West Virginia	5		5
Wisconsin	17		17
Wyoming	1		1
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,168</b>	<b>121</b>	<b>1,289</b>

Table of Contents**Management****Directors**

Set forth below is information concerning each of our directors, including their ages as of December 31, 2014, present principal occupations, other business experiences during at least the last five years, membership on committees of the Board, public company directorships held during the last five years and certain other directorships. Except for Messrs. El Gabbani and Mahoney and Ms. Raff, each of the directors listed below has served on our Board since July 17, 2013, the inception of the Company. The stockholders of the Company elected Messrs. Mahoney and El Gabbani to the Board, effective September 18, 2013 and June 6, 2014, respectively, in each case to fill a vacancy on the Board. Effective September 23, 2014, the Board appointed Ms. Raff to fill a vacancy on the Board. Each of Messrs. Bekenstein, Cook, Klessel, Levin and Quella has served on MSI's board of directors since October 31, 2006. MSI's stockholders elected Mr. Wallace to MSI's board of directors on March 11, 2009, elected Ms. Greenthal to MSI's board of directors on May 18, 2011, elected Mr. Rubin to MSI's board of directors effective March 18, 2013, elected Mr. Mahoney to MSI's board of directors effective September 18, 2013, and elected Mr. El Gabbani to MSI's board of directors effective June 6, 2014, in each case to fill a vacancy on MSI's board of directors.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Position</b>	<b>Committee membership</b>
Joshua Bekenstein	56	Director	
Todd M. Cook	43	Director	
Nadim El Gabbani	33	Director	
Jill A. Greenthal	58	Director	Audit Committee
Lewis S. Klessel	47	Director	
Matthew S. Levin	48	Director	Compensation Committee Nominating Committee
John J. Mahoney	63	Director	Audit Committee Nominating Committee
James A. Quella	64	Director	
Beryl B. Raff	63	Director	Audit Committee
Carl S. Rubin	55	Chief Executive Officer and Director	Nominating Committee
Peter F. Wallace	39	Director	Compensation Committee Nominating Committee

Currently Mses. Greenthal and Raff and Messrs. Mahoney and Quella qualify as independent directors as defined under the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market, and the Board has determined each to be independent.

Mr. Bekenstein is a managing director at Bain Capital. Prior to joining Bain Capital in 1984, Mr. Bekenstein spent several years at Bain & Company, where he was involved with companies in a variety of industries. Mr. Bekenstein received an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School and a B.A. from Yale University. Mr. Bekenstein serves as a director of Bombardier Recreational Products Inc., Bob's Discount Furniture, Canada Goose, TOMS Shoes, Dollarama, Inc., Toys "R" Us, Inc., Burlington Stores, Inc., Bright Horizons Family Solutions Inc., The Gymboree Corporation and Waters Corporation. Mr. Bekenstein's many years of experience both as a senior executive of a large investment firm and as a director of companies in various business sectors make him highly qualified to serve on our Board.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Mr. Cook is a managing director at Bain Capital. Prior to becoming a managing director in December 2008, Mr. Cook served in various capacities, most recently as a principal at Bain Capital from 2003 to 2008. Prior to joining Bain Capital in 1996, Mr. Cook was a consultant at Bain & Company. Mr. Cook received an M.B.A. from Stanford University Graduate School of Business where he was an Arjay Miller Scholar. He also holds a B.E. in electrical engineering and a B.A. in economics from Dartmouth College. Mr. Cook is a director of Blackhawk Specialty Tools, LLC. Mr. Cook was formerly a director of Dollarama, Inc. and a director of Dunkin' Brands, Inc. Mr. Cook's strong financial background combined with his experiences at Bain Capital and as director of other companies put him in a position to provide important contributions to our Board.

Mr. El Gabbani is a managing director at Blackstone. Prior to joining Blackstone in 2008, Mr. El Gabbani worked at Citadel Capital, where he was involved in the evaluation and execution of private equity transactions in North America and the Middle East. Mr. El Gabbani holds a B.A. in Physics from Columbia College and received an M.B.A. from the Harvard Business School, where he was named a Baker Scholar. He serves as a director of Bayview Asset Management, Exeter Finance Corp., Lendmark Financial Services, and Service King Collision Repair. Mr. El Gabbani's strong financial background combined with his experiences at Blackstone and as director of other companies put him in a position to provide important contributions to our Board.

Ms. Greenthal has been a senior advisor at Blackstone in the private equity group since 2007. From 2003 until 2007, Ms. Greenthal was a senior managing director in Blackstone's advisory group. Prior to joining The Blackstone Group, Ms. Greenthal was Co-Head of the Global Media Investment Banking Group, a member of the Executive Board of Investment Banking, and Co-Head of the Boston office of Credit Suisse First Boston. Ms. Greenthal graduated as a member of The Academy from Simmons College and received an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School. Ms. Greenthal currently serves on the board of directors of Akamai Technologies, Inc., Houghton- Mifflin Harcourt Company and The Weather Channel Companies. Ms. Greenthal was formerly a director of Martha Stewart Omnimedia, Orbitz Worldwide, Inc., Universal Orlando and Freedom Communications. Ms. Greenthal's background and understanding of capital markets and financial matters as well as her experiences described above enable her to provide valuable counsel to our management and Board.

Mr. Klessel is a managing director at Bain Capital. Prior to becoming a managing director in December 2011, Mr. Klessel served in various capacities, most recently as an operating partner at Bain Capital from December 2007 to December 2011. Mr. Klessel serves as a board member of Guitar Center, Inc. and The Gymboree Corporation. Prior to joining Bain Capital in October 2005, Mr. Klessel held a variety of operating and strategy leadership positions from 1997 to 2005 at The Home Depot, Inc., including President of HD Supply's Facilities Maintenance business, Divisional Merchandise Manager and head of Home Depot's Strategic Business Development function. Prior to 1997, Mr. Klessel was a strategy consultant with McKinsey & Company and a senior auditor with Ernst & Young. Mr. Klessel received an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School and a B.S. from the Wharton School at the University of Pennsylvania. Mr. Klessel has formerly served on the board of HD Supply, Inc. As a result of these and other professional experiences, Mr. Klessel brings to our Board extensive experience in operating and managing complex organizations, particularly in the retail industry, which strengthen the collective qualifications, skills and experience of our Board.

Mr. Levin is a managing director at Bain Capital. Mr. Levin joined Bain Capital in 1992 and was promoted to managing director in 2000. Prior to joining Bain Capital, Mr. Levin was a consultant at Bain & Company in the consumer products and manufacturing industries. Mr. Levin received an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School where he was a Baker Scholar. He received a B.S. from the University of California at Berkeley. Mr. Levin serves as a board member of Edcon Holdings Pty. Ltd., Guitar Center, Inc. and Toys "R"

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Us, Inc. Mr. Levin has formerly served on the Boards of Bombardier Recreational Products Inc., Jupiter Shop Chanel Co., Ltd and Unisource Worldwide, Inc. Mr. Levin's significant experience in and knowledge of corporate finance and managing companies put him in a position to provide important contributions to our Board.

Mr. Mahoney has been a director since September 2013 and retired as Vice Chairman of Staples, Inc. in July 2012, having served as Vice Chairman since January 2006. Mr. Mahoney also served as Chief Financial Officer for Staples, Inc. from 1996 through January 2012. Prior to 1996, Mr. Mahoney was a partner at Ernst & Young, LLP. He currently serves on the Board of Directors of Bloomin' Brands, Inc., Burlington Stores, Inc. and Chico's FAS, Inc. Previously, Mr. Mahoney served on the Board of Directors of Advo, Inc. from 2001 to 2007, Tweeter Home Entertainment Group, Inc. from 2004 to 2007 and Zipcar, Inc. from 2010 to 2012. Mr. Mahoney holds an M.B.A. from Northeastern University, as well as an undergraduate degree from the College of the Holy Cross. Mr. Mahoney's strong financial background and experience as a Vice Chairman and former Chief Financial Officer of a Fortune 500 retail company, enables him to provide valuable counsel to our management and Board.

Mr. Quella has been a Senior Advisor at Blackstone in the Private Equity Group since July 2013. Prior to his role as Senior Advisor, Mr. Quella was a Senior Managing Director, Operating Partner and co-head of the Portfolio Operations Group at Blackstone in the Private Equity Group from 2004 to 2013. Prior to joining Blackstone, Mr. Quella was a managing director and senior operating partner with DLJ Merchant Banking Partners CSFB Private Equity from 2000 to 2004. Prior to that, Mr. Quella worked at Mercer Management Consulting and Strategic Planning Associates and served as Vice- Chairman and co-head of the firm. Mr. Quella received a B.A. in International Studies from the University of Chicago/University of Wisconsin- Madison and an M.B.A. with Dean's Honors from the University of Chicago Graduate School of Business. Mr. Quella serves as a director of Catalent Pharma Solutions, Inc., DJO Global, Inc., and Freescale Semiconductor, Inc. Mr. Quella was formerly a director of Allied Waste, Columbia House, Celanese Corporation, Graham Packaging Company, L.P., Houghton-Mifflin Harcourt Company, Intelenet Global Services, The Nielsen Company and Vanguard Health Systems, Inc. Due to contributions that Mr. Quella can provide to our Board resulting from his financial expertise, as well as his significant experience in working with companies controlled by private equity sponsors, he is qualified to be on and is an asset to our Board.

Ms. Raff has been Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of Helzberg Diamond Shops, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary of Berkshire Hathaway Inc., since April 2009. Prior to joining Helzberg, Ms. Raff served in various management positions at J. C. Penney Company, Inc. since 2001, most recently as Executive Vice President and General Merchandising Manager since September 2005. In addition to her board service at Helzberg, Ms. Raff is a director of Group 1 Automotive, Inc. and Helen of Troy, Ltd. Ms. Raff was previously a director of Jo-Ann Stores, Inc. and Zale Corporation. Ms. Raff received her BBA from Boston University and her MBA from Drexel University. Ms. Raff will add value to our Board through her extensive experience in operating and managing large retail companies, as well as her prior public board service.

Mr. Rubin was named our Chief Executive Officer in March 2013. Prior to joining us, Mr. Rubin served as President and Chief Executive Officer of Ulta Salon, Cosmetics & Fragrance, Inc. since September 2010, and served as Chief Operating Officer from April 2010 to September 2010. Prior to joining Ulta, he served as President of the North American Retail division of Office Depot, Inc. beginning in January 2006 and as Executive Vice President, Chief Marketing Officer and Chief Merchandising Officer of Office Depot from 2004 to January 2006. Prior to joining Office Depot, Mr. Rubin spent six years at Accenture Consulting in senior leadership roles including Partner, where he advised clients and led engagements across retail formats and e-commerce businesses. Prior to that, Mr. Rubin held a number of senior merchandising and

Table of Contents

general management positions in the specialty retail and department store industry including with Federated Department Stores. He was a member of the executive committee of the board of directors of The National Retail Federation from January 2007 to April 2010. Mr. Rubin holds a B.A. degree from Brandeis University. As a result of these experiences, along with Mr. Rubin's service as our current Chief Executive Officer, he is in position to provide invaluable insight and important contributions to our Board.

Mr. Wallace is a senior managing director at Blackstone in the private equity group, which he joined in 1997. Mr. Wallace received a B.A. in Government from Harvard College. Mr. Wallace serves on the board of directors of Outerstuff, Ltd., AlliedBarton Security Services, GCA Services Group, SeaWorld Parks & Entertainment, Service King Collision Repair, Vivint Solar and The Weather Channel Companies. Mr. Wallace was formerly a director of Crestwood Midstream Partners, New Skies Satellites and Pelmorex Media. These experiences and knowledge, along with his service on public company boards, enhance Mr. Wallace's contributions and value to our Board.

In connection with our initial public offering, we entered into an investor agreement with the Sponsors. Under the investor agreement, each of the Sponsors will have the contractual right to name up to three individuals to our Board. See "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions Other Arrangements and Relationships with the Sponsors Investor Agreement".

**Executive officers**

Our current executive officers, their ages as of December 31, 2014, and their business experience during at least the past five years are set forth below.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Position</b>
Carl S. Rubin	55	Chief Executive Officer; Director
Charles M. Sonstebly	61	Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer
Theodore J. Bachmeier	51	Executive Vice President Store Operations
Stephen J. Carlotti	48	Executive Vice President Marketing
Thomas C. DeCaro	59	Executive Vice President Supply Chain
Philo T. Pappas	55	Executive Vice President Category Management
Shawn E. Hearn	49	Senior Vice President Human Resources
Dennis A. Mullahy	49	Senior Vice President Growth Initiatives
Michael J. Veitenheimer	58	Senior Vice President General Counsel and Secretary
Lance A. Weibye	45	Vice President Development

Mr. Sonstebly was named Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer in October 2010. Prior to joining Michaels, Mr. Sonstebly served in various capacities at Brinker International, Inc. (which owns and operates casual dining restaurants) beginning in March 1990, including as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer from 2001 until 2010, as Senior Vice President of Finance from 1997 to 2001 and as Vice President and Treasurer from 1994 to 1997. Mr. Sonstebly currently serves on the Board of Directors of Darden Restaurants, Inc. He was formerly a director of Zale Corporation.

Mr. Bachmeier was promoted to Executive Vice President Store Operations in September 2013. Prior to his promotion, he served as Zone Vice President of Stores for Michaels from January 2011, Vice President Aaron Brothers Store Operations from July 2008 to January 2011 and District Manager for Michaels from 1997 to July 2008.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Mr. Carlotti was named Executive Vice President Marketing of the Company, with an effective start date of June 17, 2014. Prior to joining Michaels, he served as Chief Executive Officer of The Cambridge Group (a growth strategy consultancy owned by The Nielsen Corporation), beginning in October 2011 and as Executive Vice President, Global Practices and Consulting Services at Nielsen (a global marketing research firm) from June 2011 to October 2011. Prior to joining Nielsen, Mr. Carlotti served as Senior Partner at Prophet (a brand strategy consulting firm) from June 2010 to June 2011. Prior to joining Prophet, Mr. Carlotti served in various capacities at McKinsey & Company since 1990, including as Senior Partner from 2005 to June 2010. Mr. Carlotti is an advisory board member of E&J Gallo Winery.

Mr. DeCaro was promoted to Executive Vice President Supply Chain in June 2005. Prior to his promotion, Mr. DeCaro served as Senior Vice President Inventory Management since August 2000 when he joined Michaels. From April 1998 until joining the Company, he was Vice President Merchandise for The Walt Disney Company (a multi-national media conglomerate, which also operates retail stores and theme parks). Prior to this, he held the position of Senior Vice President Merchandise Planning and Allocation for Kohl's Department Stores from February 1996 to April 1998. In addition, Mr. DeCaro has held various positions in Merchandise Planning and Allocation and Finance for The Disney Store, The Limited Stores, May Department Stores, and Sanger Harris Department Stores.

Mr. Pappas was named Executive Vice President Category Management in February 2009. Prior to joining Michaels, he served as Chief Merchandising Officer at Tweeter Home Entertainment Group, Inc. (a specialty consumer electronics retailer) from April 2003 to October 2008. On June 11, 2007, Tweeter and each of its subsidiaries filed voluntary petitions for reorganization under Chapter 11 of the United States Bankruptcy Code in the United States Bankruptcy Court for the District of Delaware in Wilmington, Delaware. Prior to joining Tweeter, Mr. Pappas served in various management positions at Staples, Inc. (an office supply store chain) from November 1994 to April 2003, most recently as Senior Vice President of Merchandising.

Mr. Hearn was named Senior Vice President Human Resources in February 2007. Prior to his promotion, Mr. Hearn served as our Vice President, Field Human Resources since joining Michaels in November 2002. Prior to joining Michaels, he served in various operations, marketing and human resource management positions at KMart Corporation (a multi-national retailer) from August 1981 to October 2002, most recently as Vice President, Advertising.

Mr. Mullahy was named Senior Vice President Growth Initiatives in November 2013. Prior to joining Michaels, he served as Senior Vice President Supply Chain at Ulta Salon, Cosmetics & Fragrance, Inc. from July 2011 to September 2013. Prior to joining Ulta, Mr. Mullahy served as Group Vice President Merchandising and Supply Chain Management at Meijer, Inc. from May 2005 to July 2011. In addition, Mr. Mullahy served in various capacities at Accenture, including as Partner from June 2000 to May 2005.

Mr. Veitenheimer was named Senior Vice President General Counsel and Secretary in January 2008. Prior to joining Michaels, Mr. Veitenheimer served as Senior Vice President of Law and Human Resources of The Bombay Company, Inc. (a specialty retailer focused on home accessories, wall decor and furniture), from June 2007 to December 2007 after having served as a Senior Vice President since February 2006, its Secretary since July 1985 and its General Counsel since November 1983. On September 20, 2007, The Bombay Company, Inc. and its U.S. wholly-owned subsidiaries filed voluntary petitions for relief under Chapter 11 of the United States Bankruptcy Code in the United States Bankruptcy Court, Northern District of Texas, Fort Worth Division. Prior to joining The Bombay Company, Mr. Veitenheimer was in private practice of law in Fort Worth, Texas.

Table of Contents

Mr. Weibye was named Vice President Development in November 2012. He previously served as our Vice President Real Estate from June 2010 and Senior Director Real Estate since joining the Company in April 2008. Prior to joining Michaels, he served as Senior Manager of Real Estate Development for Kohl's Corporation from July 2004 to April 2008.

**Corporate governance**

Our Board is responsible for governing company business and affairs. Highlights of our corporate governance practices are described below.

***Board Committees***

We have an Audit Committee, a Compensation Committee and a Nominating Committee, which have the composition and responsibilities described below. Each committee operates under a charter that has been approved by our Board. A copy of the Compensation Committee charter and the Audit Committee charter can be found by clicking on "Corporate Governance" in the Investor Relations section of our website [www.michaels.com](http://www.michaels.com). The members of each committee are appointed by the Board and each member serves until his or her successor is elected and qualified, unless he or she is earlier removed or resigns. In addition, each of the Sponsors has a contractual right to nominate three directors to our Board for as long as such Sponsor owns at least 25% of our outstanding Common Stock, two directors for so long as such Sponsor holds 10% or more but less than 25% of our outstanding Common Stock, and one director for so long as such Sponsor owns at least 3% or more but less than 10% of our outstanding Common Stock. In addition, from time to time, special committees may be established under the direction of the Board when necessary to address specific issues.

Because we are taking advantage of the "controlled company" exception under the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market, our Compensation Committee is not composed entirely of independent directors as defined under the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market.

***Compensation Committee***

The purpose of the Compensation Committee is to assist the Board in fulfilling responsibilities relating to oversight of the compensation of our directors, executive officers and other employees and the Company's incentive and equity-based compensation programs. The Compensation Committee reviews and recommends to our Board compensation plans, policies and programs and approves specific compensation levels for all executive officers. The Compensation Committee consists of Messrs. Levin and Wallace. A copy of the amended and restated Compensation Committee charter, which satisfies the applicable standards of the SEC and The NASDAQ Stock Market, is available on our website.

***Audit Committee***

The purpose of the Audit Committee is set forth in the amended and restated Audit Committee charter. The Audit Committee's primary duties and responsibilities are to:

appoint, compensate, retain and oversee the work of any registered public accounting firm engaged for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or performing other audit, review or attest services and review and appraise the audit efforts of our independent accountants;

establish procedures for (i) the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints regarding accounting, internal accounting controls or auditing matters and (ii) confidential and anonymous submissions by our employees of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters;

Table of Contents

engage independent counsel and other advisers, as necessary;

determine funding of various services provided by accountants or advisers retained by the committee;

review our financial reporting processes and internal controls;

review and approve related-party transactions or recommend related-party transactions for review by independent members of our Board; and

provide an open avenue of communication among the independent accountants, financial and senior management and the Board.

The Audit Committee consists of Ms. Greenthal, Mr. Mahoney and Ms. Raff, each of whom has been determined to be an independent director by our Board. Mr. Mahoney is also an "audit committee financial expert" within the meaning of Item 407 of Regulation S-K. A copy of the amended and restated Audit Committee charter, which will satisfy the applicable standards of the SEC and The NASDAQ Stock Market, is available on our website.

*Nominating Committee*

The purpose of the Nominating Committee is to identify individuals qualified to become members of the Board and to recommend to the Board director nominees for its annual meeting of shareholders. The Nominating Committee's primary duties and responsibilities will be to receive nominations for such qualified individuals and review recommendations put forward by the Chief Executive Officer, and make recommendations to the Board, taking into account each candidate's ability, judgment and experience and the overall diversity and composition of the Board; establish a policy under which stockholders of the Company may recommend a candidate to the Nominating Committee for consideration for nomination as a director; and recommend to the Board qualified individuals to serve as committee members on the various Board committees.

The Nominating Committee consists of Messrs. Levin, Mahoney, Rubin and Wallace.

**Code of Business Conduct and Ethics**

We have adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that applies to, among others, our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, and principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions. A current copy of the code is posted on our website, which is located at [www.michaels.com](http://www.michaels.com).

**Compensation Committee interlocks and insider participation**

None of our executive officers serves as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any other entity (other than a subsidiary) that has one or more executive officers who serve on our Board or Compensation Committee.

Table of Contents

## **Executive compensation**

### **Compensation discussion and analysis**

#### *Introduction*

The following Compensation Discussion and Analysis relates to compensation paid to our executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table for fiscal 2013. Peter F. Wallace and Matthew S. Levin are the current members of our Compensation Committee and served in this role for all of fiscal 2013.

#### *Named executive officers*

According to SEC rules, the Summary Compensation Table that immediately follows this Compensation Discussion and Analysis must include specific information for each of the following persons: (i) all individuals serving as principal executive officer or acting in a similar capacity during the last completed fiscal year; (ii) all individuals serving as principal financial officer or acting in a similar capacity during the last completed fiscal year; (iii) the three most highly compensated executive officers other than the principal executive officer and principal financial officer who were serving as executive officers at the end of the last completed fiscal year; and (iv) up to two additional individuals for whom disclosure would have been provided but for the fact that the individual was not serving as an executive officer at the end of the last completed fiscal year. These individuals are: Carl S. Rubin, Chief Executive Officer (who served as principal executive officer for part of the year); Charles M. Sonstebly, former Member of the Interim Office of the Chief Executive Officer (the "Office of the CEO") and our Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer (who served as principal executive officer for part of the year and principal financial officer for the full year); Thomas C. DeCaro, Executive Vice President Supply Chain; Philo T. Pappas, Executive Vice President Category Management; and Paula A. Puleo, former Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer (the three other most highly compensated individuals who were serving as executive officers at the end of fiscal 2013); Lewis S. Klessel, former Member of the Office of the CEO and Interim Chief Operating Officer (who served as principal executive officer for part of the year); Nicholas E. Crombie, former Executive Vice President Store Operations (for whom disclosure would have been provided but for the fact that he was not serving as an executive officer at the end of fiscal 2013); and Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu, former Executive Vice President Private Brands & Global Sourcing (for whom disclosure would have been provided but for the fact that he was not serving as an executive officer at the end of fiscal 2013). These officers are referred to as our "Named Executive Officers". This Compensation Discussion and Analysis and the executive compensation discussion and tables that immediately follow describe the process, strategy and elements of the Company's compensation plan as applied to our Named Executive Officers.

#### *Compensation program*

The principal objectives of our compensation program are:

attracting and retaining highly qualified individuals whose contributions result in Michaels meeting or exceeding its financial and strategic goals;

motivating officers to achieve exceptional levels of operating and financial performance; and

aligning officer interests with the long-term goals of our stockholders.

Currently, the total compensation for our officers at the Vice President level and above, including our Named Executive Officers, consists of three main components: base salary, annual cash incentive bonuses and long-term equity-based incentive compensation awards. The strategy of the cash incentive

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

compensation program for our officers is to provide higher annual cash incentive compensation for exceptional corporate and business financial performance. We also believe that by placing a significant equity opportunity in the hands of executives who are capable of driving and sustaining growth, our stockholders will benefit along with the executives who helped create stockholder value. The table immediately below includes the principal components of our pay-for-performance approach.

Component	Purpose	Form	Pay for performance
Base Salary	Provide sufficient competitive pay to attract and retain experienced and successful executives; reward good performance and business results.	Cash	Adjustments to base salary are based on individual performance, contributions to the business, competitive practices and internal comparisons.
Annual Bonuses	Provide financial incentives to members of management who were in positions to make important contributions to our success.	Cash	The potential award amount varies with the degree to which we achieve our annual financial objectives, as well as the Named Executive Officer's individual job performance.
Long-Term Equity-Based Compensation	Encourage and reward building long-term stockholder value and employment retention; engage executives in innovation and align them with stockholder interests. We currently provide two equity award types to balance specific objectives.		
	Stock Options: Reward absolute stock price appreciation	Stock Options	The potential appreciation in our stock price above the option exercise price motivates our Named Executive Officers to build stockholder value. Named Executive Officers may realize value only if our stock price appreciates over the option term.
	Restricted Stock Awards: Create retention values even during periods of short-term market volatility	Restricted Stock Awards	Retain certain Named Executive Officers and align them with stockholders' interests by awarding a fixed number of common shares upon vesting, which creates retention value even during periods of short-term market volatility.

Table of Contents

**Compensation strategy: policies and procedures**

*Role of Compensation Committee and Chief Executive Officer in compensation decisions*

The Compensation Committee reviews and recommends to the Board for approval the compensation for all executive officers at the level of Executive Vice President and above. The Board is ultimately responsible for determining the compensation of our executive officers at the level of Executive Vice President and above. Under our certificate of incorporation, equity-based plans must also be approved by a majority of our stockholders. Both the Compensation Committee and the Board receive recommendations with respect to compensation-related decisions regarding our executive officers, other than the Chief Executive Officer, by senior management, principally the Chief Executive Officer and the Senior Vice President Human Resources. In determining compensation levels for the executive officers, the Compensation Committee considers the scope of an individual's responsibilities, the competitive market salary at comparable companies, an individual's performance and prior experience, the performance of the Company and the attainment of planned financial and strategic initiatives. These factors are evaluated by the Compensation Committee and the Board, with the attainment of planned financial and strategic initiatives given greater weight with respect to executive bonuses. The Compensation Committee considers overall past compensation and incentives in determining the compensation of executive officers and seeks to assure that the executives have appropriate incentives to achieve high levels of Company performance. The Compensation Committee, through its members' involvement in other portfolio companies, has experience regarding compensation programs for executive officers. Approvals by the Compensation Committee and recommendations to the Board by the Compensation Committee are based on a number of factors, including a review of competitive market data (as described below) and executive performance (as described below), the experience of the members of the Compensation Committee and alignment of compensation with the overall strategic direction and goals of the Company.

*Competitive market data and use of compensation consultants*

As part of the compensation review process, management and our human resources department provide the Compensation Committee with market survey data on executive total compensation levels and general information regarding executive compensation practices in our industry, including information provided by The Hay Group, Inc., a compensation consulting firm engaged by the Company. The Hay Group's work in 2013 included a review of total compensation of our executive officers in light of amounts paid and compensation targets at comparable companies gathered from its internal sources as well as from published executive compensation surveys. During fiscal 2013, The Hay Group additionally evaluated our equity compensation program and made recommendations to the Compensation Committee and senior management. The Compensation Committee did not aim to set total compensation, or any compensation element, at a specified level as compared to the survey and other data that it reviewed, but rather used the data above, as well as that gathered through its members' involvement in other portfolio companies, as guidelines for the overall executive compensation program. As further described below under "Changes to Compensation Post-IPO", the Company has further retained The Hay Group to advise on executive compensation matters related to our initial public offering and transition to a public company.

*Changes to compensation post-IPO*

As noted above, the Company has retained, with approval of the Compensation Committee, The Hay Group to advise on certain aspects of executive compensation related to our initial public offering and transition to a public company. The Hay Group has developed, and our Compensation Committee has approved, a peer group of companies against which to assess the appropriateness of the following key components of

Table of Contents

our Named Executive Officers' compensation following this offering: base salary, annual cash bonuses and long term equity incentives.

The Compensation Committee may request that The Hay Group (or another compensation consultant) provide periodic market data on our peer group of companies. Our Compensation Committee may make adjustments in executive compensation levels in the future as a result of more formal market comparison processes.

## Highlights of 2013 performance

The highlights of our fiscal 2013 performance include the following:

Net sales increased to \$4,570 million, a 3.7% improvement over fiscal 2012, which included a 53rd week, driven by a 2.9% increase in comparable store sales and the opening of 56 new Michaels stores and Aaron Brothers stores, including the relocation of 14 Michaels and 2 Aaron Brothers stores.

We reported record operating income of \$610 million, an increase of 3.0% from fiscal 2012.

Net income increased by \$43 million to \$243 million.

Adjusted EBITDA, a non-GAAP measure that is a required calculation in our debt agreements, improved by 6.0%, from \$747 million in fiscal 2012 to \$792 million in fiscal 2013 (see "Prospectus summary Summary consolidated financial and operating data.").

Throughout this Compensation Discussion and Analysis, we refer to our Adjusted EBITDA, a non-GAAP financial measure. A reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA to the most directly comparable GAAP financial measure is contained in "Prospectus summary Summary consolidated financial and operating data."

## Compensation elements

### *Base salaries*

Base salaries for our executive officers are established based on the scope of their responsibilities, individual performance and prior experience, our operating and financial performance and the attainment of planned financial and strategic initiatives, taking into account the knowledge of the members of the Compensation Committee regarding competitive market compensation paid by companies for similar positions. The Compensation Committee recommends, and the Board sets, base salaries for officers at the level of Executive Vice President and above at a level designed to attract and retain highly qualified individuals who make contributions that result in the Company meeting its operating and financial goals. Base salaries are reviewed and adjusted annually as deemed appropriate by the Compensation Committee and the Board, as applicable, based on performance and business results, among other factors. The Compensation Committee and the Board have discretion to adjust base salary during the fiscal year and exercised that discretion in fiscal 2013, as described below.

Effective March 18, 2013, Mr. Rubin was named Chief Executive Officer of the Company. Pursuant to his negotiated employment agreement, Mr. Rubin's base salary was set at \$1,100,000, subject to increase at the Board's discretion. In setting Mr. Rubin's base salary, the Compensation Committee considered Mr. Rubin's compensation at his prior employer, the compensation of John B. Menzer, who was Mr. Rubin's predecessor as Chief Executive Officer the Company, and the level of compensation needed to recruit Mr. Rubin to the Company. In the opinion of the members of the Compensation Committee, based on their

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

experience with other companies, including other portfolio companies, this salary level represented a competitive market level for the position.

In March 2013, the Compensation Committee reviewed recommendations regarding 2013 annual base salary rates for the executive officer group based on the criteria set forth under " Compensation Strategy: Policies and Procedures". Merit guidelines are determined by reviewing surveys of market data provided by our management and human resources department, as well as giving consideration to the Company's overall budget for associate compensation. Based upon this information, the Company applied an annual merit rate budget of 3.0%, which provided for median merit based increases at 3.0%, for fiscal 2013 for its corporate support center associates, including our Named Executive Officers.

Annual base salary rates for the Named Executive Officers (other than Mr. Klessel) for fiscal 2013 and 2012, which reflect increases between the two fiscal years, are shown below.

	Base salary	
	2013	2012
<b>Executive</b>		
Carl S. Rubin(1)	\$ 1,100,000	\$
Lewis S. Klessel(2)		
Charles M. Sonstebly	711,109	687,061
Thomas C. DeCaro	393,437	381,978
Philo T. Pappas	431,897	419,318
Paula A. Puleo(3)	362,000	328,952
Nicholas E. Crombie(4)	362,187	355,085
Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu(5)	387,777	376,483

(1) Pursuant to Mr. Rubin's employment agreement his base salary was set at \$1,100,000, subject to increase at the Board's discretion

(2) Mr. Klessel is a managing director of, and receives compensation and benefits through, Bain Capital. Effective May 16, 2012, Mr. Klessel was appointed, along with the Company's Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer, Charles M. Sonstebly, to the Office of the CEO. Effective as of such date, Mr. Klessel was also appointed to the newly-created position of interim Chief Operating Officer of the Company. The Office of the CEO was discontinued, effective March 18, 2013, Mr. Rubin's start date with the Company and the date Mr. Klessel resigned from his position as interim Chief Operating Officer. Mr. Klessel received no compensation from the Company for his service as Member of the Office of the CEO and Interim Chief Operating Officer.

(3) Ms. Puleo received a base salary increase of 10.0% in connection with her promotion to the position of Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer on February 3, 2013, and therefore did not receive an additional base salary adjustment in March 2013.

(4) Mr. Crombie left the Company on July 27, 2013.

(5) Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013.

### **Annual bonuses**

In March 2013, the Compensation Committee recommended that the Board approve the Company's Bonus Plan for executive officers, including the Named Executive Officers (other than Mr. Klessel), for fiscal 2013 (the "Bonus Plan") to provide financial incentives to these individuals and those other members of management who were in positions to make important contributions to Michaels' success. The Board subsequently approved the Bonus Plan. The structure of the Bonus Plan and the specific objectives relating to bonus payments were proposed by the Members of the Interim Office of the CEO and the Senior Vice President Human Resources and were reviewed by the Compensation Committee. For each of Messrs. Rubin and Sonstebly, the Bonus Plan tied 80% of his respective bonus opportunity to Michaels' attainment of a financial objective

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

(EBITDA, less an inventory charge), and 20% to individual job performance. For each of Mr. DeCaro, Mr. Pappas and Mr. Zhu, and Ms. Puleo, the Bonus Plan tied 50% of his or her respective bonus opportunity to our attainment of a financial objective (EBITDA, less an inventory charge), 15% to a business unit sales objective (sales for all U.S. Michaels stores), 15% to a business unit buyer contribution objective (generally margin, plus entitlements, less an inventory charge),

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

and 20% to individual job performance. For Mr. Crombie, the Bonus Plan tied 50% of his bonus opportunity to our attainment of a financial objective (EBITDA, less an inventory charge), 15% to a business unit sales objective (U.S. and Canada sales for all of our stores), 15% to an objective relating to the Company's operating income, and 20% to individual job performance. Individual management business objectives for Mr. Rubin were reviewed with the Compensation Committee prior to the commencement of his employment with the Company on March 18, 2013. Individual management business objectives for Mr. Sonsteby were reviewed with and approved by the Compensation Committee in the early part of fiscal year 2013. Individual management business objectives for Messrs. Crombie, Pappas and Zhu, and Ms. Puleo, were reviewed with and approved by the Members of the Interim Office of the CEO. For Mr. DeCaro, these objectives were reviewed and approved by the Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer.

Under the Bonus Plan, before any business unit or individual performance payout would be earned, the actual results of the financial objective (EBITDA, less an inventory charge) was required to meet the threshold established by the Compensation Committee, which represented approximately 93% of target. Each participating Named Executive Officer was entitled to a bonus equal to a certain percentage of that executive officer's base salary, depending on the achievement of the threshold, target and maximum performance level. The Compensation Committee set threshold, target and maximum performance levels for all officers of the Company. The final award depended on the actual level of performance achieved; however, the Compensation Committee retained the right to make adjustments in its sole discretion. The target levels of performance for the bonus goals were set at levels that the Compensation Committee and the Board believed to be reasonably achievable in view of Michaels' historical annual performance. In the Compensation Committee's view, taking into account comparative data provided to the Committee by management and our human resources department, the compensation payable to the Named Executive Officers upon reaching target levels of performance, when added to their base salaries, creates a level of total cash compensation competitive with that paid by comparable companies for similar positions. Additional information regarding the targets and objectives is set forth below.

The target percentages set for fiscal 2013 and the threshold, target and maximum payments, for each of the Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2013 were as follows:

	<b>Carl S. Rubin</b>	<b>Lewis S. Klessel</b> (2)	<b>Charles M. Sonsteby</b>	<b>Thomas C. DeCaro</b>	<b>Philo T. Pappas</b>	<b>Paula A. Puleo</b> (3)	<b>Nicholas Weizhong E. Crombie</b> (4)	<b>Wilson Zhu</b> (5)
<b>Percentage of Base Salary</b>								
Target		100%	70%	50%	50%	50%	50%	50%
Threshold		18%	13%	9%	9%	9%	9%	9%
Maximum		200%	140%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
<b>Financial Weightings</b>								
Overall Company Results		80%	80%	50%	50%	50%	50%	50%
Company Sales				15%	15%	15%	15%	15%
Buyer Contribution Less								
Inventory Charge				15%	15%	15%		15%
Company Operating Income							15%	
Individual Performance		20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%

(1) Pursuant to Mr. Rubin's employment agreement his target bonus for fiscal 2013 was set at 100% of base salary, as if he had been employed for the full fiscal year (with a maximum bonus at 200% of his base salary).

(2) Mr. Klessel received no compensation from the Company for his service as Member of the Interim Office of the CEO and Interim Chief Operating Officer and did not participate in the Bonus Plan.

Table of Contents

- (3) Ms. Puleo separated from the Company on March 9, 2014. Pursuant to the Bonus Plan, Ms. Puleo received her full earned bonus for fiscal 2013.
- (4) Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013, and is not eligible for a bonus for fiscal 2013.
- (5) Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013. In connection with his departure, the Company entered into an agreement with Mr. Zhu, whereby Mr. Zhu received his earned pro-rated bonus for fiscal year 2013 pursuant to the Bonus Plan, under established bonus criteria associated with the Bonus Plan, on the same terms as bonuses paid to other executive officers of the Company.

*Company objective measures*

In March 2014, the Compensation Committee reviewed the Company's financial results as applicable to the pre-established fiscal 2013 Bonus Plan objectives for the Named Executive Officers. As described previously, the financial objective of Company performance that was applicable to all the Named Executive Officers was EBITDA, less an inventory charge. At the beginning of fiscal 2013, the Compensation Committee established, and the Board approved, the EBITDA, less an inventory charge, goal for target-level bonuses at \$690.8 million, with a maximum at \$768.6 million and a threshold at \$642.6 million. For the fiscal year, the Company achieved financial performance of \$662.1 million, which was between threshold and target. As a result, bonuses above threshold, but below target, were earned for the Company performance element of the plan.

At the beginning of fiscal 2013, the Compensation Committee approved a business unit sales objective goal for target level bonuses for each of Messrs. DeCaro, Pappas, Crombie and Zhu and Ms. Puleo at \$4,463.3 million, with a maximum at \$4,686.4 million and a threshold at \$4,351.7 million. The Compensation Committee also approved a business unit buyer contribution objective goal for target level bonuses for Messrs. DeCaro, Pappas and Zhu and Ms. Puleo at \$2,244.9 million, with a maximum at \$2,357.1 million and a threshold at \$2,188.8 million, and a Company operating income objective goal for a target level bonus for Mr. Crombie at \$552.4 million, with a maximum at \$607.7 million and a threshold at \$519.3 million. For the fiscal year, the Company achieved business unit sales of \$4,430.3 million, which was between threshold and target, a business unit buyer contribution of \$2,187.8 million, which was below threshold, and Company operating income of \$519.0 million, which was below threshold. As a result, bonuses below target were earned for the business unit sales objective element of the plan, and bonuses were not earned for the business unit buyer contribution element of the plan and the Company operating income element of the plan.

*Company subjective measures*

Since the financial objective threshold that is applicable to all Named Executive Officers was met, in March 2014 the Compensation Committee, based upon input and recommendations by Messrs. Rubin and Sonstebly, as applicable, evaluated the individual performance of each of the Named Executive Officers for purposes of determining bonuses based on individual performance. The individual management business objectives are both quantitative and subjective, and are assessed in the aggregate to determine the individual's level of performance and bonus achieved. No specified weight is given to a single measure within the group of individual management business objectives, and the Compensation Committee's assessment of achievement reflects a generalized view of overall achievement of the group of measures. In addition, the individual management business objectives for all executives included an assessment of the executive's job knowledge and skills, communication skills, interpersonal skills, effectiveness of management, judgment and decision-making, drive and commitment, leadership and customer satisfaction.

For fiscal 2013, Mr. Rubin's group of individual management business objectives were focused primarily on EBITDA, margin improvement and year-over-year comparable sales growth, as well as solidifying the Company's leadership team and defining its appropriate long-term strategy. The Compensation Committee determined that Mr. Rubin achieved his individual objectives at 200% of target. Mr. Sonstebly's group of

Table of Contents

individual management business objectives were focused primarily on new store growth and performance, increasing profitability and cash flow, effective use of capital and development of future strategies. The Compensation Committee determined that Mr. Sonstebly achieved his individual objectives at 100% of target. Mr. DeCaro's group of individual management business objectives focused primarily on increasing profitability and cash flow, improvement in inventory turnover and in-stocks, supply chain cost management, and growth in private brand sales and gross margin. The Compensation Committee determined that Mr. DeCaro achieved his individual objectives at 50% of target. For Mr. Pappas, his group of individual management business objectives focused primarily on increasing profitability and cash flow, store offering competitiveness, pricing improvement, new business development, and growth in private brand sales and gross margin. The Compensation Committee determined that Mr. Pappas achieved his individual objectives at 100% of target.

Ms. Puleo left the Company on March 9, 2014. Pursuant to the terms of the Bonus Plan, she received her full earned bonus for fiscal 2013. Ms. Puleo was credited as achieving her individual objectives component at a fixed 50% of target, in accordance with the terms of the Bonus Plan. Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013, and was not eligible to receive a bonus for fiscal 2013 in accordance with the terms of the Bonus Plan. Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013. In connection with Mr. Zhu's departure, the Company entered into an agreement with him, whereby he received his earned pro-rated bonus for fiscal year 2013 pursuant to the Bonus Plan, under established bonus criteria associated with the Bonus Plan, on the same terms as bonuses paid to other executive officers of the Company. Mr. Zhu was credited as achieving his individual objectives component at a fixed 50% of target, in accordance with the terms of the Bonus Plan.

*Actual payouts*

Actual payouts for the Named Executive Officers, as a percentage of target level bonuses, were as follows:

	<b>Carl S. Rubin</b>	<b>Lewis S. Klessel(1)</b>	<b>Charles M. Sonstebly</b>	<b>Thomas C. DeCaro</b>	<b>Philo T. Pappas</b>	<b>Paula A. Puleo(2)</b>	<b>Nicholas E. Crombie(3)</b>	<b>Weizhong Wilson Zhu(4)</b>
Percent of Target	77%	N/A	57%	44%	54%	44%	N/A	44%

(1) Mr. Klessel received no compensation from the Company for his service as Member of the Interim Office of the CEO and Interim Chief Operating Officer and did not participate in the Bonus Plan.

(2) Ms. Puleo separated from the Company on March 9, 2014. Pursuant to the Bonus Plan, Ms. Puleo received her full earned bonus for fiscal 2013.

(3) Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013, and is not eligible for a bonus for fiscal 2013.

(4) Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013. In connection with his departure, the Company entered into an agreement with Mr. Zhu, whereby Mr. Zhu will receive his earned pro-rated bonus for fiscal year 2013 pursuant to the Bonus Plan, under established bonus criteria associated with the Bonus Plan, on the same terms as bonuses paid to other executive officers of the Company.

Actual amounts paid to the Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2013 are listed in the Summary Compensation Table.

Bonus opportunities for our Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2014 will be administered pursuant to the Company's Bonus Plan for fiscal 2014 (the "2014 Bonus Plan"). See "Executive Compensation Bonus Plan for Fiscal 2014" for additional details.

Table of Contents

*Long term equity-based compensation*

On February 15, 2007, our Board and stockholders approved the Michaels Stores, Inc. 2006 Equity Incentive Plan (as amended, the "Equity Incentive Plan" or the "Plan"), as well as certain specific grants under the Equity Incentive Plan to officers. In addition, the stockholders granted the Board authority to make Equity Incentive Plan grants to other eligible participants in the future. The Equity Incentive Plan was established to advance the interests of Michaels and its affiliates by providing for the grant of equity-based awards to eligible officers, associates, directors of, and consultants and advisors to, Michaels or its affiliates. Awards under the Equity Incentive Plan are intended to align the long term incentives of our executives and stockholders. Grants are typically awarded when an executive is hired and may be awarded for subsequent promotions. All stock option grants made in fiscal 2013 were at exercise prices set at or above the grant date fair market value of the underlying stock as determined by our Board. In connection with the Reorganization in July 2013, the Equity Incentive Plan was assumed by The Michaels Companies, Inc., and the stock underlying outstanding awards became, and the stock upon which future awards will be based will be, the Common Stock of The Michaels Companies, Inc. In connection with our initial public offering, we amended and restated the Equity Incentive Plan, which is described in more detail below under "Executive Compensation 2014 Omnibus Plan".

Historically, the majority of outstanding options under the Equity Incentive Plan were divided into tranches with escalating exercise prices. The tranche structure of the option awards, with increasing exercise prices in each tranche, was designed to incentivize long term performance by tying the value of the options to long term increases in the value of our Common Stock. These grants were not made on an annual basis; rather, each initial grant was intended to incentivize the executive for a five-year period based on the vesting and exercise structure of the grant. For these options, each tranche vests 20% on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of the grant date, and all unvested options vest immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement).

Beginning in 2013, the Company began issuing annual option grants that will vest over four years and accelerate in full on a Change of Control. The Company made the first of such grants in July 2013. Detail regarding option grants made to our Named Executive Officers in fiscal year 2013 and awards outstanding at the end of fiscal year 2013 is provided, respectively, in the Grants of Plan-Based Awards for Fiscal 2013 table and the Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End 2013 table that follow this Compensation Discussion and Analysis.

In July 2013, we paid a cash dividend to equity holders. In accordance with the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, we also made cash payments and exercise price adjustments to outstanding equity awards to take account of the decreased fair value of our Common Stock as a result of the cash dividend.

*Other benefits and perquisites*

Our Named Executive Officers also receive certain other benefits and perquisites. During fiscal 2013, these benefits included contributions to 401(k) accounts, the payment of life insurance premiums, certain Company-paid medical benefits, car allowances and, in some cases, tax gross-ups and reimbursement for income taxes on taxable benefits. Additionally, our Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Rubin, was also entitled to the use of a Company-owned or leased automobile. The Compensation Committee and the Board believe these benefits and perquisites are reasonable and consistent with the nature of the executives' responsibilities, provide a competitive level of total compensation to our executives and serve as an important element in retaining those individuals. The cost to Michaels of these benefits to the Named Executive Officers is set forth in the Summary Compensation Table under the column "All Other

Table of Contents

Compensation" and detail about each element is set forth in the table presented in footnote 5 to the Summary Compensation Table.

### **Employment and severance agreements**

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Rubin, which became effective on March 18, 2013, the date he commenced employment, which includes certain severance benefits in the event of termination other than for cause or by Mr. Rubin for good reason, as such terms are defined in the agreement. The specific terms of Mr. Rubin's employment agreement, are discussed in the section entitled "Rubin Employment Agreement" following the Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table and under "Executive Compensation Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control".

In April 2008, the Board approved the Company's Officer Severance Pay Plan (the "OSPP"), which was amended in July 2008 and was further amended on May 20, 2014. The OSPP was established by the Company to provide certain severance benefits, subject to the terms and conditions of the OSPP, to designated officers (those with a position of Vice President or above, or an equivalent title as approved by the Compensation Committee, and excluding the Chief Executive Officer) in the event that their employment is terminated as a result of a "Qualifying Termination" (as defined in the OSPP and described below). A more detailed description of the OSPP may be found under "Executive Compensation Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control".

Ms. Puleo's employment with the Company ended on March 9, 2014, and her severance benefits under the OSPP were triggered. Ms. Puleo executed a Severance Agreement and Release, which included, in addition to a release of all claims against the Company, a forfeiture of all outstanding unvested stock options and a confidentiality, non-solicitation, non-compete and non-interference agreement. Pursuant to her Severance Agreement and Release under the OSPP, Ms. Puleo is receiving: (i) eighteen months of base salary continuation in accordance with the Company's regular payroll practices; (ii) her earned bonus for fiscal 2013; (iii) a prorated target annual bonus for fiscal 2014; and (iv) the continuation of group medical and dental benefits for the eighteen month salary continuation period. The actual amounts payable to Ms. Puleo in connection with her separation are set forth under "Executive and Director Compensation Potential Payments upon a Termination or Change in Control".

### **Tax and accounting considerations**

*Deductibility of executive compensation.* While the Compensation Committee takes into account tax and accounting considerations in structuring the components of the Company's compensation program, these considerations are secondary to the primary objectives of the program. Section 162(m) of the Code ("Section 162(m)") disallows a U.S. federal income tax deduction to any publicly held corporation for compensation exceeding \$1 million in any taxable year to any of the corporation's chief executive officer or other three most highly paid named executive officers other than its chief financial officer, except as to compensation that qualifies as performance-based or is otherwise exempt under Section 162(m). Following our initial public offering and for awards made under a plan established before our initial public offering concluded, the Company expects to be able to claim the benefit of a special exemption that applies to compensation paid (or compensation in respect of stock options or restricted stock granted) during a transition period that may extend until the Company's annual meeting of stockholders scheduled to be held in 2018, unless the transition period is terminated earlier under the Section 162(m) post-offering transition rules. At such time as we are subject to the deduction limitations of Section 162(m), we expect that the Compensation Committee will take the deductibility limitations of Section 162(m) into account in its compensation decisions. However, the Compensation Committee may, in its judgment, authorize

Table of Contents

compensation payments that are not exempt under Section 162(m) when it believes that such payments are appropriate to attract or retain talent.

**The Company's compensation policies and practices as they relate to risk management**

In accordance with the applicable disclosure requirements, to the extent that risks may arise from the Company's compensation policies and practices that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company, the Company is required to discuss those policies and practices for compensating the employees of the Company (including employees that are not Named Executive Officers) as they relate to the Company's risk management practices and the possibility of incentivizing risk-taking.

The Compensation Committee has evaluated the policies and practices of compensating the Company's employees in light of the relevant factors, including the following:

the financial performance targets of the Company's annual cash incentive program are the budgeted objectives that are reviewed and approved by the Board and/or the Compensation Committee

bonus payouts are not based solely on Company performance, but also require achievement of individual performance objectives

bonus awards generally are not contractual entitlements, but are reviewed by the Compensation Committee and/or the Board and can be modified at their discretion

the financial opportunity in the Company's long-term equity-based compensation is best realized through long term appreciation of the Company's stock price, which mitigates excessive short-term risk-taking

the allocation of compensation between cash and equity awards and the focus on stock-based compensation, including options and restricted stock awards generally vesting over a period of years, thereby mitigating against short-term risk taking

Based on such evaluation, the Compensation Committee has determined that the Company's policies and practices are not reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company.

Table of Contents**Executive and director compensation***Summary compensation table*

According to SEC rules, the Summary Compensation Table must include specific information for each of the Named Executive Officers previously identified in the Compensation Discussion and Analysis above.

Name and principal position	Year	Salary (1)	Bonus (2)	Stock awards (3)	Non-equity incentive compensation		All other compensation (5)	Total (6)
					Option awards (4)	plan (4)		
Carl S. Rubin <i>Chief Executive Officer</i> (6)	2013	\$ 930,769	\$ 6,099,187	\$ 10,657,671	\$ 847,660	(7)	\$ 2,142,407	\$ 20,677,694
Lewis S. Klessel <i>Former Member of the Interim Office of the Chief Executive Officer and Interim Chief Operating Officer</i> (8)	2013							
	2012							
Charles M. Sonstebly <i>Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer</i>	2013	706,484	450,026	558,709	284,017		765,464	2,764,700
	2012	683,213			382,899		26,469	1,092,581
	2011	662,181			538,576		36,057	1,236,814
Thomas C. DeCaro <i>Executive Vice President Supply Chain</i>	2013	389,720	183,464	227,771	86,871		1,136,701	2,024,527
	2012	380,537			105,731		34,987	521,255
	2011	369,473			181,851		39,579	590,903
Philo T. Pappas <i>Executive Vice President Category Management</i>	2013	429,478	2,573,624	344,671	116,958		1,083,175	4,547,906
	2012	416,591			116,067		32,872	565,530
	2011	399,986			257,506		41,945	699,437
Paula A. Puleo <i>Former Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer</i> (9)	2013	360,729	277,624	471,494	79,930	(10)	450,682	1,640,459
Nicholas E. Crombie <i>Former Executive Vice President Store Operations</i> (11)	2013	186,693	183,464	227,771			1,189,311	1,787,239
Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu <i>Former Executive Vice President Private Brands &amp; Global Sourcing</i> (12)	2013	318,490	183,464	227,771	71,351	(13)	1,117,184	1,918,260
	2012	374,717			104,210		34,743	513,670
	2011	360,546			196,726		35,853	593,125

- (1) The amounts in this column represent actual base salary paid during fiscal 2013.
- (2) The amounts in this column represent the aggregate grant date fair value of restricted stock awards calculated in accordance with ASC 718, based on the assumptions set forth in Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014. Because the Company was a privately-held company, and there was no public market for our Common Stock, the fair market value of our Common Stock was determined by our Board based on available information that was material to the value of our Common Stock at the time such determination was made, including any third-party valuation reports, the principal amount of the Company's indebtedness, the Company's actual and projected financial results, and fluctuations in the market value of publicly traded companies in the retail industry.
- (3) Represents the aggregate grant date fair value of option awards on the date of the grant as calculated in accordance with ASC 718, based on the assumptions set forth in Note 8 to our Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended February 1, 2014. Because the Company was a privately-held company, and there was no public market for our Common Stock, the fair market value of our Common Stock was determined by our Board based on available information that was material to the value of our Common Stock and at the time such determination was made, including any third-party valuation reports, the principal amount of the Company's indebtedness, the Company's actual and projected financial results, and fluctuations in the market value of publicly traded companies in the retail industry.
- (4) The amounts in this column for fiscal 2013 reflect the cash awards to Named Executive Officers under the Bonus Plan, which are discussed in further detail in the preceding section " Compensation Elements Annual Bonuses". The amounts in this column for fiscal 2012 reflect the cash awards to Named Executive Officers under the Company's bonus plan for executive officers for fiscal 2012. The amounts in this column for fiscal 2011 reflect the cash awards to Named Executive Officers under the Company's bonus plan for executive officers for fiscal 2011.

Table of Contents

(5) The table below reflects the fiscal 2013 components of this column.

	<b>Carl S. Rubin</b>	<b>Lewis S. Kessel</b>	<b>Charles M. Sonstebly</b>	<b>Thomas C. DeCaro</b>	<b>Philo T. Pappas</b>	<b>Paula A. Puleo</b>	<b>Nicholas E. Crombie</b>	<b>Weizhong Wilson Zhu</b>
Medical Benefits(a)	\$ 22,293	\$ 8,776	\$ 18,810	\$ 18,977	\$ 3,334	\$ 6,098	\$ 15,446	
Insurance Premiums	3,382	7,051	6,527	4,849	2,941	5,734	7,536	
Company Contributions to 401(k) and Group Universal Life Plan			2,550	2,465	2,550	2,550	2,550	
Tax Reimbursement(b)	161,972	700	807	735	380	453	807	
Relocation Car Allowance/company owned or Leased Automobile	223,642							
Equity Bonus(c)	10,022	7,200	7,200	7,200	7,200	3,600	5,816	
Consulting fees(d)		741,637	1,100,707	1,048,849	434,177	1,095,876	1,085,029	
Other(e)	63,459					75,000		
	1,657,637	100	100	100	100			
<b>Total Other</b>	<b>\$ 2,142,407</b>	<b>\$ 765,464</b>	<b>\$ 1,136,701</b>	<b>\$ 1,083,175</b>	<b>\$ 450,682</b>	<b>\$ 1,189,311</b>	<b>\$ 1,117,184</b>	

(a) The amounts in this row for all executive officers include Company-paid medical benefits, including executive and spouse physicals, and for Mr. Rubin the amounts also include reimbursement for COBRA medical coverage payments made by Mr. Rubin to his previous employer before he commenced employment with the Company.

(b) Reimbursement of income taxes is related to relocation, long-term disability insurance premiums and medical expenses.

(c) The amounts in this row reflect dividend equivalent payments made to equity award holders in July 2013 related to the dividend paid in July 2013 to our equity holders.

(d) The amounts in this row for Mr. Rubin include payments for consulting services provided to the Company by Mr. Rubin prior to the commencement of his employment. The amounts in this row for Mr. Crombie include payments for consulting services provided to the Company by Mr. Crombie following his retirement from the Company.

(e) The amounts in this row for Mr. Rubin include a price protection payment equal to \$1,641,515 provided to Mr. Rubin in connection with the sale of 130,000 shares of Ulta stock held by him, as more fully described under the section entitled "Employment Agreement with certain Named Executive Officers Ruben Employment Agreement" following the Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table and \$16,122 for legal expenses incurred by Mr. Rubin in connection with the review and negotiation of his employment agreement with the Company. The amounts in this row for Messrs. Sonstebly, DeCaro and Pappas and Ms. Puleo reflect the cost attributable to executive gifts.

(6) Mr. Rubin became our Chief Executive Officer on March 18, 2013, and his base salary for fiscal 2013 reflects a partial fiscal year.

- (7) Pursuant to Mr. Rubin's employment agreement, he was deemed to have provided a full year of employment during the fiscal year for purposes of his fiscal 2013 bonus.
- (8) Mr. Klessel received no compensation from the Company for his service as Member of the Interim Office of the CEO and Interim Chief Operating Officer and did not participate in the Bonus Plan.
- (9) Ms. Puleo separated from the Company on March 9, 2014.
- (10) Pursuant to the Bonus Plan, Ms. Puleo received her full earned bonus for fiscal 2013.
- (11) Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013.
- (12) Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013.
- (13) In connection with Mr. Zhu's departure, the Company entered into an agreement with Mr. Zhu, whereby Mr. Zhu received his earned pro-rated bonus for fiscal year 2013 pursuant to the Bonus Plan, under established bonus criteria associated with the Bonus Plan, on the same terms as bonuses paid to other executive officers of the Company.

Table of Contents**Grants of plan-based awards for fiscal 2013**

The following table sets forth the plan-based awards granted to Named Executive Officers pursuant to Company plans during fiscal 2013.

*Grants of plan-based awards*

Name and principal position	Grant date	Threshold (\$)	Estimated future payouts under non-equity incentive plan awards(1)		All other stock awards: number of shares of stock(2)(3)	All other option awards: number of securities underlying options(2)	Exercise price of options(3) (\$/Sh)	Grant date fair value of stock and option awards(4)
			Target (\$)	Maximum (\$)				
Carl S. Rubin <i>Chief Executive Officer(5)</i>	N/A 3/18/2013	198,000	1,100,000	2,200,000	334,288			
Lewis S. Klessel <i>Former Member of the Interim Office of the Chief Executive Officer and Interim Chief Operating Officer(6)</i>	3/18/2013 N/A					1,845,000	\$ 18.25 \$ 10,657,671	
Charles M. Sonstebly <i>Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer(7)</i>	N/A 7/3/2013 7/3/2013	89,600	497,776	995,552	24,619	123,098	\$ 18.28 \$ 558,709	
Thomas C. DeCaro <i>Executive Vice President Supply Chain(8)</i>	N/A 7/3/2013 7/3/2013	35,409	196,718	393,437	10,036	50,184	\$ 18.28 \$ 227,771	
Philo T. Pappas <i>Executive Vice President Category Management(9)</i>	N/A 7/3/2013 7/3/2013 1/22/2014	38,871	215,949	431,897	15,188	75,940	\$ 18.28 \$ 344,671 \$ 15.56	
Paula A. Puleo <i>Former Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer(10)</i>	N/A 2/11/2013 7/3/2013 7/3/2013	32,580	181,000	362,000	15,188	20,664	\$ 17.41 \$ 126,823 75,940 \$ 18.28 \$ 344,671	
Nicholas E. Crombie <i>Former Executive Vice President</i>	N/A 7/3/2013	32,597	181,093	362,187	10,036			

<i>Store Operations(11)</i>	7/3/2013				50,184 \$	18.28 \$	227,771
Weizhong "Wilson"	N/A	34,900	193,889	387,777			
Zhu							
<i>Former Executive Vice President</i>	7/3/2013				10,036		
<i>Private Brands &amp; Global Sourcing(12)</i>	7/3/2013				50,184 \$	18.28 \$	227,771

(1) The threshold, target and maximum amounts in these columns show the range of payouts targeted for fiscal 2013 for performance under the Bonus Plan as discussed in further detail in " Compensation Elements Annual Bonuses." Bonuses were recommended by the Compensation Committee, and approved by the Board, as applicable, in March 2014 and were paid in April 2014, as reflected in the Summary Compensation Table in the column entitled "Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation."

(2) All equity awards noted below were granted under the Equity Incentive Plan. In connection with the Reorganization in July 2013, we assumed the Equity Incentive Plan and the stock underlying outstanding awards became, and the stock upon which future awards will be based will be, the Common Stock of The Michaels Companies.

(3) All grants of stock options under the Equity Incentive Plan have an exercise price determined by us to be equal to or greater than the fair market value of our Common Stock on the date of grant. Because we were privately-held and there was no public market for our Common Stock at the time of the grants shown in this column, the fair market value of our Common Stock was determined by our Board based on available information that was material to the value of our Common Stock, including any third-party valuation reports, the principal amount of the Company's indebtedness, the Company's actual and projected financial results, and fluctuations in the market value of publicly-traded companies in the retail industry.

(4) The amounts in this column represent the aggregate grant date fair value of the restricted stock awards as calculated in accordance with ASC 718.

(5) Stock options were granted to Mr. Rubin effective March 18, 2013 vesting at the rate of 20% per year on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of March 18, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control"). Mr. Rubin's restricted stock awards vest 20% on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of March 18, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Rubin will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid

Table of Contents

with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(6) Mr. Klessel received no compensation from the Company for his service as Member of the Interim Office of the CEO and Interim Chief Operating Officer and did not participate in the Bonus Plan.

(7) Stock options were granted to Mr. Sonstebly effective July 3, 2013 vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control").

Mr. Sonstebly's restricted stock awards vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013; or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Sonstebly will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(8) Stock options were granted to Mr. DeCaro effective July 3, 2013 vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control").

Mr. DeCaro's restricted stock awards vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013; or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. DeCaro will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(9) Stock options were granted to Mr. Pappas effective July 3, 2013 vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control").

Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 15,188 unvested shares of Common Stock vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013; or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 73,800 unvested shares of Common Stock vest 40% on the second anniversary of January 22, 2014, and the remaining 60% on the third anniversary of January 22, 2014. Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 73,800 additional unvested shares of Common Stock vest as follows: (a)(i) 24,599 shares on March 31, 2015, so long as the Company achieves the numerical earnings before interest and taxes, less an inventory charge ("EBIT") plan designated by the Board in its business plan for fiscal year 2014 (the "Fiscal 2014 EBIT Number"); (ii) 24,600 shares on March 31, 2016, so long as Company has achieved at least ten percent (10%) growth in its EBIT in fiscal year 2015 as compared to fiscal year 2014; and (iii) 24,600 shares on March 31, 2017, so long as the Company has achieved at least ten percent (10%) growth in its EBIT in fiscal year 2016 as compared to fiscal year 2015; and (b) with respect to any shares that otherwise remain unvested pursuant to (a), Mr. Pappas will be able to vest in such shares contingent on the Company's achievement of certain cumulative EBIT metrics. All of Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards will vest immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Pappas will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(10) Stock options were granted to Ms. Puleo effective February 11, 2013 vesting at the rate of 20% per year on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of February 11, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control").

Additional stock options were granted to Ms. Puleo effective July 3, 2013 vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each

of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Ms. Puleo's restricted stock awards were scheduled to vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013; or immediately upon a Change of Control. Ms. Puleo was entitled to receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock she held, but if any such dividends or distributions were paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares would have been subject to the same restrictions on transferability as were the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid. Ms. Puleo separated from the Company on March 9, 2014. Pursuant to the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, she had 60 days from that date to exercise any of her vested stock options; her unvested stock options and shares of restricted stock terminated on her separation date.

(11) Stock options were granted to Mr. Crombie effective July 3, 2013 vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control"). Mr. Crombie's restricted stock awards were scheduled to vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013; or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Crombie was entitled to receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he held, but if any such dividends or distributions were paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares would have been subject to the same restrictions on transferability as were the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid. Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013. Pursuant to the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, he had 60 days from that date to exercise any of his vested stock options; his unvested stock options and shares of restricted stock terminated on his separation date.

(12) Stock options were granted to Mr. Zhu effective July 3, 2013 vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control"). Mr. Zhu's restricted stock awards were scheduled to vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013; or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Zhu was entitled to receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he held, but if any such dividends or distributions were paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares would have been subject to the same restrictions on transferability as were the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid. Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013. Pursuant to the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, he had 60 days from that date to exercise any of his vested stock options; his unvested stock options and shares of restricted stock terminated on his separation date.

Table of Contents

**Employment agreements with certain named executive officers**

***Rubin employment agreement***

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Rubin, our current Chief Executive Officer, which became effective on March 18, 2013, the date he commenced employment. The agreement provides for an annual base salary of \$1,100,000, subject to increase in the Board's discretion. Mr. Rubin will be eligible to earn an annual incentive bonus at a target of 100% of his annual base salary and a maximum bonus of 200% of his annual base salary, based on performance criteria established by the Board for each fiscal year during his employment. Mr. Rubin receives no additional compensation for his service as a director of the Company.

In connection with the commencement of his employment, Mr. Rubin was granted an option to purchase 1,845,000 shares of the Company's Common Stock at an exercise price of \$18.25 (which was adjusted to \$13.86 in connection with the payment of a dividend to holders of our Common Stock in July 2013). The option will vest pro rata on each of the first five anniversaries of the date of grant. Mr. Rubin also was granted 334,288 restricted shares of the Company's Common Stock that will vest pro rata on the first through fifth anniversaries of the date of grant.

Due to the timing of Mr. Rubin's joining the Company and typical trading window restrictions at Ulta, the Company agreed to make Mr. Rubin whole for a period of 90 days (subject to extension for any blackout period) after Mr. Rubin's effective resignation date with Ulta, for any decline in the price of Ulta stock realized upon sale of up to 130,000 shares of Ulta stock held by him below an agreed threshold. The Company paid Mr. Rubin \$1,641,515 in connection with such price protection, which amount is subject to claw back in the event that Mr. Rubin voluntarily terminates his employment or is terminated for cause on or before March 18, 2015.

For more information about the payments and benefits payable to Mr. Rubin upon a termination of his employment, please see "Executive Compensation Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control" below.

Table of Contents**Outstanding equity awards at fiscal year-end 2013**

The following table sets forth information regarding equity awards held by our Named Executive Officers as of February 1, 2014.

Name and principal position	Number of securities underlying unexercised options exercisable (#)	Option awards(1)			Stock awards(1)	
		Number of securities underlying unexercised options (#)	Option exercise price(2) (\$)	Option expiration date	Number of shares or units of stock that have not vested (#)	Value of shares or units of stock that have not vested(3) (\$)
Carl S. Rubin <i>Chief Executive Officer(4)</i>		1,845,000	\$ 13.86	3/17/2021	334,288	\$ 5,358,588
Lewis S. Klessel <i>Former Member of the Interim Office of the Chief Executive Officer and Interim Chief Operating Officer(5)</i>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	
Charles M. Sonstebly <i>Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer(6)</i>	167,568	111,714	\$ 6.23	1/4/2019	47,173	\$ 756,174
	167,568	111,714	\$ 6.55	1/4/2019		
	167,568	111,714	\$ 11.14	1/4/2019		
		123,098	\$ 13.90	7/2/2021		
Thomas C. DeCaro <i>Executive Vice President Supply Chain(7)</i>	178,767	44,693	\$ 3.48	7/1/2017	10,036	\$ 160,888
	106,270		\$ 7.39	2/15/2015		
	93,754	23,438	\$ 7.39	7/1/2017		
	106,270		\$ 11.38	2/15/2015		
	93,754	23,438	\$ 11.38	7/1/2017		
		50,184	\$ 13.90	7/2/2021		
Philo T. Pappas <i>Executive Vice President Category Management(8)</i>	178,767	44,693	\$ 3.48	7/1/2017	166,244	\$ 2,664,873
	9,312		\$ 7.22	4/16/2017		
	171,320	42,830	\$ 7.22	7/1/2017		
	9,312		\$ 11.31	4/16/2017		
	171,320	42,830	\$ 11.31	7/1/2017		
		75,940	\$ 13.90	7/2/2021		
Paula A. Puleo <i>Former Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer(9)</i>	83,798	55,866	\$ 4.95	7/1/2017	15,188	\$ 243,461
	83,798	55,866	\$ 6.94	5/22/2015		
	83,798	55,866	\$ 11.29	6/3/2016		
		20,664	\$ 13.02	7/1/2017		
		75,940	\$ 13.90	7/2/2021		
Nicholas E. Crombie <i>Former Executive Vice President Store Operations(10)</i>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	
Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu <i>Former Executive Vice President Private Brands &amp; Global Sourcing(11)</i>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	

(1) In connection with the Reorganization in July 2013, we assumed the Equity Incentive Plan and the stock underlying outstanding awards became, and the stock upon which future awards will be based will be, the Common Stock of The Michaels Companies.

(2) In July 2013, we paid a cash dividend to equity holders. In accordance with the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, we also made cash payments and exercise price adjustments to outstanding equity awards to take account of the decreased fair value of our Common Stock by

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

the amount of the cash dividend of \$4.38 per share. Exercises prices for outstanding stock option awards were adjusted to reflect the dividend for each Named Executive Officer with stock options outstanding at fiscal year end as follows:

Name and principal position	Option expiration date	Option exercise price at grant (\$)	Post-dividend option exercise price(\$)
Carl S. Rubin <i>Chief Executive Officer</i>	3/17/2021	\$ 18.25	\$ 13.86
Charles M. Sonsteby <i>Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer</i>	1/4/2019	\$ 9.80	\$ 6.23
	1/4/2019	\$ 10.16	\$ 6.55
	1/4/2019	\$ 15.24	\$ 11.14
	7/2/2021	\$ 18.28	\$ 13.90
Thomas C. DeCaro <i>Executive Vice President Supply Chain</i>	7/1/2017	\$ 5.08	\$ 3.48
	2/15/2015	\$ 10.16	\$ 7.39
	7/1/2017	\$ 10.16	\$ 7.39
	2/15/2015	\$ 15.24	\$ 11.38
	7/1/2017	\$ 15.24	\$ 11.38
	7/2/2021	\$ 18.28	\$ 13.90
Philo T. Pappas <i>Executive Vice President Category Management</i>	7/1/2017	\$ 5.08	\$ 3.48
	4/16/2017	\$ 10.16	\$ 7.22
	7/1/2017	\$ 10.16	\$ 7.22
	4/16/2017	\$ 15.24	\$ 11.31
	7/1/2017	\$ 15.24	\$ 11.31
	7/2/2021	\$ 18.28	\$ 13.90
Paula A. Puleo <i>Former Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer</i>	7/25/2018	\$ 7.83	\$ 4.95
	7/25/2018	\$ 10.16	\$ 6.94
	7/25/2018	\$ 15.24	\$ 11.29
	2/10/2021	\$ 17.41	\$ 13.02
	7/2/2021	\$ 18.28	\$ 13.90

(3) Because we were privately-held and there was no public market for our Common Stock at the time of the grants shown in this column, the fair market value of our Common Stock was determined by our Board based on available information that was material to the value of our Common Stock, including any third-party valuation reports, the principal amount of the Company's indebtedness, the Company's actual and projected financial results, and fluctuations in the market value of publicly-traded companies in the retail industry. The shares were valued based on a price per share of \$16.03, which was the fair market value of our Common Stock on February 1, 2014, the last day of fiscal 2013.

(4) Stock options were granted to Mr. Rubin effective March 18, 2013, vesting at the rate of 20% per year on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of March 18, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or a Change of Control"). Mr. Rubin will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(5) Mr. Klessel does not participate in the Equity Incentive Plan.

(6) Stock options were granted to Mr. Sonsteby effective January 5, 2011, vesting at the rate of 20% per year on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of October 4, 2010, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the

Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or a Change of Control"). Additional stock options were granted to Mr. Sonstebly effective July 3, 2013, vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Sonstebly's restricted stock awards with respect to 22,553 unvested shares of Common Stock vest 50% on each of the fourth and fifth anniversaries of October 4, 2010 (vesting of the shares would accelerate upon a Change of Control or in the event of Mr. Sonstebly's death, disability or termination by the Company without cause). Mr. Sonstebly's restricted stock awards with respect to 24,619 unvested shares of Common Stock vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Sonstebly will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(7) Stock options were granted to Mr. DeCaro on July 2, 2009, in connection with the Company's Exchange Offer (as defined below), with 212,541 of these options immediately exercisable on the grant date based on the period of time that his exchanged options had been held in relation to their term. The remaining options vest at the rate of 20% on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of July 2, 2009, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or a Change of Control"). On June 3, 2009, the Company announced an offer to exchange certain employee stock options issued under the Equity Incentive Plan ("Exchange Offer") for new stock options granted on an one-for-one basis. On July 2, 2009, employees exchanged 11.8 million outstanding stock options under the following terms: (i) outstanding vested or unvested options to purchase shares of Common Stock that had an exercise price per share of \$20.33, \$25.41, \$30.49 or \$35.57 for an equal number of new options to purchase shares of Common Stock with an exercise price equal to \$5.08 and a new five-year vesting schedule that commenced on July 2, 2009 and an eight-year term; and (ii) outstanding options that had an exercise price per share of \$10.16 and \$15.24 were exchanged for an equal number of new options with

Table of Contents

the same exercise price. A portion of the new options were vested based on the period of time that the exchanged options had been held in relation to the total term of the option and have identical terms and conditions to the previously issued options, and the remaining new options have a new five-year vesting schedule that commenced on July 2, 2009 and an eight-year term. Additional stock options were granted to Mr. DeCaro effective July 3, 2013, vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. DeCaro's restricted stock awards vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013 or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. DeCaro will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(8) Stock options were granted to Mr. Pappas on July 2, 2009 in connection with the Company's Exchange Offer, with 18,624 of these options immediately exercisable on the grant date based on the period of time that his exchanged options had been held in relation to the total term of the option. The remaining options vest at the rate of 20% on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of July 2, 2009, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control"). Additional stock options were granted to Mr. Pappas effective July 3, 2013, vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 3,456 unvested shares of Common Stock fully vest on the fifth anniversary of April 17, 2009 (vesting of the shares would accelerate upon Change of Control or in the event of Mr. Pappas's death, disability or termination by the Company without cause). Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 15,188 unvested shares of Common Stock vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 73,800 unvested shares of Common Stock vest 40% on the second anniversary of January 22, 2014, and the remaining 60% on the third anniversary of January 22, 2014. Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards with respect to 73,800 additional unvested shares of Common Stock vest as follows: (a)(i) 24,599 shares on March 31, 2015, so long as the Company achieves the numerical earnings before interest and taxes, less an inventory charge ("EBIT") plan designated by the Board in its business plan for fiscal year 2014 (the "Fiscal 2014 EBIT Number"); (ii) 24,600 shares on March 31, 2016, so long as Company has achieved at least ten percent (10%) growth in its EBIT in fiscal year 2015 as compared to fiscal year 2014, and (iii) 24,600 shares on March 31, 2017, so long as the Company has achieved at least ten (10%) percent growth in its EBIT in fiscal year 2016 as compared to fiscal year 2015; and (b) with respect to any shares that otherwise remain unvested pursuant to (a), Mr. Pappas will be able to vest in such shares contingent on the Company's achievement of certain cumulative EBIT metrics. All of Mr. Pappas's restricted stock awards will vest immediately upon a Change of Control. Mr. Pappas will receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock he holds, but if any such dividends or distributions are paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid.

(9) Stock options were granted to Ms. Puleo effective July 26, 2010, and February 11, 2013, vesting at the rate of 20% per year on each of the first through fifth anniversaries of July 26, 2010, and February 11, 2013, respectively, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement). Additional stock options were granted to Ms. Puleo effective July 3, 2013, vesting at the rate of 25% per year on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and below under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control"). Ms. Puleo's restricted stock awards were scheduled to vest 25% on each of the first through fourth anniversaries of July 3, 2013, or immediately upon a Change of Control. Ms. Puleo was entitled to receive all dividends and distributions, if any, paid with respect to the shares of restricted stock she held, but if any such dividends or distributions were paid in shares of our capital stock, such shares would have been subject to the same restrictions on transferability as are the shares of restricted stock with respect to which they were paid. Ms. Puleo separated from the Company on March 9, 2014. Pursuant to the terms of

the Equity Incentive Plan, she had 60 days from that date to exercise any of her vested stock options; her unvested stock options and shares of restricted stock terminated on her separation date.

(10) Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013. Pursuant to the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, he had 60 days from that date to exercise any of his vested stock options; his unvested stock options and shares of restricted stock terminated on his separation date.

(11) Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013. Pursuant to the terms of the Equity Incentive Plan, he had 60 days from that date to exercise any of his vested stock options; his unvested stock options and shares of restricted stock terminated on his separation date.

Table of Contents**Option exercises and stock vested for fiscal 2013**

The following table shows the number of stock options exercised by our Named Executive Officers, and stock awards held by our Named Executive Officers that vested, during fiscal year 2013.

Name and principal position	Options awards		Stock awards	
	Number of shares acquired on exercise (#)	Value realized on exercise (\$)	Number of shares acquired on vesting (#)	Value realized on vesting (\$)
Carl S. Rubin <i>Chief Executive Officer</i>		\$		\$
Lewis S. Klessel <i>Former Member of the Interim Office of the Chief Executive Officer and Interim Chief Operating Officer</i>		\$		\$
Charles M. Sonsteby <i>Chief Administrative Officer and Chief Financial Officer</i>		\$	11,276	\$ 166,399(1)
Thomas C. DeCaro <i>Executive Vice President Supply Chain</i>		\$		\$
Philo T. Pappas <i>Executive Vice President Category Management</i>		\$	3,456	\$ 63,070(2)
Paula A. Puleo <i>Former Executive Vice President Chief Marketing Officer</i>		\$		\$
Nicholas E. Crombie <i>Former Executive Vice President Store Operations</i>	575,203	\$ 3,655,589(3)		\$
Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu <i>Former Executive Vice President Private Brands &amp; Global Sourcing</i>	567,091	\$ 4,569,421(4)		\$

(1) The shares were valued at \$14.76 per share on the October 4, 2013 vesting date for Mr. Sonsteby's restricted shares.

(2) The shares were valued at \$18.25 per share on the April 17, 2013 vesting date for Mr. Pappas's restricted shares.

(3) The shares were valued at \$13.90 per share on Mr. Crombie's exercise date of July 31, 2013.

(4) The shares were valued at \$15.56 per share on Mr. Zhu exercise date of January 13, 2014.

**Pension benefits for fiscal 2013**

The Company has no defined benefit pension plans.

**Nonqualified deferred compensation for fiscal 2013**

The Company has no nonqualified deferred compensation plans.

**Potential payments upon termination or change of control**

Mr. Rubin is entitled under his employment agreement, effective March 18, 2013 (the "Rubin Agreement"), to certain benefits in the event of termination. Messrs. Sonsteby, DeCaro and Pappas participate in the



Table of Contents

OSPP (as described below), which provides for severance payments and benefits upon certain terminations of employment. Prior to their departures during fiscal 2013, Messrs. Crombie and Zhu were entitled to participate in the OSPP but were not eligible for severance benefits under the plan in connection with their separations from the Company. Ms. Puleo was entitled to, and received, severance payments under the OSPP in connection with her separation effective March 9, 2014.

In addition, in the event of a Corporate Transaction (as defined in the Equity Incentive Plan), the Equity Incentive Plan provides for a range of possible adjustments to outstanding equity awards, including acceleration of vesting. In the event of a transaction that constitutes a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and set forth below), each Named Executive Officer, except for Mr. Klessel who was not granted equity awards, would be entitled to acceleration of his equity awards. In addition, our Named Executive Officers, except for Mr. Klessel, may also be entitled to accelerated vesting of their respective equity awards upon a termination of employment, depending on the specific circumstance as set forth below. The payments for which the Named Executive Officers are eligible under various circumstances related to a Corporate Transaction, Change of Control, or termination of employment are detailed below; except for (i) Mr. Klessel who was not an employee of the Company and was not entitled to any compensation or severance from the Company and does not participate in the Company's equity plan; (ii) Ms. Puleo whose actual payments received upon her separation from the Company are described below; (iii) Mr. Crombie, who did not receive any separation payments in connection with his voluntary retirement from the Company on July 27, 2013; and (iv) Mr. Zhu whose actual payments received upon his separation from the Company are described below.

The Equity Incentive Plan defines a "Corporate Transaction" as any of the following: any sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, change in the ownership of the capital stock of the Company, reorganization, recapitalization, merger (whether or not the Company is the surviving entity), consolidation, exchange of capital stock of the Company or other restructuring involving the Company.

The Stockholders Agreement defines a "Change of Control" as the occurrence of any of the following: (i) any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other corporation or other person, or any other corporate reorganization or transaction (including the acquisition of capital stock of the Company), whether or not the Company is a party thereto, in which the stockholders of the Company immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, reorganization or transaction, own capital stock either (A) representing directly, or indirectly through one or more entities, less than fifty percent (50%) of the economic interests in or voting power of the Company or other surviving entity immediately after such consolidation, merger, reorganization or transaction or (B) that does not directly, or indirectly through one or more entities, have the power to elect a majority of the entire Board of the Company or other surviving entity immediately after such consolidation, merger, reorganization or transaction; (ii) any stock sale or other transaction or series of related transactions, whether or not the Company is a party thereto, after giving effect to which in excess of fifty percent (50%) of the Company's voting power is owned directly, or indirectly through one or more entities, by any person and its affiliates or associates, other than the Sponsors and their affiliates and the affiliates of Highfields Capital Management LP, excluding, in any case, the Company's initial public offering or any bona fide primary or secondary public offering following the occurrence of the initial public offering; or (iii) a sale, lease or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company.

***Rights and potential payments on termination for cause, death, disability and voluntary resignation***

*Cause.* Each of the Rubin Agreement and the OSPP provides that no payments or benefits are due to a Named Executive Officer in the event of a termination for cause except amounts accrued and payable to

Table of Contents

such executive through the termination date. Under the Equity Incentive Plan, all stock options (whether vested or unvested) will immediately terminate on a termination of employment for cause.

*Death.* Each Named Executive Officer is provided a life insurance policy by the Company with a \$1,000,000 benefit, which would be payable to the executive's beneficiaries upon such executive's death. The Rubin Agreement provides that his beneficiaries would be further entitled to an amount equal to his pro-rated bonus for the year in which death occurs. Under the Equity Incentive Plan, the executive's Legal Representative (as defined in each option agreement) has the option within the one-year period following the executive's termination of employment (or through the option's expiration date, if earlier) to exercise any vested stock options held by the Named Executive Officer prior to his death. Under the Stockholders Agreement, prior to the initial public offering, upon any termination of a Named Executive Officer's employment by reason of the executive's death, the executive's representative or estate had the option to sell to the Company all or any portion of the vested shares of the Common Stock owned by the Named Executive Officer within 60 days after the date of termination, at the fair market value of the shares as of the date they were repurchased. In addition, pursuant to their restricted stock agreements executed prior to fiscal 2013, all of Messrs. Sonstebly's and Pappas's unvested restricted stock would vest. Assuming the executive's death on February 1, 2014, the last day of our fiscal year, and that the executive's Legal Representative exercised its option to exercise any vested stock options held by the Named Executive Officer at such time and to sell to the Company all of the shares owned by the Named Executive Officer, the estate of each Named Executive Officer would have realized, based on the fair market value of the Common Stock as of fiscal year end \$16.03, the following amounts for his or her shares (based on the spread, if any, of the fair market value of the Common Stock as of fiscal year end \$16.03 over the value of the applicable exercise prices for the vested options): Carl S. Rubin \$0; Charles M. Sonstebly, \$4,953,413; Thomas C. DeCaro, \$5,532,747; Philo T. Pappas, \$4,964,062; and Paula A. Puleo \$2,089,012. As noted above, Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013 and Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013, and in each case exercised their vested stock options prior to the end of fiscal year 2013.

*Disability.* The Company provides each Named Executive Officer with an executive long term disability policy for the benefit of such executive, which would afford such executive a right to disability benefits after 90 days of the executive becoming disabled in the amount of 67% of monthly compensation up to \$20,000 per month. This benefit generally continues until the disability is resolved or age 65. Under the Rubin Agreement, Mr. Rubin would be further entitled to an amount equal to his pro-rated bonus for the year in which his termination due to disability occurs. During the one-year period following the executive's termination of employment due to disability (or through the option's expiration date, if earlier), the executive may exercise any vested stock options held by him prior to his termination. Under the Stockholders Agreement, prior to the initial public offering, upon any termination of a Named Executive Officer's employment by reason of the executive's disability, the executive or the executive's representative had the option to sell to the Company all or any portion of the vested shares of the Common Stock owned by the Named Executive Officer within 60 days after the date of termination, at the fair market value of the shares as of the date they were repurchased. In addition, pursuant to their restricted stock agreements executed prior to fiscal 2013, upon disability all of Messrs. Sonstebly's and Pappas's unvested restricted stock would vest. Assuming the executive exercised his option to exercise any vested stock options held by him at such time and to sell to the Company all of the shares owned by the Named Executive Officer upon disability on the last day of fiscal 2013, the Named Executive Officer would have received, based on the fair market value of the Common Stock as of fiscal year end \$16.03, the following amounts for his or her shares (based on the spread, if any, of the fair market value of the Common Stock as of fiscal year end \$16.03 over the value of the applicable exercise prices for the vested options): Carl S. Rubin \$0;

Table of Contents

Charles M. Sonstebly, \$4,953,413; Thomas C. DeCaro, \$5,532,747; Philo T. Pappas, \$4,964,062; and Paula A. Puleo \$2,089,012. As noted above Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013, and Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013, and in each case exercised their vested stock options prior to the end of fiscal year 2013.

*Voluntary resignation.* In the event of a voluntary resignation of any of the Named Executive Officers, there are no payments or benefits that continue beyond what is accrued and payable through the termination date. The executive may exercise any vested options held by him prior to his resignation for up to 60 days following termination (or through the option's expiration date, if earlier).

***Rights and potential payment upon a change of control or termination without cause or with good reason***

*Rubin employment agreement*

Pursuant to the Rubin Agreement, if Mr. Rubin's employment is terminated by the Company without cause or by Mr. Rubin for good reason, then, for the two-year period following the date of termination, he would be entitled, subject to signing an effective release of claims, to receive a severance benefit equal to (i) his base salary at the annual rate in effect on the date of termination, (ii) the amount of his annual target bonus for the year of termination and (iii) continued medical and dental benefits at the Company's expense. Mr. Rubin's severance entitlements are also subject to his compliance with certain restrictive covenants, including non-competition, non-hire, and non-solicitation obligations during, and for two years following his employment.

Pursuant to the Rubin Agreement, "cause" means the following events or conditions, as determined by the Board in its reasonable judgment: (i) the willful failure to perform (other than by reason of disability), or gross negligence in the performance of, his material duties and responsibilities to the Company or any of its Affiliates (as defined in the Rubin Agreement), or willful failure to follow or carry out any lawful and reasonable direction of the Board, and the continuance of such willful failure or gross negligence for a period of 25 days after written notice; (ii) the willful material breach of any provision of this Agreement or any other material agreement between Mr. Rubin and the Company or any of its Affiliates and the continuance of such material breach for a period of 25 days after delivery of written notice to the executive; (iii) fraud, embezzlement, theft or other dishonesty with respect to the Company or any of its Affiliates; (iv) the conviction of, or a plea of nolo contendere to, any felony or any other crime involving dishonesty or moral turpitude; and (v) any other conduct that involves a willful and material breach of fiduciary obligation.

The term "good reason" means any of the following, if occurring without Mr. Rubin's consent or other than for tax or other regulatory reasons: (i) removal of Mr. Rubin from the position of CEO or director of the Company (or a successor corporation), or his removal from a director or officer position of an Immediate Affiliate; (ii) material diminution in the nature or scope of his responsibilities, duties or authority, including the appointment or election of a Board Chairman who is also an executive officer of the Company, other than Mr. Rubin, a change in his direct reporting to the full Board or a change in reporting relationships resulting from the direct or indirect control of the Company (or a successor corporation) by another corporation or other entity or resulting from an acquisition by a person or entity of at least 50% of the equity, property or other assets of the Company or any of its Affiliates; provided, however, that any material diminution of the business of the Company or any of its Affiliates shall not constitute "good reason"; (iii) the material failure of the Company to provide him the base salary and annual bonus opportunity in accordance with the terms of the Rubin Agreement; or (iv) relocation of Mr. Rubin's office to an area outside of a 50-mile radius from the Company's current headquarters in Irving, Texas. To qualify

Table of Contents

as a termination for good reason under the Rubin Agreement, notice to the Company must have been given by Mr. Rubin and the Company must have failed to cure the good reason within 30 days of receiving notice.

In addition to the Rubin Agreement, Mr. Rubin entered into agreements providing for his restricted stock grants and his stock option grant. These agreements provide that in the event of a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and above under " Potential Payments upon Termination or Change of Control"), all of Mr. Rubin's restricted stock and stock options will immediately vest.

The Rubin Agreement provides no change of control severance benefits.

*Zhu Agreement*

In connection with Mr. Zhu's departure, the Company entered into a separation agreement with Mr. Zhu on November 15, 2013, whereby Mr. Zhu received (i) his earned pro-rated bonus for fiscal year 2013 pursuant to the Bonus Plan, under established bonus criteria associated with the Bonus Plan, on the same terms as that paid to other executive officers of the Company; and (ii) a cash amount, less any applicable withholdings, equal to: (x) the difference between the per share fair market value of the Company's common stock on July 2, 2014, and \$14.76 per share, (y) multiplied by 103,296.4, such payment subject to a \$250,000 cap and payable in July 2014. As consideration for the Company's entry into such agreement, the agreement contained a release of claims against the Company by Mr. Zhu, as well as other typical restrictive covenants relating to his departure.

*Officer Severance Pay Plan*

In April 2008, the Board approved the OSPP, which was amended in July 2008 and was further amended on May 20, 2014 (the "2014 OSPP Amendment") and December 9, 2014 (the "Second 2014 OSPP Amendment"). The OSPP was established by the Company to provide certain severance benefits, subject to the terms and conditions of the OSPP, to designated officers (those with a position of Vice President or above, or an equivalent title as approved by the Compensation Committee, and excluding the Chief Executive Officer) in the event that their employment is permanently terminated as a result of a "Qualifying Termination". For purposes of the OSPP, an executive is subject to a "Qualifying Termination" if:

the executive is on active payroll or is on an approved leave of absence with a right to reinstatement at the time his or her employment terminates;

the executive's employment is terminated by the Company other than for "Cause" (which includes a refusal or failure to perform, or material negligence in the performance of, the executive's duties, a material breach of a material agreement between the executive and the Company, fraud, embezzlement, theft, other dishonesty, the conviction of or plea of guilty or *nolo contendere* to a crime involving dishonesty or moral turpitude, breach of a fiduciary duty to the Company or violation of Company policy that could expose the Company to liability or could damage the Company's business or reputation) and other than a result of death or disability;

the executive is not offered and has not accepted other employment with (1) an affiliate of the Company, (2) a successor of the Company, or (3) a purchaser of some or all of the assets of the Company, in each case: (a) in a position which the executive is qualified to perform regardless of whether the executive is subject to, among other things, a new job title, different reporting relationships or a modification of the executive's duties and responsibilities; (b) in a position that, when compared with the executive's last position with the Company, provides a comparable base salary and bonus opportunity; and (c) where

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

there is no change in the executive's principal place of employment to a location more than 35 miles from the executive's principal place of employment immediately prior to the Qualifying Termination; and

the executive continues employment until the termination date designated by the Company or such earlier date to which the Company agrees, and, during the period from the date the executive receives notice of termination until the termination date, the executive continues to perform to the reasonable satisfaction of the Company.

Executives subject to a Qualifying Termination are entitled to the following benefits:

severance pay, payable in accordance with the Company's normal payroll practices, at the following levels: (i) for the position of Vice President with less than two years of service, six months of base salary continuation; (ii) for the position of Vice President with two or more years of service, twelve months of base salary continuation; (iii) for the position of Senior Vice President, Executive Vice President or President with less than two years of service, twelve months of base salary continuation; and (iv) for the position of Senior Vice President, Executive Vice President or President with two or more years of service, eighteen months of base salary continuation

a pro-rated target annual bonus for the year of termination (or, following the 2014 OSPP Amendment, a pro-rated earned annual bonus for the year of termination); and

the continuation of group medical and dental benefits for the salary continuation period (or, following the Second 2014 OSPP Amendment, cash welfare benefit payments to be paid at a rate equal to (i) the Company-paid portion of the group medical and dental plan premiums in effect for the executive (and his/her spouse and dependents, as applicable) immediately prior to the termination date, as pro-rated for each payroll period, multiplied by (ii) 130%).

In order to obtain severance benefits under the OSPP, an executive must first execute a severance agreement and release with the Company that includes a waiver and release of any and all claims against the Company and a commitment that, for one year following termination (or, following the 2014 OSPP Amendment, for the greater of twelve months and the severance period), the executive will not solicit or hire any associate or distributor or vendor of the Company or its subsidiaries and will not directly or indirectly compete with, or join an organization that directly or indirectly competes with, the Company. Additionally, an executive officer will not be eligible for benefits under the OSPP if he or she is eligible for severance pay or other termination benefits under any other severance pay plan or under any employment agreement or other agreement with the Company or any of its affiliates.

### *Equity plans*

Each of the Named Executive Officers currently employed with the Company has entered into a stock option agreement and a restricted stock award agreement that provides for vesting upon a Change of Control (as defined in the Stockholders Agreement and above under "Potential Payments upon Termination or a Change of Control"). Had a Change of Control occurred on the last day of fiscal 2013, each Named Executive Officer would have realized the following values for their options, including those vesting in the Change of Control, (based on the spread, if any, of the fair market value of the Common Stock as of fiscal year end \$16.03 over the value of the applicable exercise prices for the options): Carl S. Rubin \$4,000,000; Charles M. Sonstebly \$7,012,045; Thomas C. DeCaro, \$5,881,383; Philo T. Pappas, \$5,989,339; and Paula A. Puleo \$3,702,606. Had a Change of Control occurred on the last day of fiscal 2013, each Named Executive Officer would have realized the following values for their unvested restricted

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

shares, including those vesting in the Change of Control: Carl S. Rubin \$5,358,588; Charles M. Sonstebly \$756,174; Thomas C. DeCaro, \$160,888; Philo T. Pappas, \$2,664,873; and Paula A. Puleo \$243,461.

### *Estimated separation payments*

The table below reflects the amount of compensation payable in the event of an involuntary termination without cause or resignation for good reason to (i) Mr. Rubin under his employment agreement, and (ii) each of the other Named Executive Officers, other than Messrs. Klessel (who was not an employee of the Company and was not entitled to any compensation or severance from the Company and does not participate in the Company's equity plan), Crombie (who did not receive any separation payments in connection with his voluntary retirement from the Company on July 31, 2013) and Zhu and Ms. Puleo, under the OSPP described above and, in the case of Messrs. Sonstebly and Pappas, their restricted stock agreements entered into prior to fiscal 2013 (solely in respect of an involuntary termination without cause). The amounts shown in the table for the Named Executive Officers, other than Messrs. Klessel, Crombie and Zhu and Ms. Puleo, assume that the executive's termination was effective as of the last day of the fiscal year, February 1, 2014, and have been determined, where applicable, using a price of \$16.03 per share of Common Stock, the fair market value of our Common Stock on such date. The actual amounts, or value, to be paid to these Named Executive Officers can only be determined at the time of such executive's separation from the Company. For Ms. Puleo, the amounts shown are the actual amounts she was paid, or entitled to, as a result of her separation, effective as of March 9, 2014, as well as amounts expected to be paid pursuant to the OSPP for continuing benefits during her 18 month severance period. For Mr. Zhu, the

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

amounts shown are the actual amounts he was paid, or entitled to, in connection with his separation agreement with the Company.

Executive	<b>Executive payments and benefits upon termination without cause or by executive with good reason (\$)</b>	
<b><i>Carl S. Rubin</i></b>		
Salary	\$	2,200,000
Bonus		1,100,000
Welfare Benefits		30,557(2)
Total	\$	3,330,557
<b><i>Charles M. Sonsteby</i></b>		
Salary	\$	1,066,663
Bonus		497,776
Restricted Stock		361,524
Welfare Benefits		14,754(2)
Total	\$	1,940,717
<b><i>Thomas C. DeCaro</i></b>		
Salary	\$	590,155
Bonus		196,718
Welfare Benefits		22,917(2)
Total	\$	809,790
<b><i>Philo T. Pappas</i></b>		
Salary	\$	647,846
Bonus		215,949
Restricted Stock		55,412
Welfare Benefits		22,917(2)
Total	\$	942,124
<b><i>Paula A. Puleo</i></b>		
Salary	\$	543,000
Bonus		14,281(3)
Welfare Benefits		6,013(2)
Total	\$	563,294
<b><i>Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu</i>(1)</b>		
Salary	\$	
Bonus		71,351(4)
Welfare Benefits		
Totals	\$	71,351

(1) In connection with Mr. Zhu's separation agreement with the Company, Mr. Zhu was additionally entitled to receive a cash amount, less any applicable withholdings, equal to: (x) the difference between the per share fair market value of the Company's common stock on July 2, 2014, and \$14.76 per share, (y) multiplied by 103,296.4, such payment subject to a \$250,000 cap and payable in July 2014.

(2) Represents the estimated value of the Company paid portion of the premium for executive's medical and dental for the salary continuation period.

(3) Represents Ms. Puleo's pro-rated targeted annual bonus for fiscal 2014 Pursuant to the Bonus Plan. Ms. Puleo received her full earned bonus for fiscal 2013 under the terms of Bonus Plan.

(4) Represents Mr. Zhu's earned pro-rated bonus for fiscal year 2013 pursuant his separation agreement with the Company.

Table of Contents

***Share repurchase rights***

As described above, under the Stockholders Agreement, upon any termination of a Named Executive Officer's employment by reason of the executive's death or disability, the executive or his/her estate has the option to sell to the Company all or any portion of the vested shares of the Common Stock owned by the Named Executive Officer within 60 days after the date of termination, at the fair market value of the shares as of the date they are repurchased.

In addition, upon termination of a Named Executive Officer's employment for any reason, the Company has the option to purchase all or any portion of the executive's shares that were originally purchased from the Company, at the fair market value of the shares. If the Company elects to purchase the executive's shares, it must deliver notice to the executive no later than 240 days after (but not before the date that is one day after the six-month anniversary of) the later of (i) the date of termination or (ii) the exercise of any option originally granted to the executive or the date upon which any unvested shares granted to the executive become vested shares. With respect to those shares issued to a Named Executive Officer directly or indirectly pursuant to an incentive plan, the Company may purchase all or any portion of the executive's shares at the fair market value of the shares (upon delivery of the notice as described in the immediately preceding sentence), if the executive's employment is terminated due to death, disability, by the Company without cause or by the executive for good reason (or in circumstances in which the Company would have no grounds to terminate the executive for cause). If the Named Executive Officer's employment is terminated by the Company for cause, the Company may purchase all or any portion of the executive's shares at the lesser of the cost or the fair market value of the shares. The Company's repurchase rights described herein expired on the earlier of a Change of Control or an initial public offering, and as a result expired upon our initial public offering.

Assuming the Company exercised its option to repurchase at fair market value, the vested or purchased shares held by the Named Executive Officers on the last day of fiscal 2013, the Named Executive Officers would have received, based on the fair market value of the Common Stock as of fiscal year end \$16.03, the following amounts for their shares: Carl S. Rubin \$0; Charles M. Sonstebly \$542,287; Thomas C. DeCaro \$630,941; Philo T. Pappas \$221,647; Paula A. Puleo \$0; Nicholas E. Crombie \$126,179; and Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu \$3,035,980.

**Director compensation**

Non-independent directors are not paid any fees by the Company for services as directors, and they do not receive reimbursement for their expenses from the Company.

Our Board adopted a director compensation program effective upon the completion of our initial public offering. Pursuant to this program, each member of our Board who is an independent director receives compensation for his or her service as a director as follows: An annual retainer of \$50,000 for Board services, \$10,000, if applicable, for Audit Committee services \$10,000, if applicable, for Compensation Committee services, and \$7,500, if applicable, for Nominating Committee services. The chair of the Audit Committee receives an additional annual retainer of \$10,000, the chair of the Compensation Committee receives an additional annual retainer of \$10,000, and the chair of the Nominating Committee receives an additional annual retainer of \$7,500. Each independent director will also receive \$1,500 and \$750 for in person and telephonic attendance, respectively, at Board and committee meetings in excess of ten aggregate meetings in a fiscal year. Additionally each independent director will receive an annual restricted stock grant valued at \$100,000 on the date of grant, to be fully vested on the one year anniversary of the date of grant, for shares of the Common Stock. While we are a "controlled company" for purposes of rules

Table of Contents

of The NASDAQ Stock Market, none of the directors affiliated with the Sponsors will be compensated for Board service.

**Compensation committee interlocks and insider participation**

Peter F. Wallace and Matthew S. Levin are the current members of our Compensation Committee and served in this role for all of fiscal 2013. Each of the members of our Compensation Committee is affiliated with our Sponsors and has not been deemed an independent director. None of our executive officers serves as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any other entity (other than a subsidiary) that has one or more executive officers who serve on our Board or Compensation Committee.

**2014 Omnibus Plan**

Prior to our initial public offering, on May 20, 2014, our Board amended and restated our Equity Incentive Plan under the name The Michaels Companies, Inc. 2014 Omnibus Long-Term Incentive Plan (the "2014 Omnibus Plan") and following such adoption all equity-based awards are granted under the 2014 Omnibus Plan. The 2014 Omnibus Plan also permits grants of cash bonuses beginning in fiscal year 2014. The following summary describes the material terms of the 2014 Omnibus Plan.

*Purpose.* The purpose of the 2014 Omnibus Plan is to advance the Company's interests by providing for the grant to participants of equity and other incentive awards.

*Plan administration.* The 2014 Omnibus Plan is administered by the Compensation Committee whereas the Equity Incentive Plan had been administered by the Board. The Compensation Committee has the authority to, among other things, interpret the 2014 Omnibus Plan, determine eligibility for, grant and determine the terms of awards under the 2014 Omnibus Plan, and to do all things necessary to carry out the purposes of the 2014 Omnibus Plan. The Compensation Committee's determinations under the 2014 Omnibus Plan will be conclusive and binding.

*Authorized shares.* Subject to adjustment, the maximum number of shares of our Common Stock that may be delivered in satisfaction of awards under the 2014 Omnibus Plan, excluding shares already issued under the Equity Incentive Plan, but including shares issuable, but not yet issued, under outstanding awards granted under the Equity Incentive Plan, as well as shares available for future awards, is 9,759,414 shares. Shares of Common Stock to be issued under the 2014 Omnibus Plan may be authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock or previously-issued shares acquired by the Company. Any shares of Common Stock underlying awards that are settled in cash or otherwise expire, terminate, are forfeited prior to the issuance of stock thereunder, or are withheld to cover the exercise price or any applicable tax withholding will again be available for issuance under the 2014 Omnibus Plan.

*Individual limits.* The maximum number of shares for which stock options may be granted and the maximum number of shares of stock subject to stock appreciation rights to any person in any calendar year will each be 7,380,000 shares. The maximum number of shares subject to other awards granted to any person in any calendar year will be 7,380,000 shares. The maximum amount payable to any person in any calendar year under cash awards will be \$10 million.

*Eligibility.* The Compensation Committee will select participants from among the key associates, directors, consultants and advisors of the Company and its affiliates who are in a position to make a significant contribution to our success. Eligibility for stock options intended to be incentive stock options (ISOs) is limited to employees of the Company or certain affiliates.

Table of Contents

*Types of awards.* The 2014 Omnibus Plan provides for grants of stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted and unrestricted stock and stock units, performance awards, cash awards, and other awards convertible into or otherwise based on shares of our stock. Dividend equivalents may also be provided in connection with an award under the 2014 Omnibus Plan.

*Stock options and stock appreciation rights:* The exercise price of an option, and the base price against which a stock appreciation right is to be measured, are not permitted to be less than the fair market value (or, in the case of an ISO granted to a ten-percent shareholder, 110% of the fair market value) of a share of Common Stock on the date of grant. The Compensation Committee will determine the time or times at which stock options or stock appreciation rights become exercisable and the terms on which such awards remain exercisable.

*Restricted and unrestricted stock:* A restricted stock award is an award of Common Stock subject to forfeiture restrictions, while an unrestricted stock award is not subject to restrictions under the 2014 Omnibus Plan.

*Stock units:* A stock unit award is denominated in shares of Common Stock and entitles the participant to receive stock or cash measured by the value of the shares in the future. The delivery of stock or cash under a stock unit may be subject to the satisfaction of performance conditions or other vesting conditions.

*Performance awards:* A performance award is an award the vesting, settlement or exercisability of which is subject to specified performance criteria. Performance awards may be stock-based or cash-based.

*Cash awards:* A cash award is an award that is settled in cash.

*Vesting.* The Compensation Committee has the authority to determine the vesting schedule applicable to each award, and to accelerate the vesting or exercisability of any award.

*Termination of employment.* The Compensation Committee will determine the effect of termination of employment or service on an award. Unless otherwise provided by the Compensation Committee or in an award agreement, upon a termination of employment all unvested options and other awards requiring exercise will terminate, all other unvested awards will be forfeited and vested options will terminate if not exercised within post-termination exercise windows set forth in the Equity Incentive Plan.

*Performance criteria.* The 2014 Omnibus Plan provides that grants of performance awards, including cash-denominated awards and stock-based awards, will be made based upon, and subject to achieving, "performance objectives" over a performance period, which may be one or more periods of not less than 12 months' duration. Performance objectives with respect to those awards that are intended to qualify as "performance-based compensation" for purposes of Section 162(m) are limited to an objectively determinable measure or objectively determinable measures of performance relating to any or any combination of the following (measured either absolutely or by reference to an index or indices and determined either on a consolidated basis or, as the context permits, on a divisional, subsidiary, line of business, project or geographical basis or in combinations thereof): sales; net sales; comparable store sales; sales by location or store type; revenues; assets; expenses; earnings before or after deduction for all or any portion of interest, taxes, depreciation, and/or amortization, whether or not on a continuing operations or an aggregate or per share basis; return on equity, investment, capital or assets; one or more operating ratios; borrowing levels, leverage ratios or credit rating; market share; capital expenditures; cash flow; operating efficiencies; operating income; stock price; stockholder return; sales of particular products

Table of Contents

or services; customer acquisition or retention; buyer contribution; acquisitions and divestitures (in whole or in part); joint ventures and strategic alliances; spin-offs, split-ups and the like; reorganizations; or recapitalizations, restructurings, financings (issuance of debt or equity) or refinancings.

To the extent consistent with the requirements for satisfying the performance-based compensation exception under Section 162(m), the Compensation Committee may provide in the case of any award intended to qualify for such exception that one or more of the performance objectives applicable to an award will be adjusted to reflect events (for example, the impact of charges for restructurings, discontinued operations, mergers, acquisitions, extraordinary items, and other unusual or non-recurring items, and the cumulative effects of tax or accounting changes, each as defined by generally accepted accounting principles) occurring during the performance period of such award that affect the applicable performance objectives.

*Transferability.* Awards under the 2014 Omnibus Plan may not be transferred except by will or by the laws of descent and distribution, unless (for awards other than ISOs) otherwise provided by the Compensation Committee.

*Corporate transactions.* In the event of a consolidation, merger or similar transaction, a sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the Company's assets or a dissolution or liquidation of the Company, the Compensation Committee may, among other things, provide for continuation or assumption of outstanding awards, for new grants in substitution of outstanding awards, for the accelerated vesting or delivery of shares under awards, or in the plan, as amended and restated, for a cash-out of outstanding awards, in each case on such terms and with such restrictions as it deems appropriate. Except as the Compensation Committee may otherwise determine, awards not assumed will terminate upon the consummation of such corporate transaction.

*Adjustment.* In the event of certain corporate transactions (including a stock dividend, stock split or combination of shares, recapitalization or other change in the Company's capital structure that constitutes an equity restructuring within the meaning of ASC 718), the Compensation Committee will make appropriate adjustments to the maximum number of shares that may be delivered under and the individual limits included in the 2014 Omnibus Plan, and will also make appropriate adjustments to the number and kind of shares of stock or securities subject to awards, the exercise prices of such awards or any other terms of awards affected by such change. The Compensation Committee will also make the types of adjustments described above to take into account distributions and other events other than those listed above if it determines that such adjustments are appropriate to avoid distortion and preserve the value of awards.

*Amendment and termination.* The Compensation Committee may amend the 2014 Omnibus Plan or outstanding awards, or terminate the 2014 Omnibus Plan as to future grants of awards, except that the Compensation Committee cannot alter the terms of an award if it would affect materially and adversely a participant's rights under the award without the participant's consent (unless expressly provided in the 2014 Omnibus Plan or reserved by the Compensation Committee). Stockholder approval will be required for any amendment to the extent such approval is required by law, including the Code or applicable stock exchange requirements.

Table of Contents**Equity compensation plan information**

On July 22, 2013, in connection with the Reorganization the Board of Directors and stockholders approved The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan, as well as certain specific grants under the plan to key employees. In addition, the stockholders granted the Board authority to make plan grants to other eligible participants in the future, which has occurred. Prior to our initial public offering, our Board adopted our 2014 Omnibus Plan, and all subsequent equity-based awards are granted under the 2014 Omnibus Plan. The following table gives information about equity awards under the above-mentioned plan as of November 1, 2014.

Plan category	Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights (a)	Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights (b)	Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a)) (c)
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders	11,910,318	\$ 10.23	8,128,368
Equity compensation not approved by security holders	N/A	N/A	N/A
Total	11,910,318	\$ 10.23	8,128,368

**Bonus Plan for fiscal 2014**

Each of our named executive officers is entitled to participate in our 2014 Bonus Plan. The terms of the 2014 Bonus Plan, as they apply to our named executive officers and our other senior executives, are generally the same as the terms that applied for fiscal 2013, as described above under "Executive Compensation Compensation Elements Annual Bonuses." Cash bonus awards payable in respect of fiscal 2014 will be determined based on the achievement of pre-established corporate and individual performance goals. The corporate performance goal for fiscal 2014 under our 2014 Bonus Plan is based on EBIT, minus an inventory charge (compared to our fiscal 2013 performance goal of EBITDA, minus an inventory charge). For fiscal 2014 the individual performance goals for the Named Executive Officers currently employed with the Company are as follows: Mr. Rubin's group of individual management business objectives are focused primarily on increasing EBITDA, margin enhancement and year-over-year comparable sales growth, as well as directing the Company's strategy. Mr. Sonstebly's group of individual management business objectives are focused primarily on new store growth and performance, increasing profitability and cash flow, effective use of capital and development of future strategies. Mr. DeCaro's group of individual management business objectives focus primarily on increasing profitability and cash flow, improvement in inventory turnover and in-stocks, supply chain cost management, and margin enhancement. For Mr. Pappas, his group of individual management business objectives focus primarily on increasing profitability and cash flow, store offering competitiveness, pricing improvement, new business development, and margin enhancement.

**Annual Incentive Plan**

In connection with our initial public offering, our Board adopted The Michaels Companies, Inc. Annual Incentive Plan (the "Annual Plan"). Starting with fiscal 2015, annual award opportunities for executive

Table of Contents

officers, including our named executive officers, and other key associates will be granted under the Annual Plan. The Company expects that the structure of the annual bonus program under the Annual Plan following this offering will remain consistent with the bonus program in effect during fiscal 2014. For fiscal 2015, each named executive officer can receive a cash award, which will be determined based on the achievement of a pre-established corporate performance measure and a qualitative assessment of each participating executive's performance. The following summary describes the material terms of the Annual Plan. This summary is not a complete description of all provisions of the Annual Plan and is qualified in its entirety by reference to the Annual Plan, which is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

*Administration.* The Annual Plan is administered by our compensation committee. Our compensation committee has authority to interpret the Annual Plan, and any interpretation or decision by the compensation committee with regard to any questions arising under the Annual Plan will be final and conclusive on all participants.

*Eligibility.* Executive officers and other key associates of the Company and our subsidiaries will be selected from time to time by the compensation committee to participate in the Annual Plan.

*Awards.* Award opportunities under the Annual Plan will be granted by our compensation committee prior to, or within a specified period of time following the beginning of, the fiscal year of the Company (or other performance period selected by the compensation committee). The compensation committee will establish the performance criteria applicable to the award, the amount or amounts payable if the performance criteria are achieved, and such other terms and conditions as the compensation committee deems appropriate. The Annual Plan permits the grant of awards that are intended to qualify as exempt performance-based compensation under Section 162(m) as well as awards that are not intended to so qualify. Any awards that are intended to qualify as performance-based compensation will be administered in accordance with the requirements of Section 162(m).

*Performance criteria.* Awards under the Annual Plan will be made based on, and subject to achieving, "performance criteria" established by our compensation committee, which may relate to Company and/or individual performance. Performance criteria for awards intended to qualify as performance-based compensation for purposes of Section 162(m) are limited to the objectively determinable measures of performance relating to any or any combination of the following (measured absolutely, by reference to an index or indices, or relative to a peer group, and determined either on a consolidated basis or, as the context permits, on a divisional, subsidiary, line of business, project or geographical basis or in combinations thereof): sales; net sales; comparable store sales; sales by location or store type; revenues; assets; expenses; earnings before or after deduction for all or any portion of interest, taxes, depreciation, and/or amortization, whether or not on a continuing operations or an aggregate or per share basis; return on equity, investment, capital or assets; one or more operating ratios; borrowing levels, leverage ratios or credit rating; market share; capital expenditures; cash flow; operating efficiencies; operating income; stock price; stockholder return; sales of particular products or services; customer acquisition or retention; buyer contribution; acquisitions and divestitures (in whole or in part); joint ventures and strategic alliances; spin-offs, split-ups and the like; reorganizations; or recapitalizations, restructurings, financings (issuance of debt or equity) or refinancings.

To the extent consistent with the requirements for satisfying the performance-based compensation exception under Section 162(m), the compensation committee may provide that in the case of any award intended to qualify as exempt performance-based compensation under Section 162(m), that one or more of the performance criteria applicable to such award be adjusted in an objectively determinable manner to

Table of Contents

reflect events (for example, but without limitation, acquisitions or dispositions) occurring during the performance period of such award that affect the applicable performance criteria.

*Payment.* A participant will be entitled to payment under an award only if all conditions to payment have been satisfied in accordance with the Annual Plan and the terms of the award. Following the close of the performance period, our compensation committee will determine (and, to the extent required by Section 162(m), certify) whether and to what extent the applicable performance criteria have been satisfied. Our compensation committee will then determine the actual payment, if any, under each award. Our compensation committee has the sole and absolute discretion to reduce (including to zero) the actual payment to be made under any award. Our compensation committee will determine the payment dates for awards under the Annual Plan. Our compensation committee may permit a participant to defer payment of an award.

*Payment limits.* The maximum payment to any participant under the Annual Plan in any fiscal year will in no event exceed \$10 million.

*Recovery of compensation.* Awards under the Annual Plan will be subject to forfeiture, termination and rescission, and a participant who receives a payment pursuant to the Annual Plan will be obligated to return to the Company such payment, to the extent provided by our compensation committee in an award agreement, pursuant to Company policy relating to the recovery of erroneously-paid incentive compensation, or as otherwise required by law or applicable stock exchange listing standards.

*Amendment and termination.* Our compensation committee may amend the Annual Plan at any time, provided that any amendment will be approved by the Company's stockholders if required by Section 162(m). Our compensation committee may terminate the Annual Plan at any time.

Table of Contents

## **Certain relationships and related party transactions**

### **Management agreements with the Sponsors and others**

In connection with the completion of the Merger, we entered into management agreements with the Sponsors pursuant to which the Sponsors provided management services to us until December 31, 2016, with evergreen extensions thereafter. Pursuant to these agreements, the Sponsors received an aggregate annual management fee in the amount of \$12.0 million and reimbursement for out-of-pocket expenses in connection with the provisions of services pursuant to the agreements. In fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, we recognized \$12.7 million, \$12.3 million and \$12.2 million, respectively, of expense related to annual management fees and reimbursements. We recognized \$35.7 million and \$9.7 million in expense related to management fees and reimbursements for the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013, respectively. The management agreements also provided that the Sponsors are entitled to receive fees in connection with certain subsequent financing, acquisition, disposition and change of control transactions, including our initial public offering, of 1% of the gross value of any such transaction. The management agreements contained customary exculpation and indemnification provisions in favor of the Sponsors. The management agreements were terminable by the Sponsors at any time and terminated automatically upon an initial public offering or a change of control unless we and the Sponsors determined otherwise.

Also, in connection with the completion of the Merger, we entered into a management agreement with Highfields, that provided for an annual management fee of \$1.0 million. The management agreement with Highfields was terminable by the Company at any time and terminated automatically upon an initial public offering or a change of control unless we and Highfields determined otherwise.

Upon termination, each provider of management services was entitled to a termination fee calculated based on the present value of the annual fees due during the remaining period from the date of termination to October 31, 2016. As a result, in connection with our initial public offering, these management agreements were terminated upon our payment of approximately \$14 million, \$14 million and \$2 million to affiliates of Bain Capital, The Blackstone Group and Highfields, respectively.

### **Transactions with certain affiliates of Bain Capital and The Blackstone Group**

We are party to a participation agreement with CoreTrust Purchasing Group ("CPG"), a division of HealthTrust Purchasing, designating CPG as our exclusive "group purchasing organization" for the purchase of certain non-merchandise products and services from third-party vendors. CPG secures from vendors pricing terms for goods and services that are believed to be more favorable than participants in the group purchasing organization could obtain for themselves on an individual basis. In connection with purchases by its participants (including us), CPG receives a commission from the vendors in respect of such purchases. Although CPG is not affiliated with The Blackstone Group, in consideration for facilitating our participation in CPG and monitoring the services CPG provides to us, CPG remits a portion of the commissions received from vendors in respect of our purchases under the agreement to an affiliate of The Blackstone Group. Payments remitted by CPG to an affiliate of The Blackstone Group as a result of our purchases under the agreement were approximately \$0.1 million during each of fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, and \$0.1 million during the nine months ended November 1, 2014.

Investment funds advised by Bain Capital Partners, LLC own an approximate 14% equity position in Sungard, an external vendor we utilize for certain integrated software and processing services. The Blackstone Group owns an approximate 13% equity position in Sungard. Payments associated with this

Table of Contents

vendor during each of fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2012 were \$0.3 million and payments associated with this vendor were \$0.2 million in fiscal 2011. Payments associated with this vendor during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 were less than \$0.1 million and \$0.3 million for the nine months ended November 2, 2013. We currently anticipate that our payments to this vendor in the remainder of fiscal 2014 will be commensurate with those in fiscal 2013.

The Blackstone Group owns an approximate 92% equity position in RGIS, an external vendor we utilize to count our store inventory. Payments associated with this vendor during each of fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2012 were \$5.6 million and payments associated with this vendor were \$6.3 million in fiscal 2011. Payments associated with this vendor during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 were \$5.8 million and \$5.4 million, respectively. We currently anticipate that our payments to this vendor in the remainder of fiscal 2014 will be commensurate with those in fiscal 2013.

The Blackstone Group owns an approximate 67% equity position in Vistar, an external vendor we utilize for all of the candy-type items in our stores. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$24.0 million, \$24.1 million and \$20.3 million, respectively. Payments associated with this vendor during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 were \$15.5 million and \$17.1 million, respectively. We currently anticipate that our payments to this vendor in the remainder of fiscal 2014 will be commensurate with those in fiscal 2013.

The Blackstone Group owns an approximate 66% equity position in Brixmor Properties Group, a vendor we utilize to lease certain properties. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$3.8 million, \$4.7 million and \$3.2 million, respectively. Payments associated with this vendor during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 were \$2.5 million and \$2.8 million, respectively. We currently anticipate that our payments to this vendor in the remainder of fiscal 2014 will be commensurate with those in fiscal 2013.

The Company is a party to an employer health program agreement with Equity Healthcare, LLC ("Equity Healthcare"), an affiliate of The Blackstone Group. Equity Healthcare negotiates with providers of standard administrative services for health benefit plans as well as other related services for cost discounts and quality of service monitoring capability by Equity Healthcare. Because of the combined purchasing power of its client participants, Equity Healthcare is able to negotiate pricing terms for providers that are believed to be more favorable than the companies could obtain for themselves on an individual basis. In consideration for Equity Healthcare's provision of access to these favorable arrangements and its monitoring of the contracted third parties' delivery of contracted services to us, we pay Equity Healthcare a fee of \$2.50 per participating employee per month ("PEPM Fee"). As we had approximately 6,240 employees enrolled in health and welfare benefit plans as of November 1, 2014, the annual amount paid under the agreement would be approximately \$0.2 million.

Equity Healthcare may also receive a fee ("Health Plan Fees") from one or more of the health plans with whom Equity Healthcare has contractual arrangements if the total number of employees joining such health plans from participating companies exceeds specified thresholds. If and when Equity Healthcare reaches the point at which the aggregate of its receipts from the PEPM Fee and the Health Plan Fees have covered all of its allocated costs, it will apply the incremental revenues derived from all such fees to (a) reduce the PEPM Fee otherwise payable by us; (b) avoid or reduce an increase in the PEPM Fee that might otherwise have occurred on contract renewal; or (c) arrange for additional services to us at no cost or reduced cost.

Table of Contents

The Blackstone Group owns an approximate 66% equity position in Hilton Hotels, an external vendor we utilize for hospitality services. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$0.1 million, \$1.1 million and \$1.3 million, respectively. Payments associated with this vendor during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 were \$1.4 million and \$0.1 million, respectively. We currently anticipate that our payments to this vendor in the remainder of fiscal 2014 will be commensurate with those in fiscal 2012.

Our current directors (other than Beryl B. Raff, Jill A. Greenthal, John J. Mahoney, James A. Quella and Carl S. Rubin) are affiliates of Bain Capital or The Blackstone Group. As such, some or all of such directors may have an indirect material interest in payments with respect to debt securities of the Company that have been purchased by affiliates of Bain Capital and The Blackstone Group. As of November 1, 2014, affiliates of The Blackstone Group held \$56 million of our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility.

Prior to our initial public offering, the Company had not adopted any formal policies or procedures for the review, approval or ratification of certain related-party transactions that may be required to be reported under the SEC disclosure rules. However, the Board believes that the transactions described above were on an arms-length basis and in the best interests of the stockholder.

As discussed in "Management Directors", each of the members of our Board (other than Beryl B. Raff, Jill Greenthal, John J. Mahoney, James A. Quella and Carl S. Rubin) is affiliated with the Sponsors, and our Board has determined Messrs. Mahoney and Quella, and Meses. Raff and Greenthal, are independent, as such term is defined under the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market.

The Company periodically provides officers of the Company the opportunity to purchase shares of our Common Stock. There were no shares sold to, or repurchased from, officers during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012, or fiscal 2011. During the nine months ended November 1, 2014, the Company repurchased 7,871 shares of Common Stock previously purchased. In addition, the Company repurchased 3,777,244, 614,923, and 628,815 shares during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012, and fiscal 2011, respectively, related to awards under our Equity Incentive Plan. During the nine months ended November 1, 2014, the Company repurchased 694,728 shares related to awards under the Equity Incentive Plan and 2014 Omnibus Plan.

## **Other arrangements and relationships with the Sponsors**

### ***Investor agreement***

In connection with our initial public offering, we entered into an investor agreement with the Sponsors. The investor agreement granted each of the Sponsors the right, subject to certain conditions, to name representatives to our Board and committees of our Board. Each Sponsor has the right to designate three nominees for election to our Board until such time as that Sponsor owns less than 25% of our outstanding Common Stock, two nominees if that Sponsor's ownership level is 10% or more but less than 25% of our outstanding Common Stock and one nominee if that Sponsor's ownership level is 3% or more but less than 10% of our outstanding Common Stock. Subject to the terms of the investor agreement, each Sponsor agreed to vote its shares in favor of the election of the director nominees designated by the other Sponsors pursuant to the investor agreement. In addition, the investor agreement provides each of the Sponsors with certain indemnification rights.

### ***Amended and restated registration rights agreement***

In connection with the Merger, we entered into a registration rights agreement with the Sponsors and certain other stockholders. In connection with our initial public offering, the registration rights agreement was amended and restated. The amended and restated registration rights agreement provides the Sponsors

Table of Contents

with demand registration rights in respect of the shares of our Common Stock held by them. In addition, in the event that we register additional shares of Common Stock for sale to the public, we are required to give notice of such registration to the Sponsors and the other stockholders party to the agreement of our intention to effect such a registration, and, subject to certain limitations, the Sponsors and such holders have piggyback registration rights providing them with the right to require us to include shares of Common Stock held by them in such registration. We are required to bear the registration expenses, other than underwriting discounts and commissions and transfer taxes, associated with any registration of shares by the Sponsors or other holders described above. The amended and restated registration rights agreement also contains certain restrictions on the sale of shares by the Sponsors. The amended and restated registration rights agreement includes customary indemnification provisions.

***Other relationships***

Upon completion of this offering, we estimate that our Sponsors will own approximately 73% of our outstanding Common Stock. For as long as our Sponsors continue to directly or indirectly own shares of our Common Stock representing more than 50% of the voting power of our Common Stock, our Sponsors will be able to direct the election of a majority of the members of our Board and could exercise a controlling influence over our business and affairs, including any determinations with respect to mergers or other business combinations, the acquisition or disposition of assets, the incurrence of indebtedness, the issuance of any additional Common Stock or other equity securities, the repurchase or redemption of Common Stock and the payment of dividends. Similarly, our Sponsors will have the power to determine matters submitted to a vote of our stockholders without the consent of our other stockholders, will have the power to prevent a change in our control and could take other actions that might be favorable to them.

In addition to the amended and restated registration rights agreement and the investor agreement discussed above, our Sponsors have agreed, subject to certain exceptions, not to sell or otherwise dispose of any shares of our Common Stock or other securities exercisable for or convertible into our Common Stock for a period of at least 90 days after the date of this prospectus without the prior written consent of J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. Except for this period, there can be no assurance as to the period of time during which our Sponsors will maintain their ownership of our Common Stock following the offering.

**Related person transactions policy**

In accordance with the amended and restated charter of our Audit Committee and our policy with respect to related person transactions, our Audit Committee is be responsible for reviewing and approving related person transactions.

The policy with respect to related person transactions will apply to transactions, arrangements and relationships (or any series of similar transactions, arrangements or relationships) where the aggregate amount involved will, or may be expected to, exceed \$120,000 in any calendar year, and where we (or our subsidiaries) are a participant and in which a related person has or will have a direct or indirect material interest. A related person is: (1) any person who is, or at any time since the beginning of our fiscal year was, a director or executive officer of the company, or a nominee for director or executive officer of the company; (2) any person who is known to be the beneficial owner of more than 5% of any class of our voting securities; (3) any immediate family member of the foregoing persons and (4) any firm, corporation or other entity in which any of the foregoing persons has a position or relationship, or in which such person, together with his or her immediate family members, has a 10% or greater beneficial ownership.

Table of Contents

In the course of its review and approval of related person transactions, our Audit Committee will consider the relevant facts and circumstances to decide whether to approve such transactions. In particular, our policy with respect to related person transactions will require our Audit Committee to consider, among other factors it deems appropriate:

the benefits to the Company;

the impact on a director's independence in the event the related person is a director, an immediate family member of a director or an entity in which a director has a position or relationship;

the availability of other sources for comparable products or services;

the terms of the transaction; and

the terms available to unrelated third parties or to employees generally.

The Audit Committee may only approve those transactions that are in, or are not inconsistent with, our best interests and those of our stockholders, as the Audit Committee determines in good faith.

Table of Contents

## **Description of certain indebtedness**

### **Restated term loan credit facility**

#### *General*

On October 31, 2006, MSI executed a Senior Secured Term Loan Facility with Deutsche Bank and other lenders. The full amount was initially borrowed on October 31, 2006, with the balance payable on October 31, 2013.

On January 28, 2013, MSI entered into the Amended Credit Agreement to amend various terms of its Senior Secured Term Loan Facility, as amended. On June 10, 2014, MSI entered into the First Amendment to effect the additional \$850 million in aggregate principal amount of the Additional Term Loans that mature in January 2020. The Amended Credit Agreement (as amended by the First Amendment), together with related security, guarantee and other agreements, is referred to as the "Restated Term Loan Credit Facility."

As of November 1, 2014, the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility provides for senior secured financing of \$2,460 million. MSI has the right under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility to request additional term loans in an aggregate amount of up to (a) \$500 million and (b) at MSI's option, an amount of term loans so long as MSI's Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement) is no more than 3.25 to 1.00 on a pro forma basis as of the last day of the most recently-ended four fiscal quarter-period for which internal financial statements are available. The lenders under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility will not be under any obligation to provide any such additional term loans, and the incurrence of any additional term loans is subject to customary conditions precedent.

On November 1, 2014, the outstanding principal amount of term loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility was approximately \$2,460 million.

#### *Amortization and maturity*

Under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, MSI is required to make scheduled quarterly payments, each equal to 0.25% of the original principal amount of the term loans, subject to adjustments relating to the incurrence of additional term loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, for the first six years and three quarters, with the balance payable on January 28, 2020.

#### *Interest rate and fees*

Borrowings under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility bear interest at a rate per annum equal to, at MSI's option, either (a) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (1) the prime rate of Deutsche Bank, (2) the federal funds effective rate plus  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1%, subject to a 2% floor, in the case of Additional Term Loans, and (3) LIBOR, subject to certain adjustments and a 1% floor, plus 1%, or (b) LIBOR, subject to certain adjustments and a 1% floor, in each case plus an applicable margin. The applicable margin is 1.75% (2.00%, with respect to the Additional Term Loans) with respect to base rate borrowings and 2.75% (3.00%, with respect to the Additional Term Loans) with respect to LIBOR borrowings. In addition, the applicable margin is subject to a 0.25% decrease based on MSI's Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio, but such decrease will not apply to the Additional Term Loans.

#### *Prepayments*

The Restated Term Loan Credit Facility requires MSI to prepay outstanding term loans with (x) 100% of the net proceeds of any debt issued by MSI or its subsidiaries (with exceptions for certain debt permitted to be

Table of Contents

incurred under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility) and (y) 50% (which percentage will be reduced to 25% if MSI's Consolidated Total Leverage Ratio (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement) is less than 6.00:1.00 and will be reduced to 0% if MSI's Consolidated Total Leverage Ratio is less than 5.00:1.00) of MSI's annual Excess Cash Flow (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement).

MSI must offer to prepay outstanding term loans at 100% of the principal amount to be prepaid, plus accrued and unpaid interest, with the proceeds of certain asset sales or casualty events under certain circumstances.

MSI may voluntarily prepay outstanding loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility at any time without premium or penalty other than customary "breakage" costs with respect to LIBOR loans.

***Guarantees and security***

All obligations under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility are unconditionally guaranteed by Holdings, and each of MSI's wholly-owned domestic subsidiaries that guarantees obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. All obligations under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, and the guarantees of those obligations, are secured, subject to certain exceptions, by substantially all of the assets of Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors (as defined below), including:

a first-priority pledge of MSI's capital stock and all of the capital stock held directly by MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors (which pledge, in the case of any foreign subsidiary, is limited to 65% of the voting stock of such foreign subsidiary and 100% of the non-voting stock of such subsidiary)

a first-priority security interest in, and mortgages on, substantially all other tangible and intangible assets of Holdings, MSI and each Subsidiary Guarantor, including substantially all of MSI's and its subsidiaries' owned real property and equipment, but excluding, among other things, the collateral described in the following bullet point

a second-priority security interest in personal property consisting of inventory and related accounts, cash, deposit accounts, all payments received by Holdings, MSI or the Subsidiary Guarantors from credit card clearinghouses and processors or otherwise in respect of all credit card charges and debit card charges for sales of inventory by Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, and certain related assets and proceeds of the foregoing

***Covenants and other matters***

The Restated Term Loan Facility contains a number of negative covenants that are substantially similar to, but more restrictive in certain respects than, those governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes as well as certain other customary representations and warranties, affirmative and negative covenants and events of default. As of November 1, 2014, MSI was in compliance with all covenants.

**5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% senior subordinated notes due 2020**

***General***

On December 19, 2013, MSI issued \$260 million in principal amount of its 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes. Interest is payable semi-annually in arrears on each June 15 and December 15, commencing on June 15, 2014.

On June 16, 2014, MSI issued \$250 million aggregate principal amount of Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes under the indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes. The Additional

Table of Contents

2020 Senior Subordinated Notes were issued at a price of 102% of face value, resulting in an effective interest rate of approximately 5.76%. The Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes form a single class with the existing 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes under the indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and have the same terms as the existing 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, except that interest on the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes accrues from and including June 15, 2014.

***Guarantees and security***

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes are guaranteed, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally, on an unsecured senior subordinated basis, by each of MSI's subsidiaries that guarantee indebtedness under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities.

***Ranking***

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the guarantees thereof are MSI's and the guarantors' unsecured senior subordinated obligations and (i) are subordinated in right of payment to all of MSI's and the guarantors' existing and future senior debt, including the Senior Secured Credit Facilities; (ii) rank equally in right of payment to all of MSI's and the guarantors' future senior subordinated debt; (iii) are effectively subordinated to all of MSI's and the guarantors' existing and future secured debt (including the Senior Secured Credit Facilities) to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt; (iv) rank senior in right of payment to all of MSI's and the guarantors' existing and future debt and other obligations that are, by their terms, expressly subordinated in right of payment to the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes; and (v) are structurally subordinated to all obligations of MSI's subsidiaries that are not guarantors of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

***Prepayments***

At any time prior to December 15, 2016, MSI may redeem all or a part of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes redeemed plus a make-whole premium, as provided in the indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes ("2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture"), and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date.

On and after December 15, 2016, MSI may redeem all or part of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, upon notice, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to be redeemed) set forth below, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to the applicable date of redemption if redeemed during the twelve-month period beginning on December 15 of each of the years indicated below:

<b>Year</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
2016	102.938%
2017	101.469%
2018 and thereafter	100.000%

In addition, until December 15, 2016, MSI may, at its option, on one or more occasions redeem up to 40% of the aggregate principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes with the aggregate principal amount of 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to be redeemed (the "Equity Offering Redemption Amount") not to exceed an amount equal to the aggregate gross proceeds from one or more Equity Offerings (as defined in the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture), at a redemption price equal to 105.875% of the

Table of Contents

aggregate principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to, but not including, the applicable date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date; provided that (i) each such redemption occurs within 120 days of the date of closing of each such Equity Offering; (ii) proceeds in an amount equal to or exceeding the applicable Equity Offering Redemption Amount shall be received by, or contributed to the capital of, MSI or any of its restricted subsidiaries and (iii) at least 50% of the sum of the aggregate principal amount of 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes originally issued under the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture and any 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes that are issued under the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture after the original issue date remains outstanding immediately after the occurrence of each such redemption.

Upon a change in control, MSI is required to offer to purchase all of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes at a price in cash equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest.

***Certain covenants and events of default***

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Indenture contains covenants limiting, among other things, MSI's ability and the ability of MSI's restricted subsidiaries to:

incur or guarantee additional debt;

pay dividends or distributions on MSI's capital stock or repurchase MSI's capital stock or prepay debt subordinated to the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes;

issue stock of subsidiaries;

make certain investments, loans, advances and acquisitions;

create liens on MSI's or the guarantors' assets to secure debt;

enter into transactions with affiliates;

merge or consolidate with another company; and

sell or otherwise transfer assets.

As of November 1, 2014, MSI was in compliance with all covenants.

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Indenture also provides for events of default, which, if certain of them occur, would permit the trustee under the 2020 Senior Subordinated Indenture or holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes (including the aggregate principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes issued after December 19, 2013) to declare the principal, premium, if any, interest and any other monetary obligations on all the then outstanding 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to be due and payable immediately.

**Restated Revolving Credit Facility**

***General***

On February 18, 2010, MSI entered into an agreement to amend and restate various terms of the then existing senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility, dated as of October 31, 2006. On September 17, 2012, MSI entered into a second amended and restated credit agreement with Wells Fargo



Table of Contents

and other lenders to amend various terms of the senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. On June 6, 2014, MSI amended its second amended and restated credit agreement to, among other things, permit the incurrence of the Additional Term Loans and the refinancing of the 2018 Senior Notes with the net proceeds of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the Additional Term Loans.

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides for senior secured financing of up to \$650 million, subject to a borrowing base, maturing on September 17, 2017. The borrowing base under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility equals the sum of (i) 90% of eligible credit card receivables and debit card receivables, plus (ii) 90% of the appraised net orderly liquidation value of eligible inventory, plus (iii) the lesser of (x) 90% of the appraised net orderly liquidation value of inventory supported by eligible letters of credit and (y) 90% of the face amount of eligible letters of credit, minus (iv) certain reserves.

As of November 1, 2014, the Restated Revolving Credit Facility provided for an aggregate amount of \$650 million in commitments, of which we had no outstanding borrowings, supported \$62 million of outstanding standby letters of credit and provided \$588 million of unused borrowing capacity.

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides MSI with the right to request up to \$200 million of additional commitments under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. The lenders under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will not be under any obligation to provide any such additional commitments, and any increase in commitments is subject to customary conditions precedent. If MSI were to request any such additional commitments, and the existing lenders or new lenders were to agree to provide such commitments, the facility size could be increased to up to \$850 million, but MSI's ability to borrow under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility would still be limited by the borrowing base.

If, at any time, the aggregate amount of outstanding loans, unreimbursed letter of credit drawings and undrawn letters of credit under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility exceeds the lesser of (i) the commitment amount and (ii) the Loan Cap, MSI will be required to repay outstanding loans and cash collateralize letters of credit in an aggregate amount equal to such excess, with no reduction of the commitment amount. If excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility is less than (i) 12.5% of the Loan Cap, for five consecutive business days or (ii) \$65 million, at any time, or if certain events of default have occurred, MSI will be required to repay outstanding loans and cash collateralize letters of credit with the cash MSI is required to deposit daily in a collection account maintained with the agent under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility means the Loan Cap minus the outstanding credit extensions. MSI may voluntarily reduce the unutilized portion of the commitment amount and repay outstanding loans at any time without premium or penalty other than customary breakage costs with respect to LIBOR loans. There is no scheduled amortization under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility; the principal amount of the loans outstanding is due and payable in full on the ABL Maturity Date.

***Interest rate and fees***

Borrowings under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility bear interest at a rate per annum equal to, at MSI's option, either (a) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (1) the prime rate of Wells Fargo, (2) the federal funds effective rate plus 0.50% and (3) LIBOR subject to certain adjustments plus 1.00% or (b) LIBOR subject to certain adjustments, in each case plus an applicable margin. The initial applicable margin is (a) 0.75% for prime rate borrowings and 1.75% for LIBOR borrowings. The applicable margin is subject to adjustment each fiscal quarter based on the excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Same-day borrowings bear interest at the base rate plus the applicable margin.

Table of Contents

MSI is required to pay a commitment fee on the unutilized commitments under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, which initially is 0.375% per annum. The commitment fee is subject to adjustment each fiscal quarter. If average daily excess availability is less than or equal to 50% of the total commitments, the commitment fee will be 0.25% per annum, and if average daily excess availability is greater than 50% of the total commitments, the commitment fee will be 0.375%. MSI must also pay customary letter of credit fees and agency fees.

***Guarantees and security***

All obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility are unconditionally guaranteed, jointly and severally by Holdings and all of MSI's existing domestic material subsidiaries and are required to be guaranteed by certain of MSI's future domestic wholly-owned material subsidiaries (the "Subsidiary Guarantors"). All obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, and the guarantees of those obligations, are secured, subject to certain exceptions, by substantially all of the assets of Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, including:

a first-priority security interest in personal property consisting of inventory and related accounts, cash, deposit accounts, all payments received by Holdings, MSI or the Subsidiary Guarantors from credit card clearinghouses and processors or otherwise in respect of all credit card charges and debit card charges for sales of inventory by Holdings, MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, and certain related assets and proceeds of the foregoing;

a second-priority pledge of all of MSI's capital stock and the capital stock held directly by MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors (which pledge, in the case of the capital stock of any foreign subsidiary, is limited to 65% of the voting stock of such foreign subsidiary and 100% of the non-voting stock of such subsidiary); and

a second-priority security interest in, and mortgages on, substantially all other tangible and intangible assets of Holdings, MSI and each Subsidiary Guarantor, including substantially all of MSI's owned real property and equipment.

***Covenants and other matters***

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility contains a number of covenants that, among other things and subject to certain exceptions, restrict MSI's ability and the ability of its restricted subsidiaries to:

- incur or guarantee additional indebtedness;
- pay dividends on MSI's capital stock or redeem, repurchase or retire MSI's capital stock;
- make investments, loans, advances and acquisitions;
- create restrictions on the payment of dividends or other amounts to MSI from its restricted subsidiaries;
- engage in transactions with affiliates of MSI;
- sell assets, including capital stock of MSI's subsidiaries;
- prepay or redeem indebtedness;
- consolidate or merge; and
- create liens.

The covenants limiting dividends and other restricted payments, investments, loans, advances and acquisitions, and prepayments or redemptions of indebtedness, each permit the restricted actions in an unlimited amount, subject to the satisfaction of certain payment conditions, principally that MSI must meet certain specified excess availability requirements and minimum consolidated fixed charge coverage ratios, to be tested on a pro forma and 6 months projected basis. Adjusted EBITDA is used in the calculation of



Table of Contents

the consolidated fixed charge coverage ratios. The Restated Revolving Credit Facility also contains certain customary affirmative covenants and events of default. As of November 1, 2014, MSI was in compliance with all covenants.

From the time when MSI has excess availability less than the greater of (a) 10% of the Loan Cap and (b) \$50 million, until the time when MSI has excess availability greater than the greater of (a) 10% of the Loan Cap and (b) \$50 million for 30 consecutive days, the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will require MSI to maintain a consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio of at least 1.0 to 1.0.

**7.50/8.25% PIK toggle notes due 2018**

***General***

On July 29, 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. (together, the "Holdco Issuers") issued \$800 million aggregate principal amount of their Holdco Notes maturing on August 1, 2018. Interest is payable semi-annually in arrears on each February 1 and August 1, commencing on February 1, 2014 at a rate of 7.50% per annum with respect to cash interest and 8.25% per annum with respect to PIK Interest (as defined below), which is the cash interest rate plus 75 basis points.

The Holdco Issuers are required to pay interest on the Holdco Notes entirely in cash, unless certain conditions are satisfied, in which case, the Holdco Issuers are entitled to pay all or a portion of the interest for such interest period by increasing the principal amount of the notes or by issuing new notes (such increase or issuance, "PIK Interest"). Interest for the first two interest periods ending after the issue date are payable entirely in cash. Interest for the final interest period ending at stated maturity shall be payable entirely in cash.

***Guarantees and security***

The Holdco Notes are not guaranteed but may, under certain limited circumstances, be guaranteed by certain subsidiaries of FinCo Holdings in the future.

***Ranking***

The Holdco Notes are the Holdco Issuers' unsecured senior obligations and (i) rank senior in right of payment to all of the Holdco Issuers' existing and future debt and other obligations that are, by their terms, expressly subordinated in right of payment to the Holdco Notes; (ii) rank equally in right of payment to all of the Holdco Issuers' existing and future debt and other obligations that are not, by their terms, expressly subordinated in right of payment to the Holdco Notes; (iii) are effectively subordinated in right of payment to all of the Holdco Issuers' existing and future secured debt, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt; and (iv) are structurally subordinated to all existing and future obligations of the Holdco Issuers' subsidiaries (other than FinCo Inc.) that are not guarantors of the Holdco Notes, including MSI's Senior Secured Credit Facilities and 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

***Prepayments***

At any time prior to August 1, 2014, the Holdco Issuers could redeem all or a part of the Holdco Notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the Holdco Notes redeemed plus a make-whole premium, as provided in the indenture governing the Holdco Notes (the "Holdco Indenture"), and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

On and after August 1, 2014, the Holdco Issuers may redeem the Holdco Notes, in whole or in part, upon notice, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount of the Holdco Notes to be redeemed) set forth below, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to the applicable date of redemption if redeemed during the twelve-month period beginning on August 1 of each of the years indicated below:

<b>Year</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
2014	102.000%
2015	101.000%
2016 and thereafter	100.000%

In addition, until August 1, 2015, the Holdco Issuers may, at their option, on one or more occasions redeem up to 100% of the aggregate principal amount of the Holdco Notes with the aggregate principal amount of Holdco Notes to be redeemed not to exceed an amount equal to the aggregate gross proceeds from one or more Equity Offerings (as defined in the Holdco Indenture), at a redemption price equal to (i) prior to August 1, 2014, 102% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, and (ii) from August 1, 2014 to August 1, 2015, 101% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, in each case, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to, but not including, the applicable date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date; provided that each such redemption occurs within 120 days of the date of closing of each such Equity Offering; and provided further that proceeds in an amount equal to or exceeding the applicable Equity Offering Redemption Amount shall be received by, or contributed to the capital of FinCo Holdings or any of its restricted subsidiaries.

Upon a change in control the Holdco Issuers are required, subject to certain exceptions, to offer to purchase all of the Holdco Notes at a price in cash equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of repurchase.

We redeemed \$439 million in principal amount of the Holdco Notes with the proceeds from our initial public offering, and in December 2014, we redeemed an additional \$180 in million principal amount of the Holdco Notes with cash on hand.

### ***Certain covenants and events of default***

The Holdco Indenture contains restrictive covenants and events of default substantially similar to, but less restrictive than, those of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes described above. FinCo Holdings and all of its restricted subsidiaries, including MSI and its subsidiaries, are subject to the restrictive covenants in the Holdco Indenture. As of November 1, 2014, the Holdco Issuers were in compliance with all covenants.

Table of Contents**Principal and selling stockholders**

The following table presents information regarding the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned as of January 3, 2015 (unless otherwise indicated) by each of Michaels' directors and the Named Executive Officers (as defined in "Executive Compensation Compensation Discussion and Analysis Executive and Director Compensation Summary Compensation Table"), and the current directors and executive officers of Michaels as a group. In addition, the table presents information about each person or entity known to Michaels to beneficially own 5% or more of Common Stock.

Unless otherwise indicated by footnote, the address for each listed director, officer and stockholder is c/o The Michaels Companies, Inc., 8000 Bent Branch Drive, Irving, Texas 75063 and each beneficial owner exercises sole voting and investment power over the shares noted below. The percentage of beneficial ownership for our directors and executive officers, both individually and as a group, and beneficial owners of 5% or more of Common Stock is calculated based on 204,303,715 shares of Common Stock outstanding as of January 3, 2015, and the number of unissued shares as to which such person or persons has the right to acquire voting and/or investment power within 60 days. The beneficial ownership information set forth below was provided by or on behalf of our executive officers, our Directors, our Sponsors, and Highfields, and the Company has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of the information so provided.

Name and address of beneficial owner(1)	Shares owned before offering		Shares owned after offering (no option exercise)		Shares owned after offering (full option exercise)	
	Number	Percent	Number	Percent	Number	Percent
<b>Beneficial Owners of 5% or More of Our Common Stock:</b>						
Bain Capital Investors, LLC and related funds(2)	81,455,630	39.9%	74,415,630	36.4%	73,359,630	35.9%
Affiliates of The Blackstone Group L.P.(5)	81,455,630	39.9%	74,415,630	36.4%	73,359,630	35.9%
Highfields Capital Management LP and related funds(6)	10,823,883	5.3%	8,903,883	4.4%	8,615,883	4.2%
<b>Directors and Named Executive Officers:</b>						
Joshua Bekenstein(3)						
Todd M. Cook(4)						
Nadim El Gabbani(7)						
Jill A. Greenthal(7)(8)	5,479	*	5,479	*	5,479	*
Lewis S. Klessel(4)						
Matthew S. Levin(4)						
John J. Mahoney(9)	12,255	*	12,255	*	12,255	*
James A. Quella(7)(10)	5,479	*	5,479	*	5,479	*
Beryl B. Raff(11)	5,479	*	5,479	*	5,479	*
Peter F. Wallace(7)						
Carl S. Rubin(12)	1,063,353	*	1,063,353	*	1,063,353	*
Charles M. Sonsteby(13)	811,837	*	811,837	*	811,837	*
Thomas C. DeCaro(14)	741,121	*	741,121	*	741,121	*
Philo T. Pappas(15)	881,534	*	881,534	*	881,534	*
Paula A. Puleo(16)	109,411	*	109,411	*	109,411	*
Nicholas E. Crombie(17)						
Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu(18)	189,396	*	189,396	*	189,396	*
All current directors and executive officers as a group (20 persons)(19)	4,744,285	2.3%	4,744,285	2.3%	4,744,285	2.3%

\* Less than one percent.

(1) Pursuant to Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act, a person has beneficial ownership of any securities as to which such person, directly or indirectly, through any contract, arrangement, undertaking, relationship or otherwise has or

shares voting power and/or investment power or as to which such person has the right to acquire such voting and/or investment power within 60 days. Percentage of beneficial ownership by a

Table of Contents

person as of a particular date is calculated by dividing the number of shares beneficially owned by such person by the sum of the number of shares outstanding as of such date and the number of unissued shares as to which such person has the right to acquire voting and/or investment power within 60 days. Unless otherwise indicated, the number of shares shown includes outstanding shares of Common Stock owned as of January 3, 2015 by the person indicated.

(2) The shares included in this table consist of: (i) 81,217,899 shares of Common Stock held by Bain Capital Integral Investors 2006, LLC, whose administrative member is Bain Capital Investors, LLC ("BCI"); and (ii) 237,731 shares of Common Stock held by BCIP TCV, LLC, whose administrative member is BCI. Assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, in this offering: (i) Bain Capital Integral Investors 2006, LLC ("Integral 06") will sell 7,019,454 shares of Common Stock; and (ii) BCIP TCV, LLC ("TCV") will sell 20,546 shares of Common Stock. Assuming full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, in this offering: (i) Integral 06 will sell 8,072,372 shares of Common Stock; and (ii) TCV will sell 23,628 shares of Common Stock. As a result of the relationships described above, BCI may be deemed to share beneficial ownership of the shares held by each of Integral 06 and TCV (collectively, the "Bain Capital Entities"). The governance, investment strategy and decision-making process with respect to investments held by the Bain Capital Entities is directed by BCI's Global Private Equity Board ("GPEB"), which is comprised of the following individuals: Steven Barnes, Joshua Bekenstein, John Connaughton, Paul Edgerley, Stephen Pagliuca, Michel Plantevin, Dwight Poler, Jonathan Zhu and Stephen Zide. By virtue of the relationships described in this footnote, GPEB may be deemed to exercise voting and dispositive power with respect to the shares held by the Bain Capital Entities. Each of the members of GPEB disclaims beneficial ownership of such shares to the extent attributed to such member solely by virtue of serving on GPEB. Certain partners and other employees of the Bain Capital Entities may make a contribution of shares of common stock to one or more charities prior to this offering. In such case, a recipient charity, if it chooses to participate in this offering, will be the selling shareholder with respect to the donated shares. Each of the Bain Capital Entities has an address c/o Bain Capital Partners, LLC, 200 Clarendon Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02116.

(3) Does not include shares indirectly held by the Bain Capital Entities. Mr. Bekenstein is a Managing Director of BCI and a member of GPEB and as a result, by virtue of the relationships described in footnote 2 above, may be deemed to share beneficial ownership of the common shares indirectly held by each of the Integral 06 and TCV. The address of Mr. Bekenstein is c/o Bain Capital Partners, LLC, John Hancock Tower, 200 Clarendon Street, Boston, MA 02116.

(4) Does not include shares indirectly held by the Bain Capital Entities. Each of Messrs. Cook, Klessel and Levin is a Managing Director of BCI and as a result, by virtue of the relationships described in footnote 2 above, may be deemed to share beneficial ownership of the common shares indirectly held by each of Integral 06 and TCV. The address of Messrs. Cook, Klessel and Levin is c/o Bain Capital Partners, LLC, John Hancock Tower, 200 Clarendon Street, Boston, MA 02116.

(5) Includes 61,499,301 shares of our Common Stock owned by Blackstone Capital Partners V L.P. ("BCP V"), 14,065,576 shares of our Common Stock owned by BCP V-S L.P. ("BCP V-S"), 880,838 shares of our Common Stock owned by Blackstone Family Investment Partnership V L.P. ("Family"), 186,965 shares of our Common Stock owned by Blackstone Participation Partnership V L.P. ("Participation"), 2,742,216 shares of our Common Stock owned by BCP V Co-Investors L.P. ("BCP Co-Investors") and 2,080,734 shares of our Common Stock owned by Blackstone Family Investment Partnership V-SMD L.P. ("Family-SMD") (collectively, "the "Blackstone Funds"). Assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, in this offering: (i) BCP V will sell 5,315,226 shares of Common Stock; (ii) BCP V-S will sell 1,215,651 shares of Common Stock; (iii) Family will sell 76,129 shares of Common Stock; (iv) Participation will sell 16,159 shares of Common Stock; (v) BCP Co-Investors will sell 237,003 shares of Common Stock; and (vi) Family-SMD will sell 179,832 shares of Common Stock. Assuming full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, in this offering: (i) BCP V will sell 6,112,510 shares of Common Stock; (ii) BCP V-S will sell 1,397,999 shares of Common Stock; (iii) Family will sell

87,548 shares of Common Stock; (iv) Participation will sell 18,583 shares of Common Stock; (v) BCP Co-Investors will sell 272,553 shares of Common Stock; and (vi) Family-SMD will sell 206,807 shares of Common Stock. The general partner of BCP V, BCP V-S and BCP Co-Investors is Blackstone Management Associates V L.L.C. BMA V L.L.C. is the sole member of Blackstone Management Associates V L.L.C. BCP V Side-by-Side GP L.L.C. is the general partner of Family and Participation. Blackstone Holdings III L.P. is the managing member and majority in interest owner of BMA V L.L.C. and the sole member of BCP V Side-by-Side GP L.L.C. The general partner of Blackstone Holdings III L.P. is Blackstone Holdings III GP L.P. The general partner of Blackstone Holdings III G.P. is Blackstone Holdings III GP Management L.L.C. The sole member of Blackstone Holdings III GP Management L.L.C. is The Blackstone Group L.P. The general partner of The Blackstone Group L.P. is Blackstone Group Management L.L.C. Blackstone Group Management L.L.C. is wholly owned by Blackstone's senior managing directors and controlled by its founder, Stephen A. Schwarzman. The general partner of Family-SMD is Blackstone Family GP L.L.C., which is controlled by its founder Mr. Schwarzman. As a result of his control of Blackstone Group Management L.L.C. and Blackstone Family GP L.L.C., Mr. Schwarzman has voting and investment power with respect to the shares held by the Blackstone Funds. Each of such Blackstone entities and Mr. Schwarzman may be deemed to beneficially own the shares beneficially owned by the Blackstone Funds directly or indirectly controlled by it or him, but each (other than the Blackstone Funds to the extent of their direct holdings) disclaims beneficial ownership of such shares. The address for each of the Blackstone Funds, Blackstone Management Associates V L.L.C., BMA V L.L.C., BCP V Side-by-Side GP L.L.C., Blackstone Holdings III L.P., Blackstone Holdings III GP L.P., Blackstone Holdings III GP Management L.L.C., The Blackstone Group L.P., Blackstone Group Management L.L.C., Blackstone Family GP L.L.C. and Mr. Schwarzman is c/o The Blackstone Group L.P., 345 Park Avenue, New York, New York 10154.

(6) Includes 1,459,558 shares of our Common Stock owned by Highfields Capital I LP ("HC I"), 3,503,674 shares of our Common Stock owned by Highfields Capital II LP ("HC II") and 5,860,651 shares of our Common Stock owned by Highfields Capital III L.P. ("HC III" and together with HC I and HC II, the "Highfields Funds"). Assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, (i) HC I will sell 258,904 shares of Common Stock; (ii) HC II will sell 621,501 shares of Common Stock; and (iii) HCIII will sell 1,039,595 shares of Common Stock. Assuming full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, (i) HC I will sell 297,740 shares of Common Stock; (ii) HC II will sell 714,726 shares of Common Stock; and (iii) HCIII will sell 1,195,534 shares of Common Stock. Highfields Capital Management LP acts as the investment manager of the Highfields Funds and in such capacity has voting and investment power with respect to the shares held thereby. Jonathon S. Jacobson is the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Investment Officer of Highfields Capital Management LP. Mr. Jacobson disclaims beneficial ownership of any shares owned by the Highfields Funds. The address of Mr. Jacobson, Highfields Capital Management LP and the Highfields Funds is 200 Clarendon Street, 59th Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02116.

(7) Mr. El Gabbani and Mr. Wallace are each employees of, and Ms. Greenthal and Mr. Quella are each senior advisors to, affiliates of The Blackstone Group L.P., but each disclaims beneficial ownership of the shares beneficially owned by the Blackstone Funds. The addresses of Mr. El Gabbani, Ms. Greenthal, Mr. Quella and Mr. Wallace are 345 Park Avenue, New York, New York 10154.

(8) Includes 5,479 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Ms. Greenthal holds voting rights.

Table of Contents

- (9) The address of Mr. Mahoney is 35 Draper Road, Dover, Massachusetts 02030. Includes 5,479 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Mr. Mahoney holds voting rights.
- (10) Includes 5,479 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Mr. Quella holds voting rights.
- (11) The address of Ms. Raff is 1825 Swift Avenue, North Kansas City, MO 64116. Includes 5,479 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Ms. Raff holds voting rights.
- (12) Includes 369,000 stock options that vested on March 18, 2014 and 369,000 stock options that will vest on March 18, 2015. Includes 267,431 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Mr. Rubin holds voting rights.
- (13) Includes 167,568 stock options that vested on October 4, 2011, 167,568 stock options that vested on October 4, 2012, 167,568 stock options that vested on October 4, 2013, 30,774 stock options that vested on July 3, 2014 and 167,568 stock options that vested on October 4, 2014. Includes 49,533 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Mr. Sonstebly holds voting rights.
- (14) Includes 212,541 stock options that vested on July 2, 2009, 91,566 stock options that vested on July 2, 2010, 91,569 stock options that vested on July 2, 2011, 91,569 stock options that vested on July 2, 2012, 91,569 stock options that vested on July 2, 2013, 191,569 stock options that vested on July 2, 2014 and 12,546 stock options that vested on July 3, 2014. Includes 16,322 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Mr. DeCaro holds voting rights.
- (15) Includes 18,624 stock options that vested on July 2, 2009, 130,350 stock options that vested on July 2, 2010, 130,352 stock options that vested on July 2, 2011, 130,352 stock options that vested on July 2, 2012, 130,352 stock options that vested on July 2, 2013, 130,352 stock options that vested on July 2, 2014 and 18,985 stock options that vested on July 3, 2014. Includes 171,084 shares of unvested restricted stock for which Mr. Pappas holds voting rights.
- (16) Ms. Puleo separated from the Company on March 9, 2014.
- (17) Mr. Crombie retired from the Company on July 27, 2013.
- (18) Mr. Zhu left the Company on November 15, 2013.
- (19) Consistent with the disclaimers of beneficial ownership of Messrs. Bekenstein, Cook, El Gabbani, Klessel, Levin, Quella and Wallace and Ms. Greenthal contained in notes (2), (3), (4), (5) and (7) above, this number does not include the 162,911,260 shares of Common Stock that may be deemed to be beneficially owned by each of (a) Bain Capital Investors, LLC and related funds and (b) affiliates of The Blackstone Group. The total includes 3,849,544 vested options or options that will vest within 60 days of January 3, 2015 held by executive officers of the Company and 672,566 shares of unvested restricted stock for which executive officers of the Company hold voting rights.

Table of Contents

## **Description of capital stock**

As of November 1, 2014, the total amount of our authorized Common Stock consisted of 350,000,000 shares of Common Stock, par value \$0.06775 per share, and we had 204,241,913 shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding, of which 162,911,260 shares were held by our Sponsors, and no shares of preferred stock were issued or outstanding. As of November 1, 2014, we had 84 stockholders of record of Common Stock and had unvested restricted stock awards and outstanding options to purchase 12,852,798 shares of Common Stock.

The discussion set forth below describes our capital stock, certificate of incorporation and bylaws. We urge you to read the full text of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, which are included as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

### **Common Stock**

Except as required by law or matters relating solely to the terms of preferred stock, each outstanding share of Common Stock will be entitled to one vote on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders. Holders of shares of our Common Stock shall have no cumulative voting rights.

Our shares of Common Stock are listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "MIK".

### **Preferred stock**

Our Board may, without further action by our stockholders, from time to time, direct the issuance of shares of preferred stock in series and may, at the time of issuance, determine the designations, powers, preferences, privileges, and relative participating, optional or special rights as well as the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof, including dividend rights, conversion rights, voting rights, terms of redemption and liquidation preferences, any or all of which may be greater than the rights of the Common Stock. Satisfaction of any dividend preferences of outstanding shares of preferred stock would reduce the amount of funds available for the payment of dividends on shares of our Common Stock. Holders of shares of preferred stock may be entitled to receive a preference payment in the event of our liquidation before any payment is made to the holders of shares of our Common Stock. Under specified circumstances, the issuance of shares of preferred stock may render more difficult or tend to discourage a merger, tender offer or proxy contest, the assumption of control by a holder of a large block of our securities or the removal of incumbent management. Our Board, without stockholder approval, may issue shares of preferred stock with voting and conversion rights, which could adversely affect the holders of shares of our Common Stock and the market value of our Common Stock. Subject to the rights of the holders of shares of preferred stock, the number of authorized shares of preferred stock may be increased or decreased (but not below the number of shares thereof then outstanding) by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the voting power of the outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class. There are no shares of preferred stock outstanding, and we have no present intention to issue any shares of preferred stock although we may in the future decide to do so.

### **Anti-takeover effects of our certificate of incorporation and bylaws**

Our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws contain provisions that may delay, defer or discourage another party from acquiring control of us. We expect that these provisions, which are summarized below, will discourage coercive takeover practices or inadequate takeover bids. These provisions are also designed

Table of Contents

to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to first negotiate with the Board, which we believe may result in an improvement of the terms of any such acquisition in favor of our stockholders; however, these provisions also give the Board the power to discourage acquisitions that some stockholders may favor.

**Authorized but unissued capital stock**

The General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the "DGCL") does not require stockholder approval for any issuance of authorized shares. However, the listing requirements of The NASDAQ Stock Market, which would apply as long as our Common Stock is listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market, require stockholder approval of certain issuances equal to or exceeding 20% of the then outstanding voting power or then outstanding number of shares of Common Stock. These additional shares may be used for a variety of corporate purposes, including future public offerings, to raise additional capital or to facilitate acquisitions.

One of the effects of the existence of authorized but unissued Common Stock or preferred stock may be to enable our Board to issue shares to persons friendly to current management, which issuance could render more difficult or discourage an attempt to obtain control of our company by means of a merger, tender offer, proxy contest or otherwise, and thereby protect the continuity of our management and possibly deprive the stockholder of opportunities to sell their shares of Common Stock at prices higher than prevailing market prices.

*Board of Directors*

Our certificate of incorporation provides that the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the Board. Our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws also provide that a director may be removed without cause as long as investment funds affiliated with our Sponsors hold a majority of our outstanding Common Stock, and when this ceases to be the case, only for cause by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least 75% of our voting stock. Any vacancy on our Board, including a vacancy resulting from an enlargement of our Board, may be filled only by vote of a majority of our directors then in office.

*Action by written consent*

The DGCL provides that, unless otherwise stated in a corporation's certificate of incorporation, the stockholders may act by written consent without a meeting. Our certificate of incorporation provides that after the investment funds associated with the Sponsors collectively own less than majority of our outstanding Common Stock, any action required or permitted to be taken by our stockholders may be effected only at a duly called annual or special meeting of our stockholders and may not be effected by any consent in writing by our stockholders. As a result, investments funds associated with the Sponsors will be able to act by written consent so long as they collectively own at least a majority of our outstanding Common Stock.

*Special meeting of stockholders and advance notice requirements for stockholder proposals*

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws provide that, except as otherwise required by law and subject to any rights of the holders of preferred stock, special meetings of the stockholders can only be called by (a) our chairman or any vice chairman of the Board, (b) the Board pursuant to a written resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of directors that our Board would have if there were no vacancies or (c) our secretary at the request of 25% of our common stockholders as long as investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors hold a majority of our Common Stock.

Table of Contents

In addition, our bylaws require advance notice procedures for stockholder proposals to be brought before an annual meeting of the stockholders, including the nomination of directors. Stockholders at an annual meeting may only consider the proposals specified in the notice of meeting or brought before the meeting by or at the direction of the Board, or by a stockholder of record on the record date for the meeting who is entitled to vote at the meeting, who has delivered a timely written notice in proper form to our secretary of the stockholder's intention to bring such business before the meeting, who attends (or has a qualified representative attend) the stockholder meeting and who has otherwise complied with the provisions of our bylaws and applicable law.

These provisions could have the effect of delaying any stockholder actions until the next stockholder meeting, even if they are favored by the holders of a majority of our outstanding voting stock.

***Amendment to certificate of incorporation and bylaws***

The DGCL provides generally that the affirmative vote of a majority of the outstanding stock entitled to vote on amendments to a corporation's certificate of incorporation or bylaws is required to approve such amendment, unless a corporation's certificate of incorporation or bylaws, as the case may be, requires a greater percentage. Our bylaws may be altered, amended or repealed by a majority vote of our Board or, in addition to any other vote otherwise required by law, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the voting power of our outstanding shares of Common Stock so long as investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors collectively beneficially own a majority of our outstanding shares of Common Stock, and when this ceases to be the case, a vote of at least 75% of our outstanding Common Stock will be required. Additionally, so long as the investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors collectively beneficially own a majority of our outstanding shares of Common Stock, the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the voting power of our outstanding shares of Common Stock and, from and after the date on which the investment funds affiliated with the Sponsors cease collectively to beneficially own a majority of our outstanding shares of Common Stock, the affirmative vote of at least 75% of the voting power of our outstanding shares of Common Stock, in each case entitled to vote on the adoption, alteration, amendment or repeal of our certificate of incorporation, voting as a single class, is required to amend or repeal or to adopt any provision inconsistent with the "Board of Directors", "Director Liability", "Action by Written Consent", "Special Meetings of Stockholders", "Amendments to the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws", "Business Combinations", "Renouncement of Corporate Opportunity" and "Exclusive Jurisdiction of Certain Actions" provisions described in our certificate of incorporation. These provisions may have the effect of deferring, delaying or discouraging the removal of any anti-takeover defenses provided for in our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws.

***Business combinations***

We have elected in our certificate of incorporation not to be subject to Section 203 of the DGCL, an antitakeover law. In general, Section 203 prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a business combination, such as a merger, with a person or group owning 15% or more of the corporation's voting stock for a period of three years following the date the person became an interested stockholder, unless (with certain exceptions) the business combination or the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder is approved in a prescribed manner. Accordingly, we are not subject to any anti-takeover effects of Section 203. However, our certificate of incorporation contains provisions that have the same effect as Section 203, except that they provide that our Sponsors and their respective affiliates will not be deemed to be "interested stockholders", regardless of the percentage of our voting stock owned by them and accordingly will not be subject to such restrictions.

Table of Contents

**Renouncement of corporate opportunity**

Our certificate of incorporation provides that we renounce any interest or expectancy in, or in being offered an opportunity to participate in, any business opportunity that may from time to time be presented to the Sponsors or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, stockholders, members, partners, affiliates and subsidiaries (other than us and our subsidiaries) and that may be a business opportunity for the Sponsors, even if the opportunity is one that we might reasonably have pursued or had the ability or desire to pursue if granted the opportunity to do so. No such person will be liable to us for breach of any fiduciary or other duty, as a director or officer or otherwise, by reason of the fact that such person, acting in good faith, pursues or acquires any such business opportunity, directs any such business opportunity to another person or fails to present any such business opportunity, or information regarding any such business opportunity, to us unless, in the case of any such person who is our director or officer, any such business opportunity is expressly offered to such director or officer solely in his or her capacity as our director or officer. None of the Sponsors, any of the investment funds associated with the Sponsors or any of their respective representatives has any duty to refrain from engaging directly or indirectly in the same or similar business activities or lines of business as us or any of our subsidiaries.

**Exclusive jurisdiction of certain actions**

Our certificate of incorporation requires, to the fullest extent permitted by law, that (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on behalf of the Company, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee of the Company to the Company or our stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against the Company arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or our certificate of incorporation or the bylaws or (iv) any action asserting a claim against the Company governed by the internal affairs doctrine will have to be brought only in the Court of Chancery in the State of Delaware. Although we believe this provision benefits the Company by providing increased consistency in the application of Delaware law in the types of lawsuits to which it applies, the provision may have the effect of discouraging lawsuits against our directors and officers.

**Limitations on liability and indemnification of officers and directors**

Our certificate of incorporation and bylaws limit the liability of our directors to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law and provide that we will indemnify them to the fullest extent permitted by such law. We have entered into indemnification agreements with our current directors and executive officers and expect to enter into a similar agreement with any new directors or executive officers.

**Transfer agent and registrar**

The transfer agent and registrar for our Common Stock is Wells Fargo Bank, National Association. Its address is 1110 Centre Point Curve, Suite 101, Mendota Heights, MN 55120-4101. Its telephone number is (800) 689-8788.

Table of Contents

## **Material U.S. federal income and estate tax considerations for Non-U.S. Holders of shares of our Common Stock**

The following is a summary of material U.S. federal income and estate tax considerations relating to the purchase, ownership and disposition of shares of our Common Stock issued pursuant to this offering by Non-U.S. Holders (defined below). This summary does not purport to be a complete analysis of all the potential tax considerations relevant to Non-U.S. Holders of shares of our Common Stock. This summary is based upon the Code, the Treasury regulations promulgated or proposed thereunder and administrative and judicial interpretations thereof, all as of the date hereof and all of which are subject to change or differing interpretations at any time, possibly with retroactive effect.

This summary assumes that shares of our Common Stock are held by a Non-U.S. Holder as "capital assets" within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code. This summary does not purport to deal with all aspects of U.S. federal income and estate taxation that might be relevant to particular Non-U.S. Holders in light of their particular investment circumstances or status, nor does it address specific tax considerations that may be relevant to particular persons who are subject to special treatment under U.S. federal income tax laws (including, for example, financial institutions, broker-dealers, insurance companies, partnerships or other pass-through entities, certain U.S. expatriates or former long term residents of the United States, tax-exempt organizations, pension plans, "controlled foreign corporations", "passive foreign investment companies", corporations that accumulate earnings to avoid U.S. federal income tax, persons in special situations, such as those who have elected to mark securities to market or those who hold shares of our Common Stock as part of a straddle, hedge, conversion transaction, synthetic security or other integrated investment, persons that have a "functional currency" other than the U.S. dollar, or holders subject to the alternative minimum tax or the 3.8% tax on net investment income). In addition, except as explicitly addressed herein with respect to estate tax, this summary does not address certain estate and any gift tax considerations or considerations arising under the tax laws of any state, local or non-U.S. jurisdiction.

For purposes of this summary, a "Non-U.S. Holder" means a beneficial owner of shares of our Common Stock that, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is an individual, corporation, estate or trust other than:

an individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States;

a corporation, or any other organization taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, that is created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia;

an estate, the income of which is included in gross income for U.S. federal income tax purposes regardless of its source; or

a trust if (1) a U.S. court is able to exercise primary supervision over the trust's administration and one or more United States persons (as defined in the Code) have the authority to control all of the trust's substantial decisions or (2) the trust has a valid election in effect under applicable U.S. Treasury regulations to be treated as a United States person.

A modified definition of Non-U.S. Holder applies for U.S. federal estate tax purposes (as discussed below).

If an entity that is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds shares of our Common Stock, the tax treatment of persons treated as its partners for U.S. federal income tax purposes will generally depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Partnerships and

Table of Contents

other entities that are classified as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes that hold shares of our Common Stock and their investors are urged to consult their own tax advisors.

There can be no assurance that the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS") will not challenge one or more of the tax consequences described herein, and we have not obtained, nor do we intend to obtain, a ruling from the IRS or an opinion of counsel with respect to the U.S. federal income or estate tax consequences to a Non-U.S. Holder of the purchase, ownership or disposition of shares of our Common Stock.

THIS SUMMARY IS FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ONLY AND IS NOT INTENDED TO BE TAX ADVICE. PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS ARE URGED TO CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS CONCERNING THE U.S. FEDERAL INCOME AND ESTATE TAXATION, STATE, LOCAL AND NON-U.S. TAXATION AND OTHER TAX CONSEQUENCES TO THEM OF THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF SHARES OF OUR COMMON STOCK, AS WELL AS THE APPLICATION OF STATE, LOCAL AND NON-U.S. INCOME AND OTHER TAX LAWS.

**Distributions on shares of our Common Stock**

As discussed under "Dividend policy" above, we do not currently pay, and do not anticipate paying in the foreseeable future, cash dividends on shares of our Common Stock. In the event that we do make a distribution of cash or property with respect to shares of our Common Stock, any such distributions generally will constitute dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles, and will be subject to withholding as described in the next paragraph below. If a distribution exceeds our current or accumulated earnings and profits, the excess will be treated as a tax-free return of the Non-U.S. Holder's investment, up to such holder's adjusted tax basis in its shares of our Common Stock. Any remaining excess will be treated as capital gain, subject to the tax treatment described below in " Gain on sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of our shares of Common Stock". Any distribution described in this paragraph would also be subject to the discussion below in " Additional withholding and information reporting requirements for shares of our Common Stock held by or through non-U.S. entities".

Any dividends paid to a Non-U.S. Holder with respect to shares of our Common Stock generally will be subject to a 30% U.S. federal withholding tax unless such Non-U.S. Holder provides us or our agent, as the case may be, with an appropriate IRS Form W-8 (which may be required to be updated periodically), prior to the payment of dividends, such as:

IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E, as appropriate (or successor form), certifying, under penalties of perjury, that such Non-U.S. Holder is entitled to a reduction in withholding under an applicable income tax treaty; or

IRS Form W-8ECI (or successor form) certifying, under penalties of perjury, that a dividend paid on shares of our Common Stock is not subject to withholding tax because it is effectively connected with conduct of a trade or business in the United States of the Non-U.S. Holder (in which case such dividend generally will be subject to regular graduated U.S. federal income tax rates on a net income basis as described below)

The certification requirement described above also may require a Non-U.S. Holder that provides an IRS form or that claims treaty benefits to provide its U.S. taxpayer identification number. Special certification and other requirements apply in the case of certain Non-U.S. Holders that are intermediaries or pass-through entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Table of Contents

Each Non-U.S. Holder is urged to consult its own tax advisor about the specific methods for satisfying these requirements. A claim for exemption will not be valid if the person receiving the applicable form has actual knowledge or reason to know that the statements on the form are false.

If dividends are effectively connected with the conduct of a trade or business in the United States of the Non-U.S. Holder (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, are attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base maintained by such Non-U.S. Holder in the United States), the Non-U.S. Holder, although exempt from the withholding tax described above (provided that the certifications described above are satisfied), will generally be subject to U.S. federal income tax on such dividends on a net income basis in the same manner as if it were a resident of the United States. In addition, if such Non-U.S. Holder is taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, such Non-U.S. Holder may be subject to an additional "branch profits tax" equal to 30% of its effectively connected earnings and profits for the taxable year, unless an applicable income tax treaty provides otherwise.

If a Non-U.S. Holder is eligible for a reduced rate of U.S. federal withholding tax pursuant to an applicable income tax treaty, such holder may obtain a refund or credit of any excess amount withheld by timely filing an appropriate claim for refund with the IRS.

**Gain on sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of shares of our Common Stock**

Subject to the discussion below under "Additional withholding and information reporting requirements for shares of our Common Stock held by or through non-U.S. entities", in general, a Non-U.S. Holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax or withholding tax on any gain realized upon such holder's sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of shares of our Common Stock unless (i) such Non-U.S. Holder is an individual who is present in the United States for 183 days or more in the taxable year of disposition, and certain other conditions are met, (ii) we are or have been a "United States real property holding corporation," as defined in the Code (a "USRPHC"), at any time within the shorter of the five-year period preceding the disposition and the Non-U.S. Holder's holding period with respect to the applicable shares of our Common Stock (the "relevant period"), or (iii) such gain is effectively connected with the conduct by such Non-U.S. Holder of a trade or business in the United States (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, is attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base maintained by such Non-U.S. Holder in the United States).

If the first exception applies, the Non-U.S. Holder generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at a rate of 30% (unless an applicable income tax treaty provides otherwise) on the amount by which such Non-U.S. Holder's capital gains allocable to U.S. sources exceed capital losses allocable to U.S. sources during the taxable year of the disposition.

With respect to the second exception above, although there can be no assurance, we believe we are not, and we do not currently anticipate becoming, a USRPHC. However, because the determination of whether we are a USRPHC depends on the fair market value of our U.S. real property relative to the fair market value of other business assets, there can be no assurance that we are not currently or will not become a USRPHC in the future. Generally, a corporation is a USRPHC only if the fair market value of its "United States real property interests" (as defined in the Code) equals or exceeds 50% of the sum of the fair market value of its worldwide real property interests plus certain other assets used or held for use in a trade or business. Even if we are or become a USRPHC, a Non-U.S. Holder would not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of shares of our Common Stock by reason of our status as a USRPHC so long as (i) our Common Stock is regularly traded on an established securities market (within the meaning of Code Section 897(c)(3)) during the calendar year in which such

Table of Contents

sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of shares of our Common Stock occurs and (ii) such Non-U.S. Holder does not own and is not deemed to own (directly, indirectly or constructively) more than 5% of our Common Stock at any time during the relevant period. If we are a USRPHC and the requirements of (i) or (ii) are not met, gain on the disposition of shares of our Common Stock generally will be taxed in the same manner as gain that is effectively connected with the conduct of a U.S. trade or business, except that the "branch profits tax" will not apply. Prospective investors are urged to consult their own tax advisors regarding the possible consequences to them if we are, or were to become, a USRPHC.

If the third exception applies, the Non-U.S. Holder generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on a net income basis with respect to such gain in the same manner as if such holder were a resident of the United States, unless otherwise provided in an applicable income tax treaty, and a Non-U.S. Holder that is a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes may also be subject to a "branch profits tax" on its effectively connected earnings and profits at a rate of 30%, unless an applicable income tax treaty provides otherwise.

**Additional withholding and information reporting requirements for shares of our Common Stock held by or through non-U.S. entities**

Legislation enacted in March 2010 and related Treasury guidance (commonly referred to as "FATCA") generally will impose a U.S. federal withholding tax of 30% on payments to certain non-U.S. entities (including certain intermediaries), including dividends on and the gross proceeds from a sale or other disposition of shares of our Common Stock, unless such persons comply with a complicated U.S. information reporting, disclosure and certification regime. This new regime requires, among other things, a broad class of persons to enter into agreements with the IRS to obtain, disclose and report information about their investors and account holders. An intergovernmental agreement between the United States and an applicable foreign country may, however, modify these requirements and these requirements are different from and in addition to the certification requirements described elsewhere in this discussion. The FATCA withholding rules currently apply to dividend payments on our Common Stock and will apply to payments of gross proceeds from the sale or other disposition of shares of our Common Stock occurring after December 31, 2016. Prospective investors should consult their own tax advisors regarding the possible impact of these rules on their investment in our Common Stock, and the entities through which they hold our Common Stock, including, without limitation, the process and deadlines for meeting the applicable requirements to prevent the imposition of this 30% withholding tax under FATCA.

**Backup withholding and information reporting**

We must report annually to the IRS and to each Non-U.S. Holder the gross amount of the distributions on shares of our Common Stock paid to such holder and the tax withheld, if any, with respect to such distributions. These information reporting requirements apply even if withholding was not required. Subject to the discussion above under " Additional withholding and information reporting requirements for shares of our Common Stock held by or through non-U.S. entities", a Non-U.S. Holder may have to comply with specific certification procedures to establish that the holder is not a United States person (as defined in the Code) or otherwise establish an exemption in order to avoid backup withholding at the applicable rate with respect to dividends on our Common Stock. Dividends paid to Non-U.S. Holders subject to the U.S. federal withholding tax, as described above in " Distributions on shares of our Common Stock", generally will be exempt from U.S. backup withholding.

Information reporting and backup withholding will generally apply to the payment of the proceeds of a disposition of shares of our Common Stock by a Non-U.S. Holder effected by or through the U.S. office of

Table of Contents

any broker, U.S. or non-U.S., unless the holder certifies that it is not a United States person (as defined in the Code) and satisfies certain other requirements, or otherwise establishes an exemption. For information reporting purposes, dispositions effected through a non-U.S. office of a broker with substantial U.S. ownership or operations generally will be treated in a manner similar to dispositions effected through a U.S. office of a broker, and dispositions otherwise effected through a non-U.S. office generally will not be subject to information reporting. Generally, backup withholding will not apply to a payment of disposition proceeds to a Non-U.S. Holder where the transaction is effected through a non-U.S. office of a U.S. broker or non-U.S. office of a non-U.S. broker. Prospective investors are urged to consult their own tax advisors regarding the application of the information reporting and backup withholding rules to them.

Copies of information returns may be made available to the tax authorities of the country in which the Non-U.S. Holder resides or is incorporated under the provisions of a specific treaty or agreement.

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules from a payment made to a Non-U.S. Holder can be refunded or credited against such Non-U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, provided that an appropriate claim is timely filed with the IRS.

**Federal estate tax**

Shares of our Common Stock held (or treated as held) by an individual who is not a U.S. citizen or resident (as specifically determined for U.S. federal estate tax purposes) at the time of such individual's death will be included in such individual's gross estate for U.S. federal estate tax purposes, unless an applicable estate tax treaty provides otherwise.

Table of Contents

## **Certain ERISA considerations**

The following discussion is a summary of certain considerations associated with the purchase of our Common Stock by (i) employee benefit plans that are subject to Title I of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended ("ERISA"), (ii) plans, individual retirement accounts and other arrangements that are subject to Section 4975 of the Code or provisions under any federal, state, local, non-U.S. or other laws or regulations that are similar to such provisions of ERISA or the Code, and (iii) entities whose underlying assets are considered to include 'plan assets' of any such plan, account or arrangement (each, an "ERISA Plan").

Section 406 of ERISA and Section 4975 of the Code prohibit ERISA Plans from engaging in specified transactions involving 'plan assets' with persons or entities who are 'parties in interest,' within the meaning of ERISA, or "disqualified persons," within the meaning of Section 4975 of the Code, unless an exemption is available. A party in interest or disqualified person who engaged in a non-exempt prohibited transaction may be subject to excise taxes and other penalties and liabilities under ERISA and the Code. In addition, the fiduciary of the ERISA Plan that engaged in such a non-exempt prohibited transaction may be subject to penalties and liabilities under ERISA and the Code. A prohibited transaction within the meaning of ERISA and the Code may result if our Common Stock is acquired by an ERISA Plan to which we or an underwriter is a party in interest and such acquisition is not entitled to an applicable exemption, of which there are many.

The foregoing discussion is general in nature and is not intended to be all-inclusive. Due to the complexity of these rules and the penalties that may be imposed upon persons involved in non-exempt prohibited transactions, it is particularly important that fiduciaries, or other persons considering purchasing our Common Stock on behalf of, or with the assets of, any ERISA Plan, consult with their counsel regarding the matters described herein.

Table of Contents**Underwriting**

The selling stockholders are offering the shares of Common Stock described in this prospectus through a number of underwriters. J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Goldman, Sachs & Co., Barclays Capital Inc., Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, Guggenheim Securities, LLC and Macquarie Capital (USA) Inc. are acting as joint book-running managers of the offering and J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. are acting as representatives of the underwriters. We and the selling stockholders have entered into an underwriting agreement with the underwriters. Subject to the terms and conditions of the underwriting agreement, the selling stockholders have agreed to sell to the underwriters, and each underwriter has severally agreed to purchase, at the public offering price less the underwriting discounts and commissions set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, the number of shares of Common Stock listed next to its name in the following table:

Name	Number of shares
J.P. Morgan Securities LLC	
Goldman, Sachs & Co.	
Barclays Capital Inc.	
Deutsche Bank Securities Inc.	
Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated	
Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC	
Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC	
Wells Fargo Securities, LLC	
Guggenheim Securities, LLC	
Macquarie Capital (USA) Inc.	
Nomura Securities International, Inc.	
Piper Jaffray & Co.	
Raymond James & Associates, Inc.	
Stephens Inc.	
SunTrust Robinson Humphrey, Inc.	
Samuel A. Ramirez & Company, Inc.	
Telsey Advisory Group LLC	
The Williams Capital Group, L.P	
<b>Total</b>	<b>16,000,000</b>

The underwriters are committed to purchase all the shares of common stock offered by the selling stockholders if they purchase any shares. The underwriting agreement also provides that if an underwriter defaults, the purchase commitments of non-defaulting underwriters may also be increased or the offering may be terminated.

The underwriters propose to offer the shares of common stock directly to the public at the public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus and to certain dealers at that price less a concession not in excess of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share. After the public offering of the shares, the offering price and other selling terms may be changed by the underwriters. Sales of shares made outside of the United States may be made by affiliates of the underwriters. The offering of the shares by the underwriters is subject to

Table of Contents

receipt and acceptance and subject to the underwriters' right to reject any order in whole or in part. The underwriters have informed us that they do not intend to confirm sales to discretionary accounts that exceed 5% of the total number of shares offered by them.

The underwriters have an option to purchase up to 2,400,000 additional shares of Common Stock from the selling stockholders. The underwriters have 30 days from the date of this prospectus to exercise this option to purchase additional shares. If any shares are purchased with this option, the underwriters will purchase shares in approximately the same proportion as shown in the table above. If any additional shares of Common Stock are purchased, the underwriters will offer the additional shares on the same terms as those on which the shares are being offered.

*Underwriting discounts and commissions*

The underwriting fee is equal to the public offering price per share of Common Stock less the amount paid by the underwriters to us and the selling stockholders per share of Common Stock. The underwriting fee is \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share. The following table shows the per share and total underwriting discounts and commissions to be paid to the underwriters by the selling stockholders assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares from the selling stockholders.

	Paid by the selling stockholders	
	Without option exercise	With full option exercise
Per Share	\$ _____	\$ _____
Total	\$ _____	\$ _____

We estimate that the total expenses of this offering, including registration, filing and listing fees, printing fees and legal and accounting expenses, but excluding the underwriting discounts and commissions, will be approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_. We have agreed to reimburse the underwriters for expenses related to the clearing of this offering with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. ("FINRA") in an amount up to \$35,000. Such reimbursement is deemed to be underwriting compensation by FINRA.

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available on the web sites maintained by one or more underwriters, or selling group members, if any, participating in the offering. The underwriters may agree to allocate a number of shares to underwriters and selling group members for sale to their online brokerage account holders. Internet distributions will be allocated by the representatives to underwriters and selling group members that may make Internet distributions on the same basis as other allocations.

*Lock-up*

We have agreed that we will not (i) offer, pledge, announce the intention to sell, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or otherwise dispose of, directly or indirectly, or file with the SEC a registration statement under the Securities Act relating to, any shares of our Common Stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for any shares of our Common Stock, or publicly disclose the intention to make any offer, sale, pledge, disposition or filing (other than filings on Form S-8 relating to our employee benefit plans), or (ii) enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers all or a portion of the economic consequences associated with the ownership of any shares of Common Stock or any such other securities (regardless of whether any of these transactions are to be settled by the delivery of shares of Common Stock or such other securities, in cash or otherwise), in each case without the prior written

Table of Contents

consent of J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co., for a period of 90 days after the date of this prospectus, subject to certain exceptions. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if (1) during the last 17 days of the 90 day restricted period, we issue an earnings release or announce material news or a material event relating to our Company; or (2) prior to the expiration of the 90 day restricted period, we announce that we will release earnings results during the 16-day period beginning on the last day of the 90 day period, the restrictions described above shall continue to apply until the expiration of the 18-day period beginning on the issuance of the earnings release or the announcement of the material news or material event unless J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. waive, in writing, such extension.

Our directors, executive officers and significant equity holders (including affiliates of the Sponsors) have entered into lock-up agreements with the underwriters prior to the commencement of this offering pursuant to which each of these persons or entities, with limited exceptions, for a period of 90 days after the date of this prospectus, may not, without the prior written consent of J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co., (1) offer, pledge, announce the intention to sell, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase, or otherwise transfer or dispose of, directly or indirectly, any shares of our Common Stock or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for our Common Stock (including, without limitation, Common Stock or such other securities which may be deemed to be beneficially owned by such directors, executive officers, managers and members in accordance with the rules and regulations of the SEC and securities which may be issued upon exercise of a stock option or warrant) or (2) enter into any swap or other agreement that transfers, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of the Common Stock or such other securities, whether any such transaction described in clause (1) or (2) above is to be settled by delivery of Common Stock or such other securities, in cash or otherwise, or (3) make any demand for or exercise any right with respect to the registration of any shares of our Common Stock or any security convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for our Common Stock. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if (1) during the last 17 days of the 90 day restricted period, we issue an earnings release or announce material news or a material event relating to our Company; or (2) prior to the expiration of the 90 day restricted period, we announce that we will release earnings results during the 16-day period beginning on the last day of the 90 day period, the restrictions described above shall continue to apply until the expiration of the 18-day period beginning on the issuance of the earnings release or the announcement of the material news or material event unless J.P. Morgan Securities LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. waive, in writing, such extension.

We and the selling shareholders have agreed to indemnify the several underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

***Listing***

Our shares of Common Stock are listed on The NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "MIK".

***Price stabilization and short positions***

In connection with this offering, the underwriters may engage in stabilizing transactions, which involves making bids for, purchasing and selling shares of Common Stock in the open market for the purpose of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of the Common Stock while this offering is in progress. These stabilizing transactions may include making short sales of the Common Stock, which involves the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of shares of Common Stock than they are required to purchase in this offering, and purchasing shares of Common Stock on the open market to cover positions created by short sales. Short sales may be "covered" shorts, which are short positions in an amount not greater than the underwriters' option to purchase additional shares, or may be "naked" shorts,

Table of Contents

which are short positions in excess of that amount. The underwriters may close out any covered short position either by exercising their option to purchase additional shares, in whole or in part, or by purchasing shares in the open market. In making this determination, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of shares available for purchase in the open market compared to the price at which the underwriters may purchase shares through the option to purchase additional shares. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the Common Stock in the open market that could adversely affect investors who purchase in this offering. To the extent that the underwriters create a naked short position, they will purchase shares in the open market to cover the position.

The underwriters have advised us that, pursuant to Regulation M of the Securities Act of 1933, they may also engage in other activities that stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the price of the Common Stock, including the imposition of penalty bids. This means that if the representatives of the underwriters purchase Common Stock in the open market in stabilizing transactions or to cover short sales, the representatives can require the underwriters that sold those shares as part of this offering to repay the underwriting discount received by them.

These activities may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of the Common Stock or preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of the Common Stock, and, as a result, the price of the Common Stock may be higher than the price that otherwise might exist in the open market. If the underwriters commence these activities, they may discontinue them at any time. The underwriters may carry out these transactions on The NASDAQ Stock Market, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise.

### **Notice to prospective investors in United Kingdom**

This document is only being distributed to and is only directed at (i) persons who are outside the United Kingdom or (ii) to investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005 (the "Order") or (iii) high net worth entities, and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated, falling with Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order (all such persons together being referred to as "relevant persons"). The securities are only available to, and any invitation, offer or agreement to subscribe, purchase or otherwise acquire such securities will be engaged in only with, relevant persons. Any person who is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this document or any of its contents.

### **European Economic Area**

In relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a "Relevant Member State"), from and including the date on which the European Union Prospectus Directive (the "EU Prospectus Directive") was implemented in that Relevant Member State (the "Relevant Implementation Date") an offer of securities described in this prospectus may not be made to the public in that Relevant Member State prior to the publication of a prospectus in relation to the shares which has been approved by the competent authority in that Relevant Member State or, where appropriate, approved in another Relevant Member State and notified to the competent authority in that Relevant Member State, all in accordance with the EU Prospectus Directive, except that, with effect from and including the Relevant Implementation Date, an offer of securities described in this prospectus may be made to the public in that Relevant Member State at any time:

to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined under the EU Prospectus Directive;

Table of Contents

to fewer than 100 or, if the Relevant Member State has implemented the relevant provision of the 2010 PD Amending Directive, 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the EU Prospectus Directive); or

in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the EU Prospectus Directive, provided that no such offer of securities described in this prospectus shall result in a requirement for the publication by us of a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the EU Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an "offer of securities to the public" in relation to any securities in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the securities to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for the securities, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measure implementing the EU Prospectus Directive in that Member State. The expression "EU Prospectus Directive" means Directive 2003/71/EC (and any amendments thereto, including the 2010 PD Amending Directive, to the extent implemented in the Relevant Member State) and includes any relevant implementing measure in each Relevant Member State, and the expression "2010 PD Amending Directive" means Directive 2010/73/EU.

Certain of the underwriters and their affiliates have provided in the past to us and our affiliates and may provide from time to time in the future certain commercial banking, financial advisory, investment banking and other services for us and such affiliates in the ordinary course of their business, for which they have received and may continue to receive customary fees and commissions. In addition, from time to time, certain of the underwriters and their affiliates may effect transactions for their own account or the account of customers, and hold on behalf of themselves or their customers, long or short positions in our debt or equity securities or loans, and may do so in the future.

### **Notice to prospective investors in Hong Kong**

The shares may not be offered or sold by means of any document other than (i) in circumstances which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong), or (ii) to "professional investors" within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder, or (iii) in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a "prospectus" within the meaning of the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong), and no advertisement, invitation or document relating to the shares may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public in Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to shares which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to "professional investors" within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder.

### **Notice to prospective investors in Singapore**

This prospectus has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the shares may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the shares be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the "SFA"), (ii) to a relevant person, or any

Table of Contents

person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions, specified in Section 275 of the SFA or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA.

Where the shares are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 by a relevant person which is: (a) a corporation (which is not an accredited investor) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or (b) a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary is an accredited investor, shares, debentures and units of shares and debentures of that corporation or the beneficiaries' rights and interest in that trust shall not be transferable for six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the shares under Section 275 except: (1) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person, or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions, specified in Section 275 of the SFA; (2) where no consideration is given for the transfer; or (3) by operation of law.

**Notice to prospective investors in Japan**

The securities have not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan (the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law) and each underwriter has agreed that it will not offer or sell any securities, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (which term as used herein means any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to a resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with, the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law and any other applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines of Japan.

**Notice to prospective investors in Switzerland**

The shares may not be publicly offered in Switzerland and will not be listed on the SIX Swiss Exchange ("SIX") or on any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. This document has been prepared without regard to the disclosure standards for issuance prospectuses under art. 652a or art. 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations or the disclosure standards for listing prospectuses under art. 27 ff. of the SIX Listing Rules or the listing rules of any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. Neither this document nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the shares or the offering may be publicly distributed or otherwise made publicly available in Switzerland.

Neither this document nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the offering, the Company, the shares have been or will be filed with or approved by any Swiss regulatory authority. In particular, this document will not be filed with, and the offer of shares will not be supervised by, the Swiss Financial Market Supervisory Authority FINMA (FINMA), and the offer of shares has not been and will not be authorized under the Swiss Federal Act on Collective Investment Schemes ("CISA"). The investor protection afforded to acquirers of interests in collective investment schemes under the CISA does not extend to acquirers of shares.

**Notice to prospective investors in the Dubai international financial centre**

This prospectus relates to an Exempt Offer in accordance with the Offered Securities Rules of the Dubai Financial Services Authority ("DFSA"). This prospectus is intended for distribution only to persons of a type specified in the Offered Securities Rules of the DFSA. It must not be delivered to, or relied on by, any

Table of Contents

other person. The DFSA has no responsibility for reviewing or verifying any documents in connection with Exempt Offers. The DFSA has not approved this prospectus nor taken steps to verify the information set forth herein and has no responsibility for the prospectus. The shares to which this prospectus relates may be illiquid and/or subject to restrictions on their resale. Prospective purchasers of the shares offered should conduct their own due diligence on the shares. If you do not understand the contents of this prospectus you should consult an authorized financial advisor.

**Other relationships**

The underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities.

Certain of the underwriters and their affiliates have provided in the past to us and our affiliates and may provide from time to time in the future certain commercial banking, financial advisory, investment banking and other services for us and such affiliates in the ordinary course of their business, for which they have received and may continue to receive customary fees and commissions. Each of the underwriters in this offering acted as underwriters in connection with our initial public offering. Affiliates of Barclays Capital Inc., Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Wells Fargo Securities, LLC and Goldman, Sachs & Co. serve in various capacities under our Restated Term Loan Facility and our Restated Revolving Credit Facility and affiliates of certain of the underwriters may also be lenders thereunder. Certain of the underwriters also acted as initial purchasers of our 2018 Senior Notes, our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and our Holdco Notes. In addition, from time to time, certain of the underwriters and their affiliates may effect transactions for their own account or the account of customers, and hold on behalf of themselves or their customers, long or short positions in our debt or equity securities or loans, and may do so in the future.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments of the issuer. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

Table of Contents

## Legal matters

The validity of the issuance of the shares of Common Stock to be sold in this offering will be passed upon for us by Ropes & Gray LLP, Boston, Massachusetts. Ropes & Gray LLP and some of its attorneys are members in RGIP, LP, which is an investor in certain investment funds advised by or affiliated with Bain Capital Partners, LLC and The Blackstone Group L.P. RGIP, LP has an interest in an entity that is a selling stockholder in this offering. RGIP, LP's indirect ownership of our Common Stock does not exceed 0.04% of our Common Stock. Simpson Thacher & Bartlett LLP, New York, New York will act as counsel to the underwriters.

## Experts

The Consolidated Financial Statements of The Michaels Companies, Inc. as of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013 and for each of the three years in the period ended February 1, 2014, appearing in this prospectus and registration statement have been audited by Ernst & Young LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon appearing elsewhere herein, and are included in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

## Where you can find more information

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-1 under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of our Common Stock being offered by this prospectus. This prospectus, which forms a part of the registration statement, does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement. For further information with respect to us and the shares of our Common Stock, reference is made to the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules filed as a part thereof. Statements contained in this prospectus as to the contents of any contract or other document are not necessarily complete. We are subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act and, in accordance therewith, we file reports and other information with the SEC. The registration statement, such reports and other information can be inspected and copied at the Public Reference Room of the SEC located at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Copies of such materials, including copies of all or any portion of the registration statement, can be obtained from the Public Reference Room of the SEC at prescribed rates. You can call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 to obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room. Such materials may also be accessed electronically by means of the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

We are subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. These periodic reports and other information are available for inspection and copying at the public reference room and website of the SEC referred to above. You may access our reports and amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act with the SEC free of charge on the SEC's website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) and on our website at [www.michaels.com](http://www.michaels.com) as soon as reasonably practicable after such information is electronically filed with, or furnished to, the SEC. Our website and the information contained therein or connected thereto is not a part of this prospectus or the registration statement of which it forms a part.

You may obtain a copy of any of our filings, at no cost, by writing or telephoning us at:

The Michaels Companies, Inc.  
8000 Bent Branch Drive  
Irving, TX 75063  
(972) 409-1300  
Attn: Corporate Secretary

Table of Contents

**Index to consolidated financial statements and supplementary data**

	<b>Page</b>
<b>Audited financial statements for the fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012</b>	
<u>Report of independent registered public accounting firm</u>	<u>F-2</u>
<u>Consolidated balance sheets at February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013</u>	<u>F-3</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012</u>	<u>F-4</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of cash flows for the fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012</u>	<u>F-5</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of stockholders' deficit for the fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012</u>	<u>F-6</u>
<u>Notes to consolidated financial statements for the fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012</u>	<u>F-7</u>
<b>Unaudited financial statements for the 13 and 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013</b>	
<u>Consolidated statements of comprehensive income for the 13 and 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 (unaudited)</u>	<u>F-46</u>
<u>Consolidated balance sheets at November 1, 2014, February 1, 2014 and November 2 2013 (unaudited)</u>	<u>F-47</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of cash flows for the 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 (unaudited)</u>	<u>F-48</u>
<u>Notes to consolidated financial statements</u>	<u>F-49</u>

Table of Contents

**Report of independent registered public accounting firm**

The Board of Directors and Stockholders  
The Michaels Companies, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (the Company) as of February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013, and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income, stockholders' deficit, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended February 1, 2014. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of The Michaels Companies, Inc. at February 1, 2014 and February 2, 2013 and the consolidated results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended February 1, 2014, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ Ernst & Young LLP  
Dallas, TX  
May 1, 2014, except as to Note 17, which is as of June 9, 2014

Table of Contents

## The Michaels Companies, Inc.

### Consolidated balance sheets

(In millions except share data)	February 1, 2014	February 2, 2013
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Current assets:</b>		
Cash and equivalents	\$ 239	\$ 56
Merchandise inventories	901	862
Prepaid expenses and other	95	86
Deferred income taxes	39	37
Income tax receivables	2	3
Total current assets	1,276	1,044
<b>Property and equipment, at cost</b>	<b>1,600</b>	<b>1,502</b>
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	(1,242)	(1,164)
Property and equipment, net	358	338
<b>Goodwill</b>	<b>94</b>	<b>94</b>
<b>Debt issuance costs, net of accumulated amortization of \$56 at February 1, 2014, and \$54 at February 2, 2013</b>	<b>52</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Deferred income taxes</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Other assets</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>
Total non-current assets	177	173
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,811</b>	<b>\$ 1,555</b>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</b>		
<b>Current liabilities:</b>		
Accounts payable	\$ 368	\$ 263
Accrued liabilities and other	409	367
Share-based compensation liability	16	35
Current portion of long-term debt	2	150
Dividend payable	1	4
Deferred income taxes	30	37
Income taxes payable	826	856
Total current liabilities	826	856
<b>Long-term debt</b>	<b>3,678</b>	<b>2,891</b>
<b>Deferred income taxes</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Share-based compensation liability</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Other long-term liabilities</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>83</b>
Total long-term liabilities	3,767	3,003
Total liabilities	4,593	3,859
<b>Commitments and contingencies</b>		
<b>Stockholders' deficit:</b>	12	12

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Common stock, \$0.06775 par value, 350,000,000.0 shares authorized; 175,024,037.2 shares issued and outstanding at February 1, 2014 and 174,780,137.1 shares issued and outstanding at February 2, 2013

Additional paid-in-capital	94	37
Accumulated deficit	(2,888)	(2,359)
Accumulated other comprehensive income		6
Total stockholders' deficit	(2,782)	(2,304)
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	\$ 1,811	\$ 1,555

*See accompanying Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.*

F-3

---

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Consolidated statements of comprehensive income**

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Net sales</b>	\$ 4,570	\$ 4,408	\$ 4,210
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	2,748	2,643	2,532
<b>Gross profit</b>	1,822	1,765	1,678
Selling, general, and administrative expense	1,170	1,132	1,090
Share-based compensation	23	15	33
Impairment of intangible assets		8	
Related party expenses	14	13	13
Store pre-opening costs	5	5	4
<b>Operating income</b>	610	592	538
Interest expense	215	245	254
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	14	33	18
Other (income) and expense, net	2	(1)	9
<b>Income before income taxes</b>	379	315	257
Provision for income taxes	136	115	100
<b>Net income</b>	\$ 243	\$ 200	\$ 157
Other comprehensive (loss) income, net of tax:			
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(6)		(1)
<b>Comprehensive income</b>	\$ 237	\$ 200	\$ 156
<b>Earnings per share:</b>			
Basic	\$ 1.39	\$ 1.14	\$ 0.90
Diluted	\$ 1.36	\$ 1.12	\$ 0.89
Pro forma basic net income per share (unaudited)	\$ 1.27		
Pro forma diluted net income per share (unaudited)	\$ 1.25		
Weighted average shares basic	174.8	174.7	174.6
Weighted average shares diluted	178.7	178.2	176.7

*See accompanying Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.*

Table of Contents

## The Michaels Companies, Inc.

### Consolidated statements of cash flows

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Operating activities:</b>			
Net income	\$ 243	\$ 200	\$ 157
Adjustments:			
Depreciation and amortization	106	97	101
Share-based compensation	34	21	41
Debt issuance costs amortization	10	14	17
Accretion of premium/(discount) of long-term debt	(1)		35
Change in fair value of contingent consideration			(4)
Change in fair value of interest rate cap			5
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	14	33	18
Impairment of intangible assets		8	
Changes in assets and liabilities:			
Merchandise inventories	(38)	(21)	(19)
Prepaid expenses and other	(8)	(7)	(7)
Deferred income taxes	(4)	(2)	21
Accounts payable	102	(35)	38
Accrued interest	23	(10)	
Accrued liabilities and other	(28)	(16)	5
Income taxes	(7)	18	(9)
Other long-term liabilities	3	(1)	10
Net cash provided by operating activities	449	299	409
<b>Investing activities:</b>			
Additions to property and equipment	(112)	(124)	(109)
Net cash used in investing activities	(112)	(124)	(109)
<b>Financing activities:</b>			
Issuance of PIK Notes due 2018	800		
Borrowings on Restated Term Loan Credit Facility		1,640	
Repayments on senior secured term loan facility	(12)	(1,996)	(50)
Borrowings on asset-based revolving credit facility	389	322	145
Payments on asset-based revolving credit facility	(390)	(321)	(145)
Issuance of senior notes due 2018		213	
Repurchase of subordinated discount notes due 2016		(315)	(170)
Repurchase of senior subordinated notes due 2016	(403)		(7)
Issuance of senior subordinated notes due 2020	260		
Payment of debt issuance and refinancing costs	(21)	(25)	(7)
Payment of dividends	(766)		
Proceeds from stock options exercised	5		
Repurchase of Common stock	(8)		
Payment of capital leases	(3)	(3)	
Change in cash overdraft	(5)	(5)	(14)
Net cash used in financing activities	(154)	(490)	(248)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and equivalents	183	(315)	52
Cash and equivalents at beginning of period	56	371	319

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

<b>Cash and equivalents at end of period</b>	\$	239	\$	56	\$	371
--	----	-----	----	----	----	-----

**Supplemental Cash Flow Information:**

Cash paid for interest	\$	183	\$	239	\$	201
------------------------	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----

Cash paid for income taxes	\$	145	\$	108	\$	86
----------------------------	----	-----	----	-----	----	----

*See accompanying Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.*

F-5

---

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Consolidated statements of stockholders' deficit**  
**For the three years ended February 1, 2014**

(in millions, except share data)	Number of Common shares	Common stock	Additional paid-in capital	Accumulated deficit	Accumulated other comprehensive income	Total
<b>Balance at January 29, 2011</b>	174,787,698.6	\$ 12	\$ 43	\$ (2,716)	\$ 7	\$ (2,654)
Net income				157		157
Foreign currency translation and other					(1)	(1)
Reclass to share-based compensation liability			(4)			(4)
Exercise of stock options	202,330.2					
Share-based compensation			1			1
Repurchase of stock	(628,815.9)					
Issuance of stock	199,233.4					
<b>Balance at January 28, 2012</b>	174,560,446.3	12	40	(2,559)	6	(2,501)
Net income				200		200
Exercise of stock options	635,381.1					
Share-based compensation			(3)			(3)
Repurchase of stock	(614,923.7)					
Issuance of stock	199,233.4					
<b>Balance at February 2, 2013</b>	174,780,137.1	12	37	(2,359)	6	(2,304)
Net income				243		243
Dividend declared				(769)		(769)
Foreign currency translation and other			(5)		(6)	(11)
Reclass from share-based compensation liability			49			49
Exercise of stock options	4,006,411.6		5			5
Share-based compensation			13			13
Repurchase of stock	(3,777,244.9)		(5)	(3)		(8)
Issuance of stock	14,733.4					
<b>Balance at February 1, 2014</b>	175,024,037.2	\$ 12	\$ 94	\$ (2,888)		\$ (2,782)

*See accompanying Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.*

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Notes to consolidated financial statements**

**Note 1. Summary of significant accounting policies**

*Description of business*

The Michaels Companies, Inc. owns and operates a chain of specialty retail stores in 49 states and Canada featuring arts, crafts, framing, floral, home décor and seasonal merchandise for the hobbyist and do-it-yourself home decorator. Our wholly-owned subsidiary, Aaron Brothers, Inc., operates a chain of framing and art supply stores located in nine states. All expressions of the "Company", "us", "we", "our", and all similar expressions are references to The Michaels Companies, Inc. and our consolidated, wholly-owned subsidiaries, unless otherwise expressly stated or the context otherwise requires. Disclosures for the Michaels Stores, Inc. have been included to meet the disclosure requirements of Rule 12-04 of Regulation S-X as further discussed in Note 16.

*Fiscal year*

We report on the basis of a 52-week or 53-week fiscal year, which ends on the Saturday closest to January 31. References to fiscal year mean the year in which that fiscal year began. Fiscal 2013 ended on February 1, 2014, fiscal 2012 ended on February 2, 2013, and fiscal 2011 ended on January 28, 2012. Fiscal 2013 contained 52 weeks, while fiscal 2012 contained 53 weeks and fiscal 2011 contained 52 weeks.

*Consolidation*

Our Consolidated Financial Statements include the accounts of The Michaels Companies, Inc. and all wholly-owned subsidiaries. All intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated.

*Estimates*

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the Consolidated Financial Statements and accompanying notes. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

*Foreign currency translation*

The functional currency of our Canadian operations is the Canadian dollar. Translation adjustments result from translating our Canadian subsidiary's financial statements into U.S. dollars. Balance sheet accounts are translated at exchange rates in effect at the balance sheet date. Income statement accounts are translated at average exchange rates during the year. Translation adjustments are recorded as a component of Accumulated other comprehensive income in our Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Deficit. Transaction gains and losses are recorded as a part of Other (income) and expense, net in our Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income. The cumulative translation adjustment in fiscal 2013 was less than \$1 million, net of deferred taxes of less than \$1 million, in fiscal 2012, the cumulative translation adjustment was \$7 million, net of deferred taxes of \$1 million and in fiscal 2011 was \$6 million, net of deferred taxes of \$2 million. In fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012, and fiscal 2011, we recorded net transaction losses of \$2 million, net transaction gains of \$1 million and net transaction losses of \$4 million, respectively, related to foreign currency exchange rates.

Table of Contents

***Cash and equivalents***

Cash and equivalents are comprised of cash, money market mutual funds, and short-term interest bearing securities with original maturities of three months or less and \$25 million and \$22 million of credit card clearing accounts as of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, respectively. Cash equivalents are carried at cost, which approximates fair value. We record interest income earned from our cash and equivalents as a component of Other (income) and expense, net, in our financial statements. In fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, we had less than \$1 million of interest income.

***Merchandise inventories***

Merchandise inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, with cost determined using a weighted average method. Cost is calculated based upon the purchase price of an item at the time it is received by us, and also includes the cost of warehousing, handling, purchasing, and importing, as well as inbound and outbound transportation, partially offset by vendor allowances. This net inventory cost is recognized through cost of sales when the inventory is sold. It is impractical for us to assign specific allocated overhead costs and vendor allowances to individual units of inventory. As such, to match net inventory costs against the related revenues, we estimate the net inventory costs to be deferred and recognized each period as the inventory is sold.

Vendor allowances, which primarily represent volume rebates and cooperative advertising funds, are recorded as a reduction to the cost of the merchandise inventories and a subsequent reduction in cost of sales when the inventory is sold. We generally earn vendor allowances as a percentage of certain merchandise purchases with no minimum purchase requirements. Typically, our vendor allowance programs extend for a period of 12 months. We recognized vendor allowances of \$102 million, or 2.2% of Net sales, in fiscal 2013, \$110 million, or 2.5% of Net sales, in fiscal 2012, and \$115 million, or 2.7% of Net sales, in fiscal 2011. During the three fiscal years ended February 1, 2014, the number of vendors from which vendor allowances were received ranged from approximately 620 to 660.

We utilize perpetual inventory records to value inventory in our stores. Physical inventory counts are performed in a significant number of stores during each fiscal quarter by a third party inventory counting service, with substantially all stores open longer than one year subject to at least one count each fiscal year. We adjust our perpetual records based on the results of the physical counts. We maintain a provision for estimated shrinkage based on the actual historical results of our physical inventories. We compare our estimates to the actual results of the physical inventory counts as they are taken and adjust the shrink estimates accordingly.

We routinely identify merchandise that requires some price reduction to accelerate sales of the product. The need for this reduction is generally attributable to clearance of seasonal merchandise or product that is being displaced from its assigned location in the store to make room for new merchandise. Additional SKUs that are candidates for repricing are identified using our perpetual inventory data. In each case, the appropriate repricing is determined at our corporate support center. Price changes are transmitted electronically to the store and instructions are provided to our stores regarding product placement, signage, and display to ensure the product is effectively cleared.

We also evaluate our merchandise to ensure that the expected net realizable value of the merchandise held at the end of a fiscal period exceeds cost. In the event that the expected net realizable value is less than cost, we reduce the value of that inventory accordingly.

Table of Contents***Property and equipment***

Property and equipment is recorded at cost. Depreciation is recorded on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful lives of the assets. Amortization of property under capital leases is on a straight-line basis over the lease term and is included in depreciation expense. We expense repairs and maintenance costs as incurred. We capitalize and depreciate significant renewals or betterments that substantially extend the life of the asset. Useful lives are generally estimated as follows (in years):

Buildings	30
Leasehold improvements	10*
Fixtures and equipment	8
Computer equipment	5
Software for mobile applications	1 - 3

\* We amortize leasehold improvements over the lesser of the useful life of the asset or the remaining lease term of the underlying facility.

***Capitalized software costs***

We capitalize certain costs related to the acquisition and development of internal use software that is expected to benefit future periods. These costs are being amortized on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life, which is generally five years. As of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, we had unamortized capitalized software costs of approximately \$91 million and \$86 million, respectively. These amounts are included in Property and equipment, net on the Consolidated Balance Sheets. Amortization of capitalized software costs totaled approximately \$46 million, \$36 million and \$30 million in fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011, respectively.

***Goodwill***

Under the provisions of Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 350, *Intangibles Goodwill and Other*, we review goodwill for impairment each year in the fourth quarter, or more frequently if required. In conducting our impairment review, we elect to first perform a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is more likely than not (that is, a likelihood of more than 50 percent) the fair values of our reporting unit are less than its carrying value. Factors used in our qualitative assessment include, but are not limited to, macroeconomic conditions, industry and market conditions, cost factors, overall financial performance, company and reporting unit specific events, and the margin between the fair value and carrying value in recent valuations.

If, after assessing the totality of events or circumstances such as those described above, we determine that it is more likely than not that the fair value of our reporting unit is greater than its carrying amount, no further action is required. If we determine that it is more likely than not that the fair value of our reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, we will compare the reporting unit's carrying value to its estimated fair value, determined through estimated discounted future cash flows and market-based methodologies. If the carrying value exceeds the estimated fair value, we determine the fair value of all assets and liabilities of the reporting unit, including the implied fair value of goodwill. If the carrying value of goodwill exceeds the implied fair value, we recognize an impairment charge equal to the difference. There are assumptions and estimates underlying the determination of fair value and any resulting impairment loss. Significant changes in these assumptions, or another estimate using different, but still reasonable, assumptions could produce different results. During fiscal 2012, we recognized an impairment charge of \$1 million for our online scrapbooking business ("ScrapHD") goodwill. See Note 10 to our Consolidated Financial Statement for further information. During fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2011, there was no impairment charge taken on our goodwill.

Table of Contents***Impairment of long-lived assets***

We evaluate long-lived assets, other than goodwill and assets with indefinite lives, for indicators of impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate their carrying amounts may not be recoverable. Our evaluation compares the carrying value of the assets with their estimated future undiscounted cash flows. If it is determined that an impairment loss has occurred, the loss would be recognized during that period based on the estimated fair value of the assets. Our impairment analysis contains management assumptions about key variables including sales, growth rate, gross margin, payroll and other controllable expenses. If actual results differ from these estimates, we may be exposed to additional impairment losses that may be material. During fiscal 2013, we recognized an impairment charge on existing stores of \$2 million. During fiscal 2012 and 2011, the impairment charge was minimal.

***Reserve for closed facilities***

We maintain a reserve for future rental obligations, carrying costs and other closing costs related to closed facilities, primarily closed and relocated stores. In accordance with ASC 420, *Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations*, we recognize exit costs for any store closures at the time the store is closed. Such costs are recorded within the Cost of sales and occupancy expense line item on our Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

The cost of closing a store or facility is recorded at the estimated fair value of expected cash flows which we calculate as the lesser of the present value of future rental obligations remaining under the lease (less estimated sublease rental income) or the lease termination fee. The determination of the reserves is dependent on our ability to make reasonable estimates of costs to be incurred post-closure and of rental income to be received from subleases. In planning our store closures, we generally try to time our exits as close to the lease termination date as possible to minimize any remaining lease obligation.

The following is a detail of account activity related to closed facilities:

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
Balance at beginning of fiscal year	\$ 8	\$ 9	\$ 5
Additions charged to costs and expenses	5	5	7
Payment of rental obligations and other	(8)	(6)	(3)
Balance at end of fiscal year	\$ 5	\$ 8	\$ 9

***Insurance liabilities***

We have insurance coverage for losses in excess of self-insurance limits for medical liability, general liability and workers' compensation claims. Health care reserves are based on actual claims experience and an estimate of claims incurred but not reported. Reserves for general liability and workers' compensation are determined through the use of actuarial studies. Due to the significant judgments and estimates utilized for determining these reserves, they are subject to a high degree of variability. In the event our insurance carriers are unable to pay claims submitted to them, we would record a liability for such estimated payments we expect to incur.

***Revenue recognition***

Revenue from sales of our merchandise is recognized when the customer takes possession of the merchandise. Revenue is presented net of point-of-sale coupons, discounts, and sales taxes collected. Sales

Table of Contents

related to custom framing are recognized when the order is picked up by the customer. We deferred 9 days of custom framing revenue at the end of fiscal 2013, 10 days of custom framing revenue at the end of fiscal 2012 and 13 days of custom framing revenue at the end of fiscal 2011. Our deferral is an estimate based on the number of days for manufacturing, in-store assembly and customer pick-up. As of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, our deferred framing revenue was approximately \$9 million and \$8 million, respectively.

We allow for merchandise to be returned under most circumstances up to 60 days after purchase and provide a reserve for estimated returns. We use historical customer return behavior to estimate our reserve requirements. As of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, our sales returns reserve was approximately \$3 million.

We record a gift card liability on the date we issue the gift card to the customer. We record revenue and reduce the gift card liability as the customer redeems the gift card. The deferred revenue associated with outstanding gift cards increased \$3 million from \$33 million at February 2, 2013, to \$36 million at February 1, 2014. We escheat the value of unredeemed gift cards where required by law. Any remaining liabilities not subject to escheatment are evaluated to determine whether the likelihood of the gift card being redeemed is remote (gift card breakage). We recognize gift card breakage as revenue by applying our estimate of the rate of gift card breakage over the period of estimated performance. Our estimates of the gift card breakage rate are applied to the estimated amount of gift cards that are expected to go unused, that are not subject to escheatment and are based on customers' historical redemption rates and patterns, which may not be indicative of future redemption rates and patterns. We recognized revenue of approximately \$3 million in fiscal 2013, \$3 million in fiscal 2012 and \$1 million in fiscal 2011 related to such gift card balances.

*Costs of sales and occupancy expense*

Costs of sales are included in merchandise inventories and expensed as the merchandise is sold. Included in our costs of sales are the following:

purchase price of merchandise, net of vendor allowances and rebates

inbound freight, inspection costs, duties and import agent commissions

warehousing, handling, transportation (including internal transfer costs such as distribution center-to-store freight costs) purchasing and receiving costs

share-based compensation costs for those employees involved in preparing inventory for sale

Included in our occupancy expenses are the following costs which are recognized as period costs as described below:

store expenses such as rent, insurance, taxes, common area maintenance, utilities, repairs and maintenance

amortization of store buildings and leasehold improvements

store closure costs

store remodel costs

We record rent expense ratably over the term of the lease beginning with the date we take possession of or control the physical access to the premises. We record leasehold improvement reimbursements as a

Table of Contents

liability and ratably adjust the liability as a reduction to rent expense over the lease term beginning with the date we take possession of or control the physical access to the premises. At times, we receive landlord reimbursements for leasehold improvements made during the lease term, which we record as a liability and ratably adjust as a reduction to rent expense over the remaining lease term.

***Selling, general, and administrative expense***

Included in our Selling, general, and administrative expense are store personnel costs, store operating expenses, advertising expenses, store depreciation expense and corporate overhead costs.

Advertising costs are expensed in the period in which the advertising first occurs. Our cooperative advertising allowances are accounted for as a reduction in the purchase price of merchandise since an obligation to advertise a specific product does not exist in our cooperative advertising arrangements.

Advertising expenses were \$181 million, \$179 million and \$183 million for fiscal 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

***Store pre-opening costs***

We expense all start-up activity costs as incurred. Rent expense incurred prior to the store opening is recorded in Cost of sales and occupancy expense on our Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

***Income taxes***

We record income tax expense using the liability method for taxes and are subject to income tax in many jurisdictions, including the U.S., various states and localities, and Canada. A current tax liability or asset is recognized for the estimated taxes payable or refundable on the tax returns for the current year and a deferred tax liability or asset is recognized for the estimated future tax effects attributable to temporary differences and carryforwards. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted income tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect of a change in tax rates is recognized as income or expense in the period that includes the enactment date. A valuation allowance is recorded to reduce the carrying amounts of deferred tax assets unless it is more likely than not those assets will be realized. In evaluating our ability to realize our deferred tax asset, we considered the following sources of future taxable income:

future reversals of existing taxable temporary differences

future taxable income, exclusive of reversing temporary differences and carryforwards

taxable income in prior carryback years

tax-planning strategies

Our evaluation regarding whether a valuation allowance is required or should be adjusted also considers, among other things, the nature, frequency and severity of recent losses, forecasts of future profitability and the duration of statutory carryforward periods. Our forecast of future profitability represents our best estimate of these future events. After conducting this assessment, the valuation allowance recorded, net of federal benefit, against our deferred tax assets was \$9 million and \$10 million as of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, respectively. If actual results differ from estimated results or if we adjust these assumptions in the future, we may need to adjust our deferred tax assets or liabilities, which could impact our effective tax rate.

The amount of income taxes we pay is subject to ongoing audits in the taxing jurisdictions in which we operate. During these audits, the taxing authorities may challenge items on our tax returns. Because the

Table of Contents

tax matters challenged by tax authorities are typically complex, the ultimate outcome of these challenges is uncertain. We recognize tax benefits for uncertain positions only to the extent that we believe it is more likely than not that the tax position will be sustained. Our future results may include favorable or unfavorable adjustments to our unrecognized tax benefits due to closure of income tax audits, new regulatory or judicial pronouncements, or other relevant events. As a result, our effective tax rate may fluctuate significantly on a quarterly and annual basis.

***Share-based compensation***

ASC 718, *Stock Compensation* ("ASC 718"), requires all share-based payments to employees, including grants of employee stock options, to be recognized in the financial statements. During the first two quarters of fiscal 2011 and the last quarter of fiscal 2013, the Company measured share-based compensation expense for new awards using the grant date fair value accounting guidance of ASC 718. During the last two quarters of fiscal 2011, all of fiscal 2012, and the first three quarters of fiscal 2013, the Company determined its employee stock options should be recorded under the liability accounting guidance of ASC 718. As such, we measured share-based compensation based on either the grant date fair value of the equity awards, the fair value of our option awards at the end of the period or at the fair value as most recently determined. Expense for unvested options and stock awards is recognized ratably over the requisite service period. We estimate the fair value of stock option awards using a Black-Scholes option value model.

We report excess tax benefits as a cash inflow in the financing section of our Statements of Cash Flows and would record a tax deficiency, if any, as a cash outflow from operating activities. For fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012, and fiscal 2011, the excess tax benefits were less than \$1 million.

***Recent accounting pronouncements***

In July 2013, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2013-11, "*Presentation of an Unrecognized Tax Benefit When a Net Operating Loss Carryforward, a Similar Tax Loss or a Tax Credit Carryforward Exists.*" ASU 2013-11 requires unrecognized tax benefits to be presented as a decrease in a net operating loss, similar tax loss or tax credit carryforward if certain criteria are met. ASU 2013-11, which is prospective, is effective for reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2013, with earlier adoption permitted. Beginning with the fourth quarter of fiscal year 2012, the Company has reported unrecognized tax benefits consistent with ASU No. 2013-11.

**Note 2. The Michaels Companies and its subsidiaries**

In July 2013, the Company's corporate structure was reorganized into a holding company structure (the "Reorganization"). The Michaels Companies, Inc. ("Parent"), Michaels FinCo Holdings, LLC ("FinCo Holdings"), Michaels FinCo, Inc. ("FinCo Inc.") and Michaels Funding, Inc. ("Holdings") and Michaels Stores MergerCo, Inc. ("MergerCo") were formed in connection with the Reorganization and (i) MergerCo was merged with and into Michaels Stores, Inc. ("MSI") with MSI being the surviving corporation; (ii) each share of MSI common stock was converted into the right to receive one share of the Company's common stock, subject to the same vesting conditions, if any, as applied to the share so converted, and each such share of MSI common stock was cancelled and retired and ceased to exist; and (iii) each option to purchase one or more shares of common stock of MSI was assumed by the Company and converted into an option to purchase an equivalent number of shares of common stock of the Company with the remaining terms of each such option remaining unchanged, except as was necessary to reflect the Reorganization. Approximately 174.8 million shares of MSI common stock were converted into the Company's common stock. MSI shares were then cancelled and retired. MSI then issued 100 shares of stock with a \$0.10 par

Table of Contents

value to Holdings. As a result of the Reorganization, FinCo Holdings is wholly owned by the Company. FinCo Inc. and Holdings are wholly owned by FinCo Holdings. MSI is wholly owned by Holdings. As a result of the Merger and the Reorganization, Michaels Holdings, LLC., an entity controlled by the affiliates of two investment firms, Bain Capital Partners, LLC and The Blackstone Group L.P. (collectively, together with their applicable affiliates, the "Sponsors") acquired substantially all of the common stock of the Company, which is not publicly traded.

Subsequent to the Reorganization, on July 29, 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. issued \$800 million aggregate principal amount of 7.50%/8.25% PIK Toggle Notes due 2018 ("PIK Notes"). The PIK Notes were issued in a private transaction. Interest payments on the PIK Notes are due February 1 and August 1 of each year until maturity. The first two interest payments and the last interest payment are required to be paid entirely in cash. All other interest payments must be made in cash, except that all or a portion of the interest on the PIK Notes may be paid by increasing the principal amount of the outstanding PIK Notes or by issuing additional PIK Notes depending on the amount of cash dividends that can be paid by the Company under our credit agreements governing our Restated Revolving Credit Facility and Restated Term Loan Facility (the "Senior Secured Credit Facilities"), the terms of the indentures governing our outstanding notes and the terms of our other indebtedness outstanding at the time. The proceeds from the debt issuance were approximately \$783 million, after deducting the initial purchasers' discount and estimated fees and expenses. FinCo Holdings distributed the net proceeds to the Company and the proceeds were used to fund a cash dividend to the Company's equity and equity-award holders and pay related fees and expenses.

The PIK Notes are senior unsecured obligations of FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. The indenture governing the PIK Notes contains restrictive covenants that apply to FinCo Holdings and its restricted subsidiaries, including MSI, Holdings and their subsidiaries, and a breach of such covenants would cause FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. to be in default under the indenture governing the PIK Notes.

**Note 3. Earnings per share**

The Company utilizes ASC 260, *Earnings Per Share*. Basic earnings per share is computed by dividing income available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted earnings per share is computed by dividing income available to common stockholders by the weighted average shares outstanding plus dilutive potential shares from the exercise of stock options and restricted shares. Common equivalent shares are excluded from the computation if their effect is anti-dilutive.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

The following table sets forth the calculation of basic and diluted earnings per share for the years ended February 1, 2014, February 2, 2013 and January 28, 2012 as follows:

(in millions, except per share data)	Fiscal Year		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Numerator:</b>			
Net income	\$ 243	\$ 200	\$ 157
Income related to vested restricted shares	1		1
Income available to common stockholders	\$ 242	\$ 200	\$ 156
<b>Denominator:</b>			
Denominator for basic earnings per common share weighted-average shares	174.8	174.7	174.6
<b>Effect of dilutive securities:</b>			
Employee stock options	3.9	3.3	1.7
Restricted shares		0.2	0.4
Denominator for dilutive earnings per common share	178.7	178.2	176.7
Basic earnings per common share	\$ 1.39	\$ 1.14	\$ 0.90
Diluted earnings per common share	\$ 1.36	\$ 1.12	\$ 0.89

### **Note 4. Detail of certain balance sheet accounts**

(In millions)	February 1, 2014	February 2, 2013
<b>Property and equipment:</b>		
Land and buildings	\$ 2	\$ 2
Fixtures and equipment	897	863
Capitalized software	299	264
Leasehold improvements	402	373
	\$ 1,600	\$ 1,502
<b>Accrued liabilities and other:</b>		
Salaries, bonuses and other payroll-related costs	\$ 103	\$ 94
Insurance liabilities	71	71
Accrued interest	56	33
Taxes, other than income and payroll	53	51
Gift certificate and gift card liability	36	33
Other	90	85
	\$ 409	\$ 367

Table of Contents**Note 5. Debt**

Debt for The Michaels Companies, Inc. and Michaels Stores, Inc. consisted of the following at the end of fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2012:

(In millions)	Interest rate	The Michaels Companies, Inc.		Michaels Stores, Inc.	
		February 1, 2014	February 2, 2013	February 1, 2014	February 2, 2013
Senior secured term loan	Variable	\$ 1,628	\$ 1,640	\$ 1,628	\$ 1,640
Senior notes	7.750%	1,006	1,007	1,006	1,007
Senior subordinated notes	5.875%	260		260	
Senior subordinated notes	11.375%		393		393
Asset-based revolving credit facility	Variable		1		1
PIK Notes	7.50% / 8.25%	800			
<b>Total debt</b>		<b>3,694</b>	<b>3,041</b>	<b>2,894</b>	<b>3,041</b>
Less current portion		16	150	16	150
<b>Long-term debt</b>		<b>\$ 3,678</b>	<b>\$ 2,891</b>	<b>\$ 2,878</b>	<b>\$ 2,891</b>

The Company and MSI capitalized \$108 million and \$91 million of costs, respectively, net of write-offs, related to our issuance of various debt instruments. We amortize these deferred financing costs using the straight-line method, which produces results materially consistent with the effective interest method, over the lives of the respective debt agreements (which range from five to ten years) and record the amortization to interest expense. Our expected amortization expense for The Michaels Companies, Inc. and Michaels Stores, Inc. pertaining to the deferred financing costs for each of the next five fiscal years and thereafter are as follows:

Fiscal year (In millions)	The Michaels Companies, Inc. Amount	Michaels Stores, Inc. Amount
2014	\$ 12	\$ 9
2015	11	8
2016	11	8
2017	11	7
2018	6	4
Thereafter	1	1
<b>Total amortization expense</b>	<b>\$ 52</b>	<b>\$ 37</b>

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

The aggregate amount of scheduled maturities for The Michaels Companies, Inc. and Michaels Stores, Inc. debt for the next five years and thereafter is as follows:

Fiscal year (In millions)	The Michaels Companies, Inc. Amount	Michaels Stores, Inc. Amount
2014	\$ 16	\$ 16
2015	16	16
2016	17	17
2017	17	17
2018	3,362	2,562
Thereafter	260	260
<b>Total debt payments</b>	<b>3,688</b>	<b>2,888</b>
Plus unrealized premium amortization	9	9
Less unrealized discount accretion	(3)	(3)
<b>Total debt balance as of February 1, 2014</b>	<b>\$ 3,694</b>	<b>\$ 2,894</b>

As of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, the weighted average interest rate of the Current portion of long-term debt was 3.75% and 10.69%, respectively.

### ***Restated Term Loan Credit Facility***

On January 28, 2013, MSI entered into an amended and restated credit agreement (the "Amended Credit Agreement") with Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch ("Deutsche Bank") and other lenders to amend various terms of its Senior Secured Term Loan Facility, as amended. The Amended Credit Agreement, together with related security, guarantee and other agreements, is referred to as the "Restated Term Loan Credit Facility."

The Restated Term Loan Credit Facility provides for senior secured financing of \$1,640 million. MSI has the right under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility to request additional term loans in an aggregate amount of up to (a) \$500 million and (b) at MSI's option, an amount of term loans so long as MSI's Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement) is no more than 3.25 to 1.00 on a pro forma basis as of the last day of the most recently-ended four fiscal quarter-period for which internal financial statements are available. The lenders under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility will not be under any obligation to provide any such additional term loans, and the incurrence of any additional term loans is subject to customary conditions precedent.

Borrowings under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility bear interest at a rate per annum equal to, at MSI's option, either (a) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (1) the prime rate of Deutsche Bank, (2) the federal funds effective rate plus 1/2 of 1% and (3) London Interbank Offered Rate ("LIBOR"), subject to certain adjustments, plus 1%, or (b) LIBOR, subject to certain adjustments, in each case plus an applicable margin. The applicable margin is 1.75% with respect to base rate borrowings and 2.75% with respect to LIBOR borrowings. In addition, the applicable margin is subject to a 0.25% decrease based on MSI's Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio.

The Restated Term Loan Credit Facility requires MSI to prepay outstanding term loans with (x) 100% of the net proceeds of any debt issued by MSI or its subsidiaries (with exceptions for certain debt permitted to be incurred under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility) and (y) 50% (which percentage will be reduced to 25% if MSI's Consolidated Total Leverage Ratio (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement) is less than

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

6.00:1.00 and will be reduced to 0% if MSI's Consolidated Total Leverage Ratio is less than 5.00:1.00 of MSI's annual Excess Cash Flow (as defined in the Amended Credit Agreement).

MSI must offer to prepay outstanding term loans at 100% of the principal amount to be prepaid, plus accrued and unpaid interest, with the proceeds of certain asset sales or casualty events under certain circumstances. MSI may voluntarily prepay outstanding loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility at any time without premium or penalty other than customary "breakage" costs with respect to LIBOR loans.

MSI is required to make scheduled quarterly payments, each equal to 0.25% of the original principal amount of the term loans, subject to adjustments relating to the incurrence of additional term loans under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, for the first six years and three quarters, with the balance paid on January 28, 2020 (the "Maturity Date"); provided, however, that the Maturity Date of the term loans will automatically become July 28, 2018, if as of July 28, 2018, (i) the Consolidated Secured Debt Ratio is greater than 3.25:1.00 and (ii) the then aggregate outstanding principal amount of MSI's Senior Notes (and certain refinancings thereof requiring principal payments prior to April 28, 2020) exceeds \$250 million.

All obligations under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility are guaranteed, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally by each of MSI's direct and indirect wholly-owned domestic subsidiaries that guarantee obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. All obligations under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, and the guarantees of those obligations, are secured, subject to certain exceptions, by substantially all of the assets of MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors (as defined below), including:

a first-priority pledge of our capital stock and all of the capital stock held by us and the Subsidiary Guarantors (which pledge, in the case of any foreign subsidiary, is limited to 65% of the voting stock of such foreign subsidiary and 100% of the non-voting stock of such subsidiary);

a first-priority security interest in, and mortgages on, substantially all other tangible and intangible assets of MSI and each Subsidiary Guarantor, including substantially all of our and our subsidiaries' owned real property and equipment, but excluding, among other things, the collateral described in the following bullet point; and

a second-priority security interest in personal property consisting of inventory and related accounts, cash, deposit accounts, all payments received by MSI or the Subsidiary Guarantors from credit card clearinghouses and processors or otherwise in respect of all credit card charges and debit card charges for sales of inventory by MSI and the Subsidiary Guarantors, and certain related assets and proceeds of the foregoing.

The Restated Term Loan Facility contains a number of negative covenants that are substantially similar to, but more restrictive in certain respects than, those governing the 7<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>% Senior Notes maturing on November 1, 2018 ("2018 Senior Notes"), and the 5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes due December 15, 2020 ("2020 Senior Subordinated Notes"), as well as certain other customary representations and warranties, affirmative and negative covenants, and events of default. As of February 1, 2014, MSI was in compliance with all covenants.

In accordance with ASC 470, *Debt* ("ASC 470"), in fiscal 2012, we recorded \$12 million of refinancing costs related to the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility. MSI recorded a loss on early extinguishment of debt of approximately \$6 million to write off debt issuance costs associated with the senior secured term loan facility, with the remaining \$9 million of unamortized debt issuance costs being amortized over the revised life of the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility through July 28, 2018. In addition, we capitalized \$5 million

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

in debt issuance costs associated with the execution of the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility that is being amortized as interest expense over the life of the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility.

#### *7<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>% Senior Notes due 2018*

On October 21, 2010, we issued \$800 million aggregate principal amount of 7<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>% Senior Notes that mature on November 1, 2018, at a discounted price of 99.262% of face value, resulting in an effective interest rate of 7<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>%. Interest is payable semi-annually in arrears on each May 1 and November 1, commencing on May 1, 2011.

On September 27, 2012, we issued an additional \$200 million aggregate principal amount (the "Additional Senior Notes" and, together with the 2018 Senior Notes, the "Senior Notes") of our Senior Notes under the Indenture, dated as of October 21, 2010 (the "2018 Senior Indenture"), by and among the Company, the guarantors party thereto ("Guarantors") and Law Debenture Trust Company of New York, as trustee ("Trustee"), as amended on the date of such issuance by a supplemental indenture, dated as of September 27, 2012, by and among the Company, the Guarantors and the Trustee. The Additional Senior Notes were issued at a premium of 106.25% of face value, resulting in an effective interest rate of 6<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>%. The Additional Senior Notes form a single class with the 2018 Senior Notes previously issued under the 2018 Senior Indenture and have terms that are identical to the previously issued 2018 Senior Notes, except that interest on the Additional Senior Notes accrues from and including May 1, 2012, and the Additional Senior Notes are subject to a Registration Rights Agreement.

The Senior Notes are guaranteed, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally, on an unsecured senior basis, by each of our subsidiaries that guarantee indebtedness under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities. The Senior Notes and the guarantees thereof are our and the guarantors' unsecured senior obligations and (i) rank senior in right of payment to all of our and the guarantors' existing and future debt and other obligations that are, by their terms, expressly subordinated in right of payment to the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, as defined and described below; (ii) rank equally in right of payment to all of our and the guarantors' existing and future debt and other obligations that are not, by their terms, expressly subordinated in right of payment to the Senior Notes; (iii) are effectively subordinated in right of payment to all of our and the guarantors' existing and future secured debt (including obligations under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities), to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt; and (iv) are structurally subordinated to all obligations of our subsidiaries that are not guarantors of the Senior Notes.

At any time prior to November 1, 2014, we may redeem all or a part of the Senior Notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the Senior Notes redeemed plus the Applicable Premium (as defined in the 2018 Senior Indenture) and accrued and unpaid interest and Additional Interest (as defined in the 2018 Senior Indenture), if any, to the date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date. On and after November 1, 2014, the Company may redeem the Senior Notes, in whole or in part, upon notice, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount of the Senior Notes to be redeemed) set forth below, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon and Additional Interest, if any, to the applicable date of redemption if redeemed during the twelve-month period beginning on November 1 of each of the years indicated below:

<b>Year</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
2014	103.875%
2015	101.938%
2016 and thereafter	100.000%

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Upon a change in control we are required to offer to purchase all of the Senior Notes at a price in cash equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest.

The 2018 Senior Indenture contains covenants limiting, among other things, the Company's ability and the ability of the Company's restricted subsidiaries to:

incur additional debt

pay dividends or distributions on the Company's capital stock or repurchase the Company's capital stock, subject to certain exceptions, including dividends, distributions and repurchases up to an amount in excess of (i) \$75 million plus (ii) a basket that builds based on 50% of the Company's Consolidated Net Income (as defined in the 2018 Senior Indenture) and certain other amounts, in each case, to the extent such payment capacity is not applied as otherwise permitted under the 2018 Senior Indenture and subject to certain conditions.

issue stock of subsidiaries

make certain investments

create liens on the Company's assets to secure debt

enter into transactions with affiliates

merge or consolidate with another company

sell or otherwise transfer assets

The 2018 Senior Indenture also provides for events of default, which, if certain of them occur, would permit the trustee under the 2018 Senior Indenture or holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the then outstanding Senior Notes to declare the principal, premium, if any, interest and any other monetary obligations on all the then outstanding Senior Notes to be due and payable immediately.

In accordance with ASC 470, we are amortizing \$20 million in debt issuance costs, including \$4 million capitalized in fiscal 2012, as interest expense over the life of the Senior Notes.

### **7.50%/8.25% PIK Toggle Notes**

On July 29, 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. issued \$800 million aggregate principal amount of 7.50%/8.25% PIK Toggle Notes due 2018. The PIK Notes were issued in a private transaction. Interest payments on the PIK Notes are due February 1 and August 1 of each year until maturity. The first two interest payments and the last interest payment are required to be paid entirely in cash. All other interest payments must be made in cash, except that all or a portion of the interest on the PIK Notes may be paid by increasing the principal amount of the outstanding PIK Notes or by issuing additional PIK Notes depending on the amount of cash dividends that can be paid by Michaels Stores, Inc. under the credit agreements governing our Senior Secured Credit Facilities, the terms of the indentures governing our outstanding notes and the terms of its other indebtedness outstanding at the time. The proceeds from the debt issuance were approximately \$783 million, after deducting the debt issuance fees and expenses. FinCo Holdings distributed the net proceeds to the Company, and the proceeds were used to fund a cash dividend, distribution and other payment to the Company's equity and equity-award holders and pay related fees and expenses.

The PIK Notes are senior unsecured obligations of FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. The PIK Notes are not guaranteed by MSI, Holdings or any of their subsidiaries, but the indenture governing the PIK Notes



## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

contains restrictive covenants that apply to FinCo Holdings and its restricted subsidiaries, including MSI, Holdings and their subsidiaries, and a breach of such covenants would cause FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc. to be in default under the indenture governing the PIK Notes.

On and after August 1, 2014, the Company may redeem all or part of the PIK Notes, upon notice, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount of the 7.50%/8.25% PIK Toggle Notes to be redeemed) set forth below, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to the applicable date of redemption if redeemed during the twelve-month period beginning on August 1 of each of the years indicated below.

<b>Year</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
2014	102.000%
2015	101.000%
2016 and thereafter	100.000%

### *11<sup>3</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2016*

On October 31, 2006, we issued \$400 million in principal amount of 11<sup>3</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes due November 1, 2016 (the "2016 Senior Subordinated Notes"). Interest was payable semi-annually in arrears on each May 1 and November 1, commencing on May 1, 2007.

On January 28, 2013, we delivered to the holders of our outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes an irrevocable notice of redemption of \$137 million in aggregate principal amount of 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. On February 27, 2013, we redeemed the \$137 million of 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price equal to 103.792%. In accordance with ASC 470, we recorded a loss on early extinguishment of debt of approximately \$7 million related to the redemption of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes. The \$7 million loss is comprised of a \$5 million redemption premium and \$2 million to write off related debt issuance costs.

On December 19, 2013, we issued an irrevocable notice of redemption to the holders of our remaining outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes, deposited the proceeds of the offering of our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes with the trustee under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture and instructed the trustee to (a) redeem the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes on January 21, 2014, and (b) discharge our obligations under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture. We redeemed \$256 million of 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price equal 101.896%, or a total of \$261 million, and recorded refinancing costs of \$7 million.

### *5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes due 2020*

On December 19, 2013, we issued \$260 million in principal amount of 5<sup>7</sup>/<sub>8</sub>% Senior Subordinated Notes that mature December 15, 2020. Interest is payable semi-annually in arrears on each June 15 and December 15, commencing on June 15, 2014. We used the net proceeds of these notes to redeem the outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes, to pay the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the applicable redemption date and to pay related fees and expenses. The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes are guaranteed, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally, on an unsecured senior subordinated basis, by each of the Company's subsidiaries that guarantee indebtedness under the Senior Secured Credit Facilities.

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the guarantees thereof are the Company's and the guarantors' unsecured senior subordinated obligations and (i) are subordinated in right of payment to all of the

Table of Contents

Company's and the guarantors' existing and future senior debt, including the Senior Secured Credit Facilities and the Senior Notes; (ii) rank equally in right of payment to all of the company's and the guarantors' future senior subordinated debt; (iii) are effectively subordinated to all of the Company's and the guarantors' existing and future secured debt (including the Senior Secured Credit Facilities) to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt; (iv) rank senior in right of payment to all of the Company's and the guarantors' existing and future debt and other obligations that are, by their terms, expressly subordinated in right of payment to the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes; and (v) are structurally subordinated to all obligations of the Company's subsidiaries that are not guarantors of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

At any time prior to December 15, 2016, the Company may redeem all or a part of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes redeemed plus a make-whole premium, as provided in the indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes (the "2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture"), and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date.

On and after December 15, 2016, the company may redeem all or part of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, upon notice, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to be redeemed) set forth below, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to the applicable date of redemption if redeemed during the twelve-month period beginning on December 15 of each of the years indicated below:

<b>Year</b>	<b>Percentage</b>
2016	102.938%
2017	101.469%
2018 and thereafter	100.000%

In addition, until December 15, 2016, the Company may, at its option, on one or more occasions redeem up to 40% of the aggregate principal amount of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes with the aggregate principal amount of 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to be redeemed (the "Equity Offering Redemption Amount") not to exceed an amount equal to the aggregate gross proceeds from one or more Equity Offerings (as defined in the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture), at a redemption price equal to 105.875% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to, but not including, the applicable date of redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date; provided that (i) each such redemption occurs within 120 days of the date of closing of each such Equity Offering; (ii) proceeds in an amount equal to or exceeding the applicable Equity Offering Redemption Amount shall be received by, or contributed to the capital of, the Company or any of its restricted subsidiaries and (iii) at least 50% of the sum of the aggregate principal amount of 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes originally issued under the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture and any 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes that are issued under the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture after the original issue date remains outstanding immediately after the occurrence of each such redemption.

Upon a change in control, we are required to offer to purchase all of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes at a price in cash equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount thereof, plus accrued and unpaid interest.

Table of Contents

The 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture contains restrictive covenants and events of default substantially similar to, but less restrictive in certain customary respects than those of the Senior Notes described above.

In accordance with ASC 470, we are amortizing \$8 million in debt issuance costs, including \$4 million capitalized in fiscal 2013, as interest expense over the life of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes.

***13% Subordinated Discount Notes due 2016***

On October 31, 2006, we issued \$469 million in principal amount at maturity of 13% Subordinated Discount Notes due on November 1, 2016, the ("Subordinated Discount Notes"). The Subordinated Discount Notes were guaranteed, jointly and severally, fully and unconditionally, on an unsecured subordinated basis, by each of our subsidiaries that guarantee indebtedness under our Senior Secured Credit Facilities.

During fiscal 2011, we completed open market repurchases of our outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes totaling \$163 million face value, or \$155 million accreted value. Pursuant to the terms of the repurchases, we agreed to pay the holders of the Subordinated Discount Notes face value plus a purchase premium. In accordance with ASC 470, we recorded a loss of \$18 million during fiscal 2011 related to the early extinguishment of the repurchased Subordinated Discount Notes. The \$18 million loss is comprised of \$11 million to recognize the unrealized interest accretion and the write off of related debt issuance costs, as well as \$7 million in purchase premiums.

Beginning on November 1, 2011, cash interest began accruing on the Subordinated Discount Notes and was payable semi-annually in arrears on each May 1 and November 1 (the first cash interest payment was May 1, 2012). On May 1, 2012, as required pursuant to the indenture ("Subordinated Discount Notes Indenture") governing our Subordinated Discount Notes, we redeemed \$127 million in aggregate principal amount of our Subordinated Discount Notes.

On November 1, 2012, we redeemed a portion of the Subordinated Discount Notes equal to the AHYDO Amount (as defined in the Subordinated Discount Notes Indenture) at a redemption price equal to 100% and the remaining outstanding Subordinated Discount Notes at a redemption price equal to 104.333%. In accordance with ASC 470, we recorded a loss on early extinguishment of debt of approximately \$11 million related to the redemption of our Subordinated Discount Notes. The \$11 million loss is comprised of an \$8 million redemption premium and \$3 million to write off related debt issuance costs.

***Restated Revolving Credit Facility***

On February 18, 2010, we entered into an agreement to amend and restate various terms of the then existing asset-based Revolving Credit Facility, dated as of October 31, 2006 (as so amended and restated, the "senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility"). On September 17, 2012, we entered into a second amended and restated credit agreement (the "Restated Credit Agreement") with Wells Fargo Bank, National Association ("Wells Fargo") and other lenders to amend various terms of our senior secured asset-based Revolving Credit Facility. The Restated Credit Agreement, together with related security, guarantee and other agreements, is referred to as the "Restated Revolving Credit Facility".

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides for senior secured financing of up to \$650 million, subject to a borrowing base, maturing on September 17, 2017 (the "ABL Maturity Date"). The borrowing base under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility equals the sum of (i) 90% of eligible credit card receivables and debit card receivables, plus (ii) 90% of the appraised net orderly liquidation value of eligible inventory, plus (iii) the lesser of (x) 90% of the appraised net orderly liquidation value of inventory

Table of Contents

supported by eligible letters of credit and (y) 90% of the face amount of eligible letters of credit supported by eligible letters of credit, minus (iv) certain reserves.

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility provides us with the right to request up to \$200 million of additional commitments under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. The lenders under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will not be under any obligation to provide any such additional commitments, and any increase in commitments is subject to customary conditions precedent. If we were to request any such additional commitments, and the existing lenders or new lenders were to agree to provide such commitments, the facility size could be increased to up to \$850 million, but our ability to borrow under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility would still be limited by the borrowing base.

Borrowings under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility bear interest at a rate per annum equal to, at our option, either (a) a base rate determined by reference to the highest of (1) the prime rate of Wells Fargo, (2) the federal funds effective rate plus 0.50% and (3) LIBOR subject to certain adjustments plus 1.00% or (b) LIBOR subject to certain adjustments, in each case plus an applicable margin. The initial applicable margin is (a) 0.75% for prime rate borrowings and 1.75% for LIBOR borrowings. The applicable margin is subject to adjustment each fiscal quarter based on the excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Same-day borrowings bear interest at the base rate plus the applicable margin.

We are required to pay a commitment fee on the unutilized commitments under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, which initially is 0.375% per annum. The commitment fee is subject to adjustment each fiscal quarter. If average daily excess availability is less than or equal to 50% of the total commitments, the commitment fee will be 0.25% per annum, and if average daily excess availability is greater than 50% of the total commitments, the commitment fee will be 0.375%. In addition, we must pay customary letter of credit fees and agency fees.

All obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility are unconditionally guaranteed, jointly and severally by the Company and all of our existing domestic material subsidiaries and are required to be guaranteed by certain of our future domestic wholly-owned material subsidiaries. All obligations under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, and the guarantees of those obligations, are secured, subject to certain exceptions, by substantially all of the assets of our and our material subsidiaries (the "Subsidiary Guarantors"), including:

a first-priority security interest in personal property consisting of inventory and related accounts, cash, deposit accounts, all payments received by us or the Subsidiary Guarantors from credit card clearinghouses and processors or otherwise in respect of all credit card charges and debit card charges for sales of inventory by us and the Subsidiary Guarantors, and certain related assets and proceeds of the foregoing;

a second-priority pledge of all of our capital stock and the capital stock held by us and the Subsidiary Guarantors (which pledge, in the case of the capital stock of any foreign subsidiary, is limited to 65% of the voting stock of such foreign subsidiary and 100% of the non-voting stock of such subsidiary); and

a second-priority security interest in, and mortgages on, substantially all other tangible and intangible assets of us and each Subsidiary Guarantor, including substantially all of our and our subsidiaries' owned real property and equipment.

Table of Contents

If, at any time, the aggregate amount of outstanding loans, unreimbursed letter of credit drawings and undrawn letters of credit under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility exceeds the lesser of (i) the commitment amount and (ii) the borrowing base (the "Loan Cap"), we will be required to repay outstanding loans and cash collateralize letters of credit in an aggregate amount equal to such excess, with no reduction of the commitment amount. If excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility is less than (i) 12.5% of the Loan Cap for five consecutive business days, or (ii) \$65 million at any time, or if certain events of default have occurred, we will be required to repay outstanding loans and cash collateralize letters of credit with the cash we are required to deposit daily in a collection account maintained with the agent under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility. Excess availability under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility means the lesser of the Loan Cap minus the outstanding credit extensions. We may voluntarily reduce the unutilized portion of the commitment amount and repay outstanding loans at any time without premium or penalty other than customary breakage costs with respect to LIBOR loans. There is no scheduled amortization under the Restated Revolving Credit Facility; the principal amount of the loans outstanding is due and payable in full on the ABL Maturity Date.

The covenants limiting dividends and other restricted payments, investments, loans, advances and acquisitions, and prepayments or redemptions of indebtedness, each permit the restricted actions in an unlimited amount, subject to the satisfaction of certain payment conditions, principally that we must meet certain specified excess availability requirements and minimum consolidated fixed charge coverage ratios, to be tested on a pro forma and 6 months projected basis. Adjusted EBITDA is used in the calculation of the consolidated fixed charge coverage ratios. The Restated Revolving Credit Facility also contains certain customary affirmative covenants and events of default.

From the time when we have excess availability less than the greater of (a) 10% of the Loan Cap and (b) \$50 million, until the time when we have excess availability greater than the greater of (a) 10% of the Loan Cap and (b) \$50 million for 30 consecutive days, the Restated Revolving Credit Facility will require us to maintain a consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio of at least 1.0 to 1.0. The Restated Revolving Credit Facility also contains certain customary representations and warranties, affirmative covenants and provisions relating to events of default (including change of control and cross-default to material indebtedness).

The Restated Revolving Credit Facility contains a number of covenants that, among other things and subject to certain exceptions, restrict our ability and the ability of our restricted subsidiaries to:

- incur or guarantee additional indebtedness
- pay dividends on our capital stock or redeem, repurchase or retire our capital stock
- make investments, loans, advances and acquisitions
- create restrictions on the payment of dividends or other amounts to us from our restricted subsidiaries
- engage in transactions with our affiliates
- sell assets, including capital stock of our subsidiaries
- prepay or redeem indebtedness
- consolidate or merge
- create liens

In accordance with ASC 470, we recorded a loss on early extinguishment of debt in fiscal 2012 of approximately \$2 million to write off debt issuance costs related to the Restated Revolving Credit Facility, with the remaining \$7 million of unamortized debt issuance costs being amortized over the revised life. In addition, we capitalized \$4 million of debt issuance costs in fiscal 2012 associated with the execution of the

Table of Contents

Restated Revolving Credit Facility. These debt issuance costs are being amortized as interest expense over the life of the Restated Revolving Credit Facility.

As of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, the borrowing base was \$650 million and \$650 million, respectively, of which we had availability of \$589 million and \$587 million, respectively. Borrowing capacity is available for letters of credit and borrowings on same-day notice. Outstanding letters of credit as of February 1, 2014, totaled \$63 million, of which \$61 million relate to standby letters of credit.

**Note 6. Other comprehensive (loss) income**

Accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income, net of tax, is reflected in the Consolidated Balance Sheets as follows:

(In millions)	Foreign currency translation & other	
Balance at January 29, 2011	\$	7
Foreign currency translation adjustment		(1)
Balance at January 28, 2012		6
Foreign currency translation adjustment		
Balance at February 2, 2013		6
Foreign currency translation adjustment		(6)
Balance at February 1, 2014	\$	

**Note 7. Income taxes**

Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes.

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

Significant components of deferred tax assets and liabilities as of the respective year-end balance sheets for The Michaels Companies, Inc. and Michaels Stores, Inc. are as follows:

The Michaels Companies, Inc. (In millions)	Deferred tax asset (liability)					
	February 1, 2014		February 2, 2013			
	Current	Noncurrent	Current	Noncurrent		
Net operating loss, general business credit, foreign tax credit and alternative minimum tax credit carryforwards	\$	\$	9	\$	10	
Merchandise inventories		(10)		(12)		
Accrued expenses	11	1	13	1		
State income taxes	(1)	4	(1)	3		
Vacation accrual	8		7			
Share-based compensation		22		29		
Deferred rent	2	15	2	14		
Other deferred tax assets	7	4	4	3		
State valuation allowance		(9)		(10)		
Bonus accrual		2		3		
Gift cards	5		4			
Property and equipment		(25)		(29)		
Foreign taxes			1			
Workers' compensation	19		19			
Cancellation of debt income		(40)		(39)		
Original issue discount related to cancellation of debt income-		41		41		
Other deferred tax (liabilities) assets	(3)	2	(4)	2		
	\$	38	\$	26	\$	33
				\$	28	
Net deferred tax assets		\$	64	\$	61	

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

Michaels Stores, Inc. (In millions)	Deferred tax asset (liability)					
	February 1, 2014		February 2, 2013			
	Current	Noncurrent	Current	Noncurrent		
Net operating loss, general business credit, foreign tax credit and alternative minimum tax credit carryforwards	\$	\$	9	\$	\$	10
Merchandise inventories		(10)		(12)		
Accrued expenses	11	1	13	1		
State income taxes	(1)	4	(1)	3		
Vacation accrual	8		7			
Share-based compensation		22		29		
Deferred rent	2	15	2	14		
Other deferred tax assets	7	4	4	3		
State valuation allowance		(9)		(10)		
Bonus accrual		2		3		
Gift cards	5		4			
Property and equipment		(25)		(29)		
Foreign taxes			1			
Workers' compensation	19		19			
Cancellation of debt income		(40)		(39)		
Original issue discount related to cancellation of debt income		41		41		
Other deferred tax (liabilities) assets	(3)	2	(4)	2		
	\$	38	\$	26	\$	33
				\$		28
Net deferred tax assets		\$	64	\$		61

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

The federal, state and international income tax provision for The Michaels Companies, Inc. and Michaels Stores, Inc. are as follows:

	The Michaels Companies, Inc			Michaels Stores, Inc		
	Fiscal year			Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011	2013	2012	2011
	(In millions)			(In millions)		
<b>Federal:</b>						
Current	\$ 114	\$ 92	\$ 46	\$ 125	\$ 92	\$ 46
Deferred	(1)	(7)	18	(7)	18	
Total federal income tax provision	113	85	64	125	85	64
<b>State:</b>						
Current	15	10	13	15	10	13
Deferred	(4)	1	1	(4)	1	1
Total state income tax provision	11	11	14	11	11	14
<b>International:</b>						
Current	11	20	22	11	20	22
Deferred	1	(1)		1	(1)	
Total international income tax provision	12	19	22	12	19	22
Total income tax provision	\$ 136	\$ 115	\$ 100	\$ 148	\$ 115	\$ 100

The reconciliation between the actual income tax provision and the income tax provision calculated by applying the federal statutory tax rate is as follows:

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
Income tax provision at statutory rate	\$ 133	\$ 111	\$ 91
State income taxes, net of federal income tax effect	8	6	7
Federal tax credits	(1)		(2)
Unrecognized tax benefits		(1)	1
State valuation allowance	(1)		
Other	(3)	(1)	3
Total income tax provision	\$ 136	\$ 115	\$ 100

At February 1, 2014, we had state net operating loss carryforwards to reduce future taxable income of approximately \$9 million, net of federal tax benefits, expiring at various dates between fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2032. The valuation allowance related to state net operating loss carryforwards was decreased to \$9 million in fiscal 2013 due to the expiration of state net operating losses. We believe it is more likely than not that we will be unable to realize these amounts.

In fiscal 2013, we reduced our valuation allowance by \$1 million and our deferred tax assets related to state net operating loss carryforwards by \$1 million reflecting the unrecognized tax benefits in those respective jurisdictions.

Table of Contents***Uncertain tax positions***

We operate in a number of tax jurisdictions and are subject to examination of our income tax returns by tax authorities in those jurisdictions who may challenge any item on these tax returns. Because the tax matters challenged by tax authorities are typically complex, the ultimate outcome of these challenges is uncertain.

In accordance with ASC 740, *Income Taxes*, we recognize the benefits of uncertain tax positions in our financial statements only after determining a more likely than not probability that the uncertain tax positions will be sustained. A reconciliation of gross unrecognized tax benefits, including reduction of deferred tax assets for state operating losses, from the end of fiscal year 2012 through the end of fiscal 2013 is as follows:

<b>(In millions)</b>	<b>Fiscal year 2013</b>
Balance at February 2, 2013	\$ 14
Additions based on tax positions related to the current year	1
Reductions for tax positions related to prior years	(3)
Reductions for expiration of statute of limitations	(3)
Balance at February 1, 2014	\$ 12

Included in the balance of unrecognized tax benefits at February 1, 2014, is \$6 million which, if recognized, would affect tax expense.

Our policy is to classify all income tax related interest and penalties as income tax expense. As of February 1, 2014, our accrual for potential payments of interest and penalties was \$2 million.

We identified our federal return, Canadian tax return and state returns in California, Florida, Illinois, Michigan, New York, North Carolina, Pennsylvania and Texas as "major" jurisdictions. The periods subject to examination for our federal return are fiscal 2010 to present, fiscal 2007 to present for our Canadian returns, and fiscal 2009 to present for all major state tax returns. The pretax income from foreign operations for fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012, and fiscal 2011 was \$39 million, \$52 million, and \$51 million, respectively.

**Note 8. Share-based compensation**

The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan provides for the grant of share-based awards exercisable for up to 21.0 million shares of common stock. Generally, awards vest ratably over four or five years and expire eight years from the grant date. Prior to third quarter 2011, we issued new shares of common stock to satisfy share issuance upon option exercises. During fiscal 2011, we satisfied option exercises with the issuance of new shares but also allowed such shares to be net cash settled at the request of the former employee. Consequently, in the third quarter of fiscal 2011, management determined that the pattern of purchasing immature shares modified the classification of outstanding awards to liability awards. Share-based compensation expense was \$35 million for fiscal 2013, \$21 million for fiscal 2012 and \$41 million for fiscal 2011 which is recognized in Cost of sales and occupancy expense and Share-based compensation on the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

The fair value of options issued prior to the third quarter of fiscal 2011 was recognized as compensation expense at their grant date fair value. When the options were modified to liability awards, the grant date fair value of the options outstanding prior to the third quarter of fiscal 2011 was the minimum expense

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

recognized each period. For the years ended February 2, 2013, and January 28, 2012, the Company, under ASC 718's guidance on liability awards, recognized incremental share-based compensation expense using the Black-Scholes option valuation model's fair value as of the end of each reporting period. The following assumptions were used during the fiscal years 2013, 2012 and 2011 to estimate the fair value of options.

Assumptions(1)	2013	2012	Fiscal year 2011
Risk-free interest rates(2)	0.1% - 1.4%	0.1% - 1.1%	0.1% - 1.3%
Expected dividend yield	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%
Expected volatility rates of our common stock(3)	25.5% - 32.5%	29.0% - 35.2%	30.7% - 37.8%
Expected life of options (in years)(4)	4.0 - 5.0	1.0 - 5.0	1.0 - 5.0
Fair value of equity per share(5)	\$ 14.76 - \$18.28	\$ 16.32 - \$16.99	\$ 10.31 - \$12.16

- (1) Forfeitures were estimated based on historical experience and anticipated events.
- (2) Based on constant maturity interest rates for U.S. Treasury instruments with terms consistent with the expected lives of the awards.
- (3) We considered both the historical volatility as well as implied volatilities for exchange-traded options of a peer group of companies.
- (4) Expected lives were based on an analysis of historical exercise and post-vesting employment termination behavior. Since fair value was remeasured at the end of the year in fiscal 2011 and fiscal 2012, and at the end of the third quarter in fiscal 2013, the expected life was adjusted based on the remaining life of the options.
- (5) The Company's fiscal 2013, 2012 and 2011 common stock valuations relied on projections of our future performance, estimates of our weighted average cost of capital, and metrics based on the performance of a peer group of similar companies, including valuation multiples and stock price volatility.

As of February 1, 2014, there were 11.8 million stock option awards outstanding. In addition, as of February 1, 2014, there were 826,129.0 shares of restricted stock outstanding, of which 47,657.1 are vested. Under The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan, there are 3.1 million shares of common stock remaining available for grant. The table below sets forth a summary of stock option activity for the year ended February 1, 2014. For fiscal 2013, options outstanding at the end of the fiscal third quarter were revalued under liability accounting, while options granted during the fourth fiscal quarter of 2013, are fair-valued on the date of grant.

	Number of shares	Weighted- average exercise price	Weighted- average remaining contractual term (in years)	Aggregate intrinsic value
	(in millions)		(in millions)	
Outstanding at February 2, 2013	13.4	\$ 10.75		
Granted	3.3	13.96		
Exercised	(4.0)	9.20		
Cancelled/Forfeited	(0.9)	10.07		
Outstanding at February 1, 2014	11.8	\$ 9.37	4.6	\$ 78
Vested and Exercisable at February 1, 2014	6.3	\$ 7.66	3.4	\$ 55

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

The total fair value of options that vested during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 was \$17 million, \$30 million and \$25 million, respectively. The intrinsic value for options that vested during 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 was \$25 million, \$22 million and \$17 million, respectively. The intrinsic value for options exercised was \$27 million in fiscal 2013, \$5 million in fiscal 2012 and less than \$1 million in fiscal 2011. As of the beginning of fiscal 2013, there were 4.7 million nonvested options with a weighted average

F-31

---

Table of Contents

fair value of \$8.14 per share. As of the end of fiscal 2013, there were 5.2 million nonvested options with a weighted average fair value of \$6.04 per share. The weighted-average fair value of options granted during fiscal 2013 was \$4.68. During fiscal 2013, there were 3.5 million options that vested and 0.9 million options that were cancelled with a weighted-average fair value of \$4.91 and \$6.56 per share, respectively.

As of February 1, 2014, compensation cost not yet recognized related to nonvested awards totaled \$24 million and is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of 2.9 years. Share-based liabilities paid in fiscal 2012 were \$3 million and in fiscal 2013 were \$19 million. To the extent the actual forfeiture rate is different from what we have anticipated, share-based compensation related to these awards will be different from our expectations.

**Note 9. Derivative instruments**

We are exposed to fluctuations in interest rates on our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility. During the first quarter of fiscal 2009, we purchased an interest rate derivative with the objective to cap our exposure to interest rate increases on our senior secured term loan facility resulting from fluctuations in the three-month LIBOR (the "cap"). The cap limits our interest exposure on a notional value of \$2.0 billion to the lesser of the three-month LIBOR rate or 7.0%. The term of the cap extends to the first quarter of fiscal 2015. The interest rate cap does not qualify for cash flow hedge accounting under ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging*. The fair value of the cap as of February 1, 2014, and February 2, 2013, was immaterial and is included in Other assets on the Consolidated Balance Sheets. The change in fair value of the cap for the years resulted in an immaterial loss in both fiscal 2013 and fiscal 2012 and a loss of \$5 million in fiscal 2011. These amounts are recorded in Other (income) and expense, net in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

**Note 10. Fair Value Measurements**

As defined in ASC 820, *Fair Value Measurements*, fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. ASC 820 establishes a three-level valuation hierarchy for fair value measurements. These valuation techniques are based upon observable and unobservable inputs. Observable inputs reflect market data obtained from independent sources, while unobservable inputs reflect less transparent active market data, as well as internal assumptions. These two types of inputs create the following fair value hierarchy:

Level 1 Quoted prices for *identical* instruments in active markets

Level 2 Quoted prices for *similar* instruments in active markets; quoted prices for identical or similar instruments in markets that are not active; and model-derived valuations whose significant inputs are observable and

Level 3 Instruments with significant unobservable inputs

In fiscal 2009, we purchased an interest rate derivative with the objective to cap our exposure to interest rate increases on our senior secured term loan facility that result from fluctuations in the three-month LIBOR. The interest rate cap is measured using widely accepted valuation techniques including a discounted cash flow analysis on the expected cash flows. This analysis reflects the contractual terms of the derivative, including the period to maturity, and uses observable market-based inputs, including interest rate curves and implied volatilities. The fair value of the interest rate cap is determined using the market methodology of discounting the future expected variable cash receipts that would occur if variable interest rates rise

Table of Contents

above the strike rate of the cap. The variable cash receipts are based on an expectation of future interest rates (forward curves) derived from observable market interest rate curves. These factors are considered Level 2 inputs within the fair value hierarchy. As of February 1, 2014, the fair value of the cap was immaterial. See Note 9 for additional information on our derivative instruments.

In 2010, the Company acquired ScrapHD, an online scrapbooking business. In connection with the acquisition, there was a contingent cash obligation based on operating performance through fiscal 2012. As a result of negative operating results, we estimated the fair value of ScrapHD to be zero as of February 2, 2013, which resulted in a reduction in the fair value of our contingent consideration liability from an immaterial amount as of January 28, 2012, to zero as of February 2, 2013. Due to the previously discussed factors, we recorded an impairment charge in fiscal 2012 of \$7 million for long-lived assets associated with our online scrapbooking business and a goodwill impairment charge of \$1 million, which represents the carrying amount of ScrapHD's goodwill.

Long-lived assets held for use consists of our stores tested for impairment as a result of our impairment review, as more fully described in Note 1. The inputs used to measure the fair value of these long-lived assets are considered Level 3 inputs within the fair value hierarchy. As a result of our impairment review, we recorded an impairment charge of \$2 million in fiscal 2013, did not have an impairment charge in fiscal 2012 and recorded less than \$1 million in impairment charges in fiscal 2011.

We have also performed the required impairment review related to goodwill, as more fully described in Note 1. Based on our review at February 1, 2014, we do not believe it is more likely than not that the carrying amount exceeds our fair value.

The table below provides the carrying and fair values of our senior secured term loan and notes as of February 1, 2014. The fair values of our senior secured term loan, senior subordinated notes, and PIK Notes were determined based on quoted market prices which are considered Level 2 inputs within the fair value hierarchy. The fair value of our Senior notes was determined based on recent trades which are considered Level 1 inputs within the fair value hierarchy.

(In millions)	Carrying value	Fair value
Senior secured term loan	\$ 1,628	\$ 1,637
Senior notes	1,006	1,075
Senior subordinated notes	260	259
PIK Notes	800	822

**Note 11. Retirement plans**

We sponsor a 401(k) Savings Plan for our eligible employees and certain of our subsidiaries. Participation in the 401(k) Savings Plan is voluntary and available to any employee who is at least 21 years of age and has completed 500 hours of service in a six-month eligibility period. Participants may elect to contribute up to 80% of their compensation on a pre-tax basis and up to 10% on an after-tax basis. In accordance with the provisions of the 401(k) Savings Plan, we make a matching cash contribution to the account of each participant in an amount equal to 50% of the participant's pre-tax contributions that do not exceed 6% of the participant's considered compensation for the year. Matching contributions, and the actual earnings thereon, vest to the participants based on years of service, with 100% vesting after three years. Our matching contribution expense, net of forfeitures, was \$4 million in each of fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011.

Table of Contents**Note 12. Commitments and contingencies****Commitments**

We operate stores and use distribution centers, office facilities, and equipment that are generally leased under non-cancelable operating leases, the majority of which provide for renewal options. Future minimum annual rental commitments for all non-cancelable operating leases as of February 1, 2014, are as follows:

(In millions)	Operating leases
For the fiscal year:	
2014	\$ 390
2015	343
2016	294
2017	236
2018	181
Thereafter	350
Total minimum rental commitments	\$ 1,794

Rent expense applicable to non-cancelable operating leases was \$370 million, \$355 million and \$345 million in fiscal 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

**Employee claims***Rea claim*

On September 15, 2011, MSI was served with a lawsuit filed in the California Superior Court in and for the County of Orange ("Superior Court") by four former store managers as a class action proceeding on behalf of themselves and certain former and current store managers employed by MSI in California. The lawsuit alleges that MSI improperly classified store managers as exempt employees and as such failed to pay all wages, overtime, waiting time penalties and failed to provide accurate wage statements. The lawsuit also alleges that the foregoing conduct was in breach of various laws, including California's unfair competition law. On December 3, 2013, the Superior Court entered an Order certifying a class of approximately 200 members. The Company subsequently successfully removed the case to the United States District Court for the Central District of California and is challenging the class certification order. We believe we have meritorious defenses and intend to defend the lawsuits vigorously. We do not believe the resolution of the lawsuits will have a material effect on our Consolidated Financial Statements.

**Consumer class action claims***Data security incident*

Five putative class actions were filed relating to our recent Data Breach. The plaintiffs generally allege that the Company failed to secure and safeguard customers' private information including credit and debit card information and as such, breached an implied contract, violated the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act (and other states' similar laws) and are seeking damages including declaratory relief, actual damages, punitive damages, statutory damages, attorneys' fees, litigation costs, remedial action, pre and post judgment interest, and other relief as available. The cases, are as follows: Christina Moyer v. Michaels Stores, Inc., was filed on January 27, 2014; Michael and Jessica Gouwens v. Michaels Stores, Inc., was filed on January 29, 2014; Nancy Maize and Jessica Gordon v. Michaels Stores, Inc., was filed on February 21, 2014; and Daniel Ripes v. Michaels Stores, Inc., was filed on March 14, 2014. All four of these cases were filed in the United States District Court-Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division. A case, Mary Jane Whalen v. Michaels Stores, Inc., was filed in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of New York on

Table of Contents

March 18, 2014, but was voluntarily dismissed by the plaintiff on April 11, 2014, without prejudice to her right to re-file a complaint. On April 16, 2014, an order was entered consolidating the current actions. We believe we have meritorious defenses and intend to defend the lawsuits vigorously.

In addition, payment card companies and associations may require us to reimburse them for unauthorized card charges and costs to replace cards and may also impose fines or penalties in connection with the Data Breach, and enforcement authorities may also impose fines or other remedies against us. We have also incurred other costs associated with the Data Breach, including legal fees, investigative fees, costs of communications with customers and credit monitoring services provided to our customers. In addition, state and federal agencies, including the State Attorneys General and the Federal Trade Commission may investigate events related to the Data Breach, including how it occurred, its consequences and our responses. Although we intend to cooperate in these investigations, we may be subject to fines or other obligations, which may have an adverse effect on how we operate our business and our results of operations.

While a loss from these matters is reasonably possible, we cannot reasonably estimate a range of possible losses because our investigation into the matter is ongoing, the proceedings remain in the early stages, alleged damages have not been specified, there is uncertainty as to the likelihood of a class or classes being certified or the ultimate size of any class if certified, and there are significant factual and legal issues to be resolved.

***California zip code claims***

On August 15, 2008, Linda Carson, a consumer, filed a purported class action proceeding against the Company in the Superior Court of California, County of San Diego ("San Diego Superior Court"), on behalf of herself and all similarly-situated California consumers. The Carson lawsuit alleges that the Company unlawfully requested and recorded personally identifiable information (i.e., her zip code) as part of a credit card transaction. The plaintiff seeks statutory penalties, costs, interest, and attorneys' fees. On February 10, 2011, the California Supreme Court ruled, in a similar matter, *Williams-Sonoma v. Pineda* case, that zip codes are personally identifiable information and therefore the Song-Beverly Credit Card Act of 1971, as amended ("Song Act"), prohibits businesses from requesting or requiring zip codes in connection with a credit card transaction.

Subsequent to the California Supreme Court decision, three additional purported class action lawsuits, seeking similar relief, have been filed against the Company: *Carolyn Austin v. Michaels Stores, Inc.* and *Tiffany Heon v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, both in the San Diego Superior Court and *Sandra A. Rubinstein v. Michaels Stores, Inc.* in the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles, Central Division. An order coordinating the cases has been entered and plaintiffs filed a Consolidated Complaint on April 24, 2012. The parties settled the lawsuit for an amount that will not have a material effect on our Consolidated Financial Statements. On February 14, 2014, the Court granted preliminary approval of the settlement agreement and a final Fairness Hearing is set for July 11, 2014.

***Massachusetts zip code claims***

Relying in part on the California Supreme Court decision, a purported class action lawsuit was filed on May 20, 2011, against the Company, *Melissa Tyler v. Michaels Stores, Inc.* in the U.S. District Court-District of Massachusetts, alleging violation of a Massachusetts statute regarding the collection of personally identifiable information in connection with a credit card transaction. An additional purported class action lawsuit asserting the same allegations was filed in the U.S. District Court-District of Massachusetts by Susan D'Esposito, and the two cases were consolidated. On August 12, 2013, a settlement was reached for an amount that will not have a material effect on our Consolidated Financial Statements. On February 12,

Table of Contents

2014, the Court granted preliminary approval of the settlement and a final Fairness Hearing is set for May 20, 2014.

***Pricing and promotion***

On April 30, 2012, William J. Henry, a consumer, filed a purported class action proceeding against the Company in the Court of Common Pleas, Lake County, Ohio, on behalf of himself and all similarly-situated Ohio consumers who purchased framing products and/or services from MSI during weeks where MSI was advertising a discount for framing products and/or services. The lawsuit alleges that MSI advertised discounts on its framing products and/or services without actually providing a discount to its customers. The plaintiff is claiming violation of Ohio law ORC 1345.01 et seq., unjust enrichment and fraud. The plaintiff has alleged damages, penalties and fees not to exceed \$5 million, exclusive of interest and costs. We believe we have meritorious defenses and intend to defend the lawsuit vigorously. We do not believe the resolution of this lawsuit will have a material effect on our Consolidated Financial Statements.

**General**

In addition to the litigation discussed above, we are, and in the future, may be involved in various other lawsuits, claims and proceedings incidental to the ordinary course of business. ASC 450, *Contingencies* ("ASC 450"), governs the disclosure and recognition of loss contingencies, including potential losses from litigation and regulatory matters. It imposes different requirements for the recognition and disclosure of loss contingencies based on the likelihood of occurrence of the contingent future event or events. It distinguishes among degrees of likelihood using the following three terms: "probable", meaning that "the future event or events are likely to occur"; "remote", meaning that "the chance of the future event or events occurring is slight"; and "reasonably possible", meaning that "the chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely". In accordance with ASC 450, the Company accrues for a loss contingency when we conclude that the likelihood of a loss is probable and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated. When the loss cannot be reasonably estimated, we estimate the range of amounts, and if no amount in the range constitutes a better estimate than any other amount, we accrue for the amount at the low end of the range. We adjust our accruals from time to time as we receive additional information, but the loss we incur may be significantly greater than or less than the amount we have accrued. We disclose loss contingencies if there is at least a reasonable possibility that a material loss has been incurred. No accrual or disclosure is required for losses that are remote.

For some of the matters disclosed above, the Company is currently able to estimate a reasonably possible loss or range of loss in excess of amounts accrued (if any). For some of the matters included within this estimation, an accrual has been made because a loss is believed to be both probable and reasonably estimable, but an exposure to loss exists in excess of the amount accrued; in these cases, the estimate reflects the reasonably possible range of loss in excess of the accrued amount. For other matters included within this estimation, no accrual has been made because a loss, although estimable, is believed to be reasonably possible, but not probable; in these cases the estimate reflects the reasonably possible loss or range of loss within the ranges identified. For the various ranges identified, the aggregate of these estimated amounts is approximately \$9 million as of February 1, 2014, which is also inclusive of amounts accrued by the Company.

For other matters disclosed above, the Company is not currently able to estimate the reasonably possible loss or range of loss, and has indicated such. Many of these matters remain in preliminary stages (even in some cases where a substantial period of time has passed since the commencement of the matter), with few or no substantive legal decisions by the court defining the scope of the claims, the class (if any), or the potentially available damages, and fact discovery is still in progress or has not yet begun. For all these

Table of Contents

reasons, the Company cannot at this time estimate the reasonably possible loss or range of loss, if any, for these matters.

It is the opinion of the Company's management, based on current knowledge and after taking into account its current legal accruals, the eventual outcome of all matters described in this prospectus would not be likely to have a material impact on the consolidated financial condition of the Company. Nonetheless, given the substantial or indeterminate amounts sought in certain of these matters, and the inherent unpredictability of such matters, an adverse outcome in certain of these matters could, from time to time, have a material effect on the Company's consolidated results of operations or cash flows in particular quarterly or annual periods.

**Note 13. Concentration of credit risk**

We periodically invest our excess cash and equivalents in money market funds and trusts, which are not insured or guaranteed by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other financial or government institution. We also deposit a portion of our cash and equivalents with numerous federally-insured financial institutions, the balances of which often exceed \$250,000. The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation insures each account up to a maximum of \$250,000 of the aggregate account balance with each institution. We believe counterparty default risk is low as we only use financial institutions with investment grade ratings or funds and trusts that invest in securities with investment grade ratings and that possess the necessary liquidity to satisfy our redemption needs.

We invest cash balances in excess of operating requirements primarily in money market mutual funds and short-term interest-bearing securities, generally with maturities of 90 days or less. Due to the short-term nature of our investments, the fair value of our cash and equivalents at February 1, 2014, approximated carrying value.

We have market risk exposure arising from changes in interest rates on our Senior Secured Credit Facilities. The interest rates on our Senior Secured Credit Facilities will reprice periodically, which will impact our earnings and cash flow. The interest rates on our Senior Notes, PIK Notes, and 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes are fixed. Based on our overall interest rate exposure to variable rate debt outstanding as of February 1, 2014, a 1% increase or decrease in interest rates would increase or decrease Income before income taxes by approximately \$16 million. A 1% increase or decrease in interest rates would decrease or increase the fair value of our long-term fixed rate debt by approximately \$7 million. A change in interest rates would not materially affect the fair value of our variable rate debt as the debt reprices periodically.

**Note 14. Segments and geographic information**

We consider our Michaels U.S., Michaels Canada, Aaron Brothers and ScrapHD to be our operating segments for purposes of determining reportable segments based on the criteria of ASC 280, *Segment Reporting*. We determined that our Michaels U.S., Michaels Canada, and Aaron Brothers operating segments have similar economic characteristics and meet the aggregation criteria set forth in ASC 280. Therefore, we combine those operating segments into one reporting segment. The ScrapHD operating segment, which has been discontinued, is immaterial to the financial statements as a whole.

The accounting policies of the operating segments are the same as those described in the summary of significant accounting policies in Note 1.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

Our sales and assets by country are as follows:

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Net Sales:</b>			
United States	\$ 4,132	\$ 3,989	\$ 3,825
Canada	438	419	385
Consolidated Total	\$ 4,570	\$ 4,408	\$ 4,210
<b>Total Assets:</b>			
United States	\$ 1,688	\$ 1,446	\$ 1,744
Canada	123	109	94
Consolidated Total	\$ 1,811	\$ 1,555	\$ 1,838

We present assets based on their physical, geographic location. Certain assets located in the U.S. are also used to support our Canadian operations, but we do not allocate these assets to Canada.

Our Consolidated Net sales by major product categories are as follows:

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
General crafts	\$ 2,371	\$ 2,220	\$ 2,108
Home décor and seasonal	898	890	837
Framing	862	836	804
Scrapbooking	439	462	461
	\$ 4,570	\$ 4,408	\$ 4,210

Our chief operating decision makers evaluate historical operating performance and plan and forecast future periods' operating performance based on earnings before interest, income taxes, depreciation, amortization and refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt ("EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt)"). We believe EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) represents the financial measure that most closely reflects the operating effectiveness of factors over which management has control. As such, an element of base incentive compensation targets for certain management personnel is based on EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt). A reconciliation of EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt) to Net income is presented below.

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
Net income	\$ 243	\$ 200	\$ 157
Interest expense	215	245	254
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	14	33	18
Provision for income taxes	136	115	100
Depreciation and amortization	106	97	101
EBITDA (excluding refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt)	\$ 714	\$ 690	\$ 630



Table of Contents

**Note 15. Related party transactions**

We pay annual management fees to Bain Capital Partners, LLC ("Bain Capital") and The Blackstone Group L.P. ("The Blackstone Group") in the amount of \$12 million and an annual management fee to Highfields Capital Management LP in the amount of \$1 million. We recognized \$14 million of expense in fiscal 2013 and \$13 million of expense in both fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 related to annual management fees and reimbursement of out-of-pocket expenses.

Investment funds advised by Bain Capital own a majority equity position in Unisource, an external vendor we utilized to print our circular advertisements. During the first quarter of fiscal 2011, we stopped utilizing this vendor for these services. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2011 were \$6 million and are included in Selling, general, and administrative expense in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

Investment funds advised by Bain Capital own a minority position in LogicSource, an external vendor we utilize for print procurement services. Payments associated with this vendor during each of fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$5 million. These expenses are included in Selling, general, and administrative expense in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in RGIS, an external vendor we utilize to count our store inventory. Payments associated with this vendor during each of fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$6 million, and are included in Selling, general, and administrative expense in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in Vistar, an external vendor we utilize for all of the candy-type items in our stores. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$24 million, \$24 million and \$20 million, respectively, and are recognized in cost of sales as the sales are incurred.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in Hilton Hotels, an external vendor we utilize for hospitality services. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2013 were minimal and \$1 million during each of fiscal 2012 and 2011, and are included in Selling, general, and administrative expense in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in Brixmor Properties Group, a vendor we utilize to lease certain properties. Payments associated with this vendor during fiscal 2013, fiscal 2012 and fiscal 2011 were \$4 million, \$5 million and \$3 million, respectively. These expenses are included in Cost of sales and occupancy expense in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income.

Our current directors (other than Jill A. Greenthal, John J. Mahoney, James A. Quella and Carl S. Rubin) are affiliates of Bain Capital or The Blackstone Group. As such, some or all of such directors may have an indirect material interest in payments with respect to debt securities of the Company that have been purchased by affiliates of Bain Capital and The Blackstone Group. As of February 1, 2014, affiliates of The Blackstone Group held \$31 million of our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility.

Table of Contents

**Note 16. Condensed consolidated financial information of Michaels Stores, Inc.**

All obligations of MSI under the Senior Notes, 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, Restated Term Loan Credit Facility, and Restated Revolving Credit Facility are guaranteed by each of MSI's subsidiaries other than Aaron Brothers Card Services, LLC, Artistree of Canada, ULC, Michaels Stores of Puerto Rico, LLC and certain foreign and domestic subsidiary holding companies. In addition, all obligations of MSI under the Restated Term Loan Credit Facility and Restated Revolving Credit Facility are guaranteed by Holdings. As of February 1, 2014, the financial statements of Aaron Brothers Card Services, LLC, Artistree of Canada, ULC, Michaels Stores of Puerto Rico, LLC and certain foreign and domestic subsidiary holding companies were immaterial. Each subsidiary guarantor is 100% owned, directly or indirectly, by MSI and all guarantees are joint and several and full and unconditional.

The Indenture for the Senior Notes contains covenants limiting, among other things, Michaels Stores, Inc.'s ability and the ability of Michaels Stores, Inc.'s restricted subsidiaries to:

incur additional debt

pay dividends or distributions on Michaels Stores, Inc.'s capital stock or repurchase Michaels Stores, Inc.'s capital stock, subject to certain exceptions, including dividends, distributions and repurchases up to an amount in excess of (i) \$75 million plus (ii) a basket that builds based on 50% of MSI's Consolidated Net Income (as defined in the Senior Indenture) and certain other amounts, in each case, to the extent such payment capacity is not applied as otherwise permitted under the Senior Indenture and subject to certain conditions.

The following condensed consolidated financial information represents the financial information of MSI and its wholly-owned subsidiaries. The information is presented in accordance with the requirements of Rule 12-04 under the SEC's Regulation S-X. In addition, disclosure requirements of Rule 12-04 of Regulation S-X regarding material contingencies and long-term obligations are included in Note 5. Debt, Note 7. Income taxes, Note 8. Share-based compensation and Note 12. Commitments and contingencies.

Table of Contents

**Michaels Stores, Inc.**  
**Supplemental condensed consolidated statement of**  
**comprehensive income**

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Net sales</b>	\$ 4,570	\$ 4,408	\$ 4,210
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	2,748	2,643	2,532
<b>Gross profit</b>	1,822	1,765	1,678
Selling, general, and administrative expense	1,169	1,132	1,090
Share-based compensation	23	15	33
Impairment of intangible assets		8	
Related party expenses	14	13	13
Store pre-opening costs	5	5	4
<b>Operating income</b>	611	592	538
Interest expense	183	245	254
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt	14	33	18
Other (income) and expense, net	2	(1)	9
<b>Income before income taxes</b>	412	315	257
Provision for income taxes	148	115	100
<b>Net income</b>	\$ 264	\$ 200	\$ 157
<b>Other comprehensive (loss) income, net of tax:</b>			
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(6)		(1)
<b>Comprehensive income</b>	\$ 258	\$ 200	\$ 156

F-41

Table of Contents

## Michaels Stores, Inc.

### Supplemental condensed consolidated balance sheet

(In millions)	Fiscal year	
	2013	2012
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Current assets:		
Cash and equivalents	\$ 234	\$ 56
Merchandise inventories	901	862
Prepaid expense and other	95	86
Receivable from parent	2	
Deferred income taxes	39	37
Income tax receivables	2	3
<b>Total current assets</b>	<b>1,273</b>	<b>1,044</b>
Property and equipment, net	358	338
Goodwill, net	94	94
Debt Issuance costs (net of amortization)	37	46
Deferred income taxes	28	30
Long-term receivable from Parent	8	
Other assets	3	3
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,801</b>	<b>\$ 1,555</b>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</b>		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 368	\$ 263
Accrued liabilities and other	377	367
Share-based compensation liability		35
Current portion of long-term debt	16	150
Dividend payable to Holdings	30	
Deferred income taxes	1	4
Income taxes payable	42	37
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	<b>834</b>	<b>856</b>
Long-term debt	2,878	2,891
Share-based compensation		27
Other long-term liabilities	90	85
<b>Total stockholders' deficit</b>	<b>(2,001)</b>	<b>(2,304)</b>
<b>Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit</b>	<b>\$ 1,801</b>	<b>\$ 1,555</b>

Table of Contents

## Michaels Stores, Inc.

### Supplemental condensed consolidated statements of cash flows

(In millions)	Fiscal year		
	2013	2012	2011
Operating activities:			
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$ 468	\$ 299	\$ 409
Investing activities:			
Cash paid for property and equipment	(112)	(124)	(109)
Net cash used in investing activities	(112)	(124)	(109)
Financing activities:			
Net repayments of long-term debt	(156)	(457)	(227)
Other financing activities	(22)	(33)	(21)
Net cash used in financing activities	(178)	(490)	(248)
Increase (decrease) in cash and equivalents	178	(315)	52
Beginning cash and equivalents	56	371	319
Ending cash and equivalents	\$ 234	\$ 56	\$ 371

#### Note 17. Subsequent events

On June 6, 2014, our Board of Directors approved a common stock split in the ratio of 1.476 to 1.00. All share and related option information presented in these financial statements and accompanying footnotes has been retroactively adjusted to reflect the increased number of shares resulting from this action.

On June 5, 2014, MSI and its subsidiaries that are guarantors under the indenture governing the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes entered into the Purchase Agreement relating to the sale of \$250,000,000 aggregate principal amount of Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes. We expect the offering of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to close on June 16, 2014, subject to satisfaction of customary closing conditions. We intend to use the net proceeds of the offering of the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes to redeem a portion of the outstanding 2018 Senior Notes, to pay the applicable make-whole premium and accrued and unpaid interest thereon to, but not including, the applicable redemption date and to pay related fees and expenses.

#### Note 18. Pro forma net income per common share (unaudited)

In connection with the closing of the Company's initial public offering, we intend to use the net proceeds, after deducting estimated offering expenses and underwriting discount, to redeem a portion of the PIK Notes, to pay the applicable redemption premium of 1% of the principal amount of the PIK Notes redeemed and related fees and expenses. The PIK Notes, which were issued on July 29, 2013, funded in part a cash dividend and equity-related award to equity and equity-award holders.

Pro forma basic and diluted net income per share attributable to common shareholders has been computed to give effect to the consummation of the offering and the stock split of the existing common shares prior to the closing of the offering and the effect to the number of shares whose proceeds are to

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

be used to repay the debt. The following table sets forth the computation of the Company's unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net income per share for the fiscal year ended February 1, 2014:

<b>(in millions, except per share data)</b>	<b>Fiscal year 2013</b>	
	<b>Basic</b>	<b>Diluted</b>
<b>Numerator:</b>		
Income available to common stockholders	\$ 242	\$ 242
Pro forma adjustment to net income to reflect tax-effected interest impact	15	15
Pro forma net income	\$ 257	\$ 257
<b>Denominator:</b>		
Denominator for earnings per common share weighted-average shares	174.8	178.7
Pro forma adjustment to reflect the offering	27.8	27.8
Weighted average shares of common stock outstanding used in computing the pro forma net income per share	202.6	206.5
Pro forma net income per share	\$ 1.27	\$ 1.25

F-44

---

Table of Contents

## The Michaels Companies, Inc.

### Unaudited supplemental quarterly financial data

(In millions)	First quarter	Second quarter	Third quarter	Fourth quarter
<b>Fiscal 2013:</b>				
Net sales	\$ 993	\$ 904	\$ 1,118	\$ 1,555
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	584	567	665	932
Gross profit	409	337	453	623
Selling, general, and administrative expense	272	254	309	335
Share-based compensation	3	8	4	8
Operating income	128	71	135	276
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt(1)	7			7
Net income	46	17	47	133
Earnings per share:				
Basic	\$ 0.26	\$ 0.09	\$ 0.28	\$ 0.76
Diluted	\$ 0.26	\$ 0.08	\$ 0.27	\$ 0.74
Weighted average shares basic	174.8	174.8	174.8	174.8
Weighted average shares diluted	178.7	178.5	178.6	178.8

	First quarter	Second quarter	Third quarter	Fourth quarter
<b>Fiscal 2012:</b>				
Net sales	\$ 978	\$ 892	\$ 1,014	\$ 1,524
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	567	557	612	907
Gross profit	411	335	402	617
Selling, general, and administrative expense	259	251	277	345
Share-based compensation	4	3	2	6
Operating income	144	76	117	255
Refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt(2)			3	30
Net income	51	9	35	105
Earnings per share:				
Basic	\$ 0.29	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.60
Diluted	\$ 0.29	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.59
Weighted average shares basic	174.6	174.7	174.8	174.8
Weighted average shares diluted	178.0	178.4	178.1	178.4

We report on the basis of a 52-week or 53-week fiscal year, which ends on the Saturday closest to January 31. Our interim periods each contain 13 weeks, with the first quarter ending on a Saturday 13 weeks after the end of our previous fiscal year. For fiscal years that contain 53 weeks, including fiscal 2012, our fourth quarter contains 14 weeks.

(1) The refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt relate to the early extinguishment of \$137 million of our 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes and the subsequent refinancing of the remaining outstanding balance of approximately \$256 million of the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes.

(2) The refinancing costs and losses on early extinguishments of debt relate to our senior secured term loan facility and a partial prepayment of our senior secured term loan, the redemption of our remaining outstanding Subordinated

Discount Notes and our asset-based revolving credit facility.

F-45

---

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Consolidated statements of comprehensive income**  
**(In millions, except per share data)**  
**(Unaudited)**

	13 Weeks ended		39 Weeks ended	
	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
<b>Net sales</b>	\$ 1,130	\$ 1,118	\$ 3,130	\$ 3,015
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	678	665	1,892	1,816
<b>Gross profit</b>	452	453	1,238	1,199
Selling, general, and administrative	304	309	856	835
Share-based compensation	4	4	10	15
Related party expenses		3	35	10
Store pre-opening costs	2	2	4	5
<b>Operating income</b>	142	135	333	334
Interest expense	41	62	159	154
Losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs			68	7
Other expense, net	1		1	1
<b>Income before income taxes</b>	100	73	105	172
Provision for income taxes	36	26	44	62
<b>Net income</b>	64	47	61	110
<b>Other comprehensive income, net of tax:</b>				
Foreign currency translation adjustment and other	(3)		(2)	(2)
<b>Comprehensive income</b>	\$ 61	\$ 47	\$ 59	\$ 108
<b>Earnings per share:</b>				
Basic	\$ 0.31	\$ 0.27	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.63
Diluted	\$ 0.31	\$ 0.26	\$ 0.32	\$ 0.62
<b>Weighted average shares outstanding:</b>				
Basic	203	175	188	175
Diluted	207	179	192	179

*See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.*

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Consolidated balance sheets**  
**(In millions, except per share data)**  
**(Unaudited)**

	November 1, 2014	February 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Current Assets:</b>			
Cash and equivalents	\$ 194	\$ 239	\$ 73
Merchandise inventories	1,116	901	1,119
Prepaid expenses and other	99	95	99
Deferred income taxes	37	39	38
Income tax receivables	42	2	20
Total current assets	1,488	1,276	1,349
Property and equipment, at cost	1,546	1,600	1,570
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	(1,169)	(1,242)	(1,217)
Property and equipment, net	377	358	353
Goodwill	94	94	94
Debt issuance costs, net	46	52	53
Deferred income taxes	24	28	29
Other assets	1	3	2
Total assets	\$ 2,030	\$ 1,811	\$ 1,880
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</b>			
<b>Current Liabilities:</b>			
Accounts payable	\$ 504	\$ 368	\$ 467
Accrued liabilities and other	369	411	361
Share-based compensation liability			21
Current portion of long-term debt	205	16	203
Deferred income taxes		1	4
Income taxes payable	1	30	
Total current liabilities	1,079	826	1,056
Long-term debt	3,131	3,678	3,678
Deferred income taxes	1	2	2
Share-based compensation liability			28
Other liabilities	88	87	86
Total liabilities	4,299	4,593	4,850
Commitments and contingencies			
<b>Stockholders' Deficit:</b>			

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Common stock, \$0.06775 par value, 350 million shares authorized; 204 million shares issued and outstanding at November 1, 2014, 175 million shares issued and outstanding at February 1, 2014, and 175 million shares issued and outstanding at November 2, 2013	14	12	12
Additional paid-in capital	549	94	32
Accumulated deficit	(2,830)	(2,888)	(3,018)
Accumulated other comprehensive (loss) income	(2)		4
<b>Total stockholders' deficit</b>	<b>(2,269)</b>	<b>(2,782)</b>	<b>(2,970)</b>
<b>Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit</b>	<b>\$ 2,030</b>	<b>\$ 1,811</b>	<b>\$ 1,880</b>

*See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.*

F-47

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Consolidated statements of cash flows**  
**(In millions)**  
**(Unaudited)**

	<b>39 Weeks ended</b>	
	<b>November 1, 2014</b>	<b>November 2, 2013</b>
<b>Cash flows from operating activities:</b>		
Net income	\$ 61	\$ 110
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation and amortization	82	74
Share-based compensation	15	19
Debt issuance costs amortization	8	7
Accretion of long-term debt		(1)
Losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs	68	7
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Merchandise inventories	(217)	(254)
Prepaid expenses and other	(4)	(14)
Deferred income taxes	5	
Other assets	(2)	
Accounts payable	138	211
Accrued interest	(31)	(12)
Accrued liabilities and other	(17)	(21)
Income taxes	(70)	(55)
Other long-term liabilities		(2)
Net cash provided by operating activities	36	69
<b>Cash flows used in investing activities:</b>		
Additions to property and equipment	(103)	(82)
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>		
Issuance of senior subordinated notes due 2020	255	
Payments of subordinated discount notes due 2016		(142)
Payment of senior notes due 2018	(1,000)	
Redemption premium on senior notes due 2018	(57)	
Payment of PIK notes due 2018	(439)	
Redemption premium on PIK notes due 2018	(4)	
Issuance of PIK notes due 2018		800
Issuance of common stock	446	
Borrowings on senior secured term loan facility	846	
Payments on senior secured term loan facility	(14)	(8)
Borrowings on asset-based revolving credit facility	23	389

Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Payments on asset-based revolving credit facility	(23)	(203)
Payment of debt issuance costs	(11)	(16)
Payment of dividends	(1)	(767)
Change in cash overdraft	4	(9)
Payment to option holders		(14)
Other financing activities	(3)	
Net cash provided by financing activities	22	30
Net change in cash and equivalents	(45)	17
Cash and equivalents at beginning of period	239	56
Cash and equivalents at end of period	\$ 194	\$ 73
<b>Supplemental cash flow information:</b>		
Cash paid for interest	\$ 183	\$ 160
Cash paid for income taxes	\$ 107	\$ 115

*See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.*

Table of Contents

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**  
**Notes to consolidated financial statements**  
**(Unaudited)**

**1. Basis of presentation**

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of The Michaels Companies, Inc. and our wholly-owned subsidiaries. All significant intercompany accounts and transactions have been eliminated. All expressions of the "Company", "us," "we," "our," and all similar expressions are references to The Michaels Companies, Inc. and our consolidated, wholly-owned subsidiaries, unless otherwise expressly stated or the context otherwise requires. Disclosures for Michaels Stores, Inc. ("MSI") have been included to meet the disclosure requirements of Rule 12-04 of Regulation S-X as further discussed in Note 10.

In July 2013, the Company's corporate structure was reorganized into a holding company structure (the "Reorganization"). The Michaels Companies, Inc. ("Parent"), Michaels FinCo Holdings, LLC ("FinCo Holdings"), Michaels FinCo, Inc. ("FinCo Inc.") and Michaels Funding, Inc. ("Holdings") and Michaels Stores MergerCo, Inc. ("MergerCo") were formed in connection with the Reorganization and MergerCo was merged with and into MSI, with MSI being the surviving corporation.

The accompanying unaudited consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ("GAAP") for interim financial information and with the instructions to Form 10-Q and Article 10 of Regulation S-X. Accordingly, they do not include all of the information and footnotes required by GAAP for complete financial statements. Therefore, these financial statements should be read in conjunction with the audited consolidated financial statements and accompanying footnotes included in our prospectus filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, on June 27, 2014 ("Prospectus"). In the opinion of management, all adjustments (consisting of normal recurring accruals and other items) considered necessary for a fair presentation have been included.

We report on the basis of a 52- or 53-week fiscal year, which ends on the Saturday closest to January 31. All references herein to "fiscal 2014" relate to the 52 weeks ending January 31, 2015 and all references to "fiscal 2013" relate to the 52 weeks ended February 1, 2014. In addition, all references herein to "the third quarter of fiscal 2014" relate to the 13 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and all references to "the third quarter of fiscal 2013" relate to the 13 weeks ended November 2, 2013. Finally, all references to "the nine months ended November 1, 2014" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014, and the "the nine months ended November 2, 2013" relate to the 39 weeks ended November 2, 2013. Because of the seasonal nature of our business, the results of operations for the 13 and 39 weeks ended November 1, 2014 are not indicative of the results to be expected for the entire year.

***Stock split***

On June 6, 2014, our stockholders approved a common stock split in the ratio of 1.476 to 1.00. All share and related option information presented in these financial statements and accompanying footnotes has been retroactively adjusted to reflect the increased number of shares resulting from this action.

***Initial public offering***

On July 2, 2014, the Company completed an initial public offering ("IPO") in which we issued and sold 27.8 million shares of common stock at a public offering price of \$17.00 per share. After deducting for underwriting fees, the net proceeds of \$446 million were used to redeem \$439 million of our then

Table of Contents

outstanding 7.50%/8.25% Senior PIK Toggle Notes which were due in 2018 ("PIK Notes") and to pay other expenses of the offering.

**Preferred shares**

During the second quarter of fiscal 2014, the Board of Directors authorized 50 million shares of preferred stock. No preferred shares have been issued as of November 1, 2014.

**Recent accounting pronouncements**

In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2014-09, "*Revenue from Contracts with Customers*" ("ASU 2014-09"). ASU 2014-09 supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in "*Revenue Recognition (Topic 605)*," and requires entities to recognize revenue in a way that depicts the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services. ASU 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period and is to be applied retrospectively, with early application not permitted. We are evaluating the new standard, but do not anticipate a material impact to the financial statements once implemented.

**2. Earnings per share**

Basic earnings per share is computed by dividing income available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted earnings per share is computed by dividing income available to common stockholders by the weighted average shares outstanding plus dilutive potential shares from the exercise of stock options and restricted shares. Common equivalent shares are excluded from the computation if their effect is anti-dilutive. There were no material anti-dilutive shares during the periods presented.

The following table presents a reconciliation of the diluted weighted average shares (in millions):

	13 Weeks ended		39 Weeks ended	
	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
Basic weighted average shares	203	175	188	175
Employee stock options	4	4	4	4
Dilutive weighted average shares	207	179	192	179

Table of Contents**3. Debt**

We were in compliance with the terms and conditions of all debt agreements for all periods presented. Our outstanding debt is detailed in the table below (in millions):

	Interest rate	The Michaels Companies, Inc.			Michaels Stores, Inc.		
		November 1, 2014	February 1, 2014	November 2, 2013	November 1, 2014	February 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
Senior secured term loan	Variable	\$ 2,460	\$ 1,628	\$ 1,632	\$ 2,460	\$ 1,628	\$ 1,632
Senior notes	7.75%		1,006	1,007		1,006	1,007
Senior subordinated notes	5.875%	515	260		515	260	
Senior subordinated notes	11.375%			255			255
Asset-based revolving credit facility	Variable			187			187
	7.50% /						
PIK notes	8.25%	361	800	800			
<b>Total debt</b>		<b>3,336</b>	<b>3,694</b>	<b>3,881</b>	<b>2,975</b>	<b>2,894</b>	<b>3,081</b>
Less current portion		(205)	(16)	(203)	(25)	(16)	(203)
<b>Long-term debt</b>		<b>\$ 3,131</b>	<b>\$ 3,678</b>	<b>\$ 3,678</b>	<b>\$ 2,950</b>	<b>\$ 2,878</b>	<b>\$ 2,878</b>

***Senior notes, additional term loan and senior subordinated notes***

On June 16, 2014, MSI issued an additional \$250 million of our 5.875% Senior Subordinated Notes maturing in 2020 ("2020 Senior Subordinated Notes") at 102% of face value. On July 2, 2014, MSI also issued an additional \$850 million of debt under our existing term loan facility at 99.5% of face value and maturing in 2020 ("Additional Term Loan"). The net proceeds from these borrowings were used to fully redeem the outstanding 7.75% Senior Notes due 2018 ("Senior Notes") and to pay the applicable make-whole premium and accrued interest on the Senior Notes. In accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 470, *Debt* ("ASC 470"), the Company capitalized \$19 million of costs related to the issuance of the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and the Additional Term Loan. In accordance with ASC 470, we recorded a loss on the early extinguishment of debt of \$56 million related to the redemption of the Senior Notes. The \$56 million loss consisted of \$51 million of redemption premiums and \$10 million to write off related debt issuance costs. This loss was partially offset by a \$5 million write off of unamortized net premiums.

***PIK toggle notes***

On July 2, 2014, the Company completed an IPO and received net proceeds totaling \$446 million. The proceeds were used to redeem \$439 million of our then outstanding PIK Notes and to pay other expenses of the offering. In accordance with ASC 470, we recorded a loss on the early extinguishment of debt of \$12 million related to the redemption of the PIK Notes. The \$12 million loss consisted of a \$4 million redemption premium and an \$8 million write off of related debt issuance costs.

On November 10, 2014, an irrevocable notice of redemption was delivered to the holders of the PIK Notes. Pursuant to the notice, \$180 million in principal of the PIK Notes will be redeemed on December 10, 2014 and has been classified as current debt in the consolidated balance sheets. We expect the debt extinguishment costs related to the redemption of the PIK Notes to be approximately \$7 million.

Table of Contents**Restated Revolving Credit Facility**

As of November 1, 2014, the borrowing base of our restated senior secured asset-based revolving credit facility ("Restated Revolving Credit Facility") totaled \$650 million, of which we had no outstanding borrowings, \$62 million of outstanding letters of credit and \$588 million of unused borrowing capacity.

**Debt issuance costs**

Accumulated amortization of debt issuance costs was \$53 million, \$56 million, and \$57 million as of November 1, 2014, February 1, 2014, and November 2, 2013, respectively.

**4. Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)**

The following table includes detail regarding changes in the composition of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) (in millions):

	13 Weeks ended		39 Weeks ended	
	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
Beginning of period	1	4		6
Foreign currency translation adjustment and other	(3)		(2)	(2)
End of period	\$ (2)	\$ 4	\$ (2)	\$ 4

**5. Fair value measurements**

As defined in ASC 820, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures* ("ASC 820"), fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. ASC 820 establishes a three-level valuation hierarchy for fair value measurements. These valuation techniques are based upon observable and unobservable inputs. Observable inputs reflect market data obtained from independent sources, while unobservable inputs reflect less transparent active market data, as well as internal assumptions. These two types of inputs create the following fair value hierarchy:

Level 1 Quoted prices for *identical* instruments in active markets;

Level 2 Quoted prices for *similar* instruments in active markets; quoted prices for identical or similar instruments in markets that are not active; and model-derived valuations whose significant inputs are observable; and

Level 3 Instruments with significant unobservable inputs.

The table below provides the carrying and fair values of our senior secured term loan facility ("Restated Term Loan Credit Facility"), our 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes and our PIK Notes. The fair value of our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility was determined based on quoted market prices of similar instruments

Table of Contents

which are considered Level 2 inputs within the fair value hierarchy. The fair values of our notes were determined based on recent trades which are considered Level 1 inputs within the fair value hierarchy.

	<b>November 1, 2014</b>	
	<b>Carrying value</b>	<b>Fair value</b>
	(In millions)	
Senior secured term loan	\$ 2,460	\$ 2,427
Senior subordinated notes	515	514
PIK notes	361	367

**6. Income taxes**

The effective tax rate was 36.0% and 35.6% for the third quarters of fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2013, respectively. The increase in the effective tax rate in the third quarter of fiscal 2014 was due primarily to fewer credits under the Work Opportunity Tax Credit program.

The effective tax rate for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 was 41.9% compared to 36.0% in the same period in the prior year. The effective tax rate for the first nine months of fiscal 2014 is higher than the prior year primarily due to a change in status of our Canadian subsidiary, which resulted in the write off of certain deferred tax assets. In addition, the prior year includes state tax credits due to a change in tax law. We currently estimate our annualized effective tax rate for fiscal 2014 to be approximately 39%.

**7. Contingencies***Rea claim*

On September 15, 2011, MSI was served with a lawsuit filed in the California Superior Court in and for the County of Orange ("Superior Court") by four former store managers as a class action proceeding on behalf of themselves and certain former and current store managers employed by MSI in California. The lawsuit alleges that MSI improperly classified its store managers as exempt employees and as such failed to pay all wages, overtime and waiting time penalties and failed to provide accurate wage statements. The lawsuit also alleges that the foregoing conduct was in breach of various laws, including California's unfair competition law. On December 3, 2013, the Superior Court entered an Order certifying a class of approximately 200 members. MSI successfully removed the case to the United States District Court for the Central District of California and on May 8, 2014, the class was de-certified. As a result of the decertification, we have approximately 50 individual claims pending. We believe we have meritorious defenses and intend to defend the lawsuits vigorously. We do not believe the resolution of the lawsuits will have a material effect on our consolidated financial statements.

*Data security incident*

Four putative class actions were filed against MSI relating to the January 2014 data breach. The plaintiffs generally allege MSI failed to secure and safeguard customers' private information including credit and debit card information, and as such, breached an implied contract, and violated the Illinois Consumer Fraud Act (and other states' similar laws) and are seeking damages including declaratory relief, actual damages, punitive damages, statutory damages, attorneys' fees, litigation costs, remedial action, pre and post judgment interest and other relief as available. The cases are as follows: *Christina Moyer v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on January 27, 2014; *Michael and Jessica Gouwens v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on January 29, 2014; *Nancy Maize and Jessica Gordon v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on February 21,

Table of Contents

2014; and *Daniel Ripes v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, was filed on March 14, 2014. All four of these cases were filed in the United States District Court-Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division. On April 16, 2014, an order was entered consolidating the current actions. On July 14, 2014, the Company's motion to dismiss the consolidated complaint was granted. On August 11, 2014, plaintiffs filed a motion to alter or amend the judgment, which was denied on October 14, 2014. The deadline to file a notice of appeal expired on November 13, 2014.

On March 18, 2014, an additional putative class action was filed related to the January 2014 data breach, *Mary Jane Whalen v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, but was voluntarily dismissed by the plaintiff on April 11, 2014 without prejudice to her right to re-file a complaint. On December 2, 2014, the plaintiff filed a new lawsuit against MSI related to the data breach in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of New York, *Mary Jane Whalen v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, seeking damages including declaratory relief, monetary damages, statutory damages, punitive damages, attorneys' fees and costs, injunctive relief, pre and post judgment interest and other relief as available. The Company intends to defend the lawsuit vigorously. We cannot reasonably estimate the potential loss, or range of loss, related to the lawsuit, if any.

In connection with the breach, payment card companies and associations may seek to require us to reimburse them for unauthorized card charges and costs to replace cards and may also impose fines or penalties in connection with the data breach, and enforcement authorities may also impose fines or other remedies against us. We have also incurred other costs associated with the data breach, including legal fees, investigative fees, costs of communications with customers and credit monitoring services provided to our customers. In addition, state and federal agencies, including states' attorneys general and the Federal Trade Commission may investigate events related to the data breach, including how it occurred, its consequences and our responses. Although we intend to cooperate in these investigations, we may be subject to fines or other obligations, which may have an adverse effect on how we operate our business and our results of operations. We cannot reasonably estimate the potential loss or range of loss related to any reimbursement costs, fines or penalties that may be assessed, if any.

***California zip code claims***

On August 15, 2008, Linda Carson, a consumer, filed a purported class action proceeding against MSI in the Superior Court of California, County of San Diego ("San Diego Superior Court"), on behalf of herself and all similarly-situated California consumers. The Carson lawsuit alleges that MSI unlawfully requested and recorded personally identifiable information (i.e., her zip code) as part of a credit card transaction. The plaintiff seeks statutory penalties, costs, interest, and attorneys' fees. On February 10, 2011, the California Supreme Court ruled, in a similar matter, *Williams-Sonoma v. Pineda*, that zip codes are personally identifiable information and, therefore, the Song-Beverly Credit Card Act of 1971, as amended ("Song Act"), prohibits businesses from requesting or requiring zip codes in connection with a credit card transaction.

Subsequent to the California Supreme Court decision, three additional purported class action lawsuits seeking similar relief have been filed against MSI: *Carolyn Austin v. Michaels Stores, Inc.* and *Tiffany Heon v. Michaels Stores, Inc.*, both in the San Diego Superior Court, and *Sandra A. Rubinstein v. Michaels Stores, Inc.* in the Superior Court of California, County of Los Angeles, Central Division. An order coordinating the cases has been entered and plaintiffs filed a Consolidated Complaint on April 24, 2012. The parties settled the lawsuit for an amount that will not have a material effect on our consolidated financial statements. On August 6, 2014, the Court granted final approval of the settlement.

Table of Contents**General**

In addition to the litigation discussed above, we are now, and may be in the future, involved in various other lawsuits, claims and proceedings incident to the ordinary course of business. The results of litigation are inherently unpredictable. Any claims against us, whether meritorious or not, could be time consuming, result in costly litigation, require significant amounts of management time and result in diversion of significant resources.

For some of the matters disclosed above, as well as other matters previously disclosed in the Company's filings with the SEC, the Company is able to estimate a range of losses in excess of the amounts recorded, if any, in the accompanying financial statements. The aggregate estimated loss is approximately \$10 million, which includes amounts recorded by the Company.

**8. Segments and geographic information**

We consider our Michaels U.S., Michaels Canada, and Aaron Brothers stores to be our operating segments for purposes of determining reportable segments based on the criteria of ASC 280, *Segment Reporting* ("ASC 280"). We determined that each of our operating segments have similar economic characteristics and meet the aggregation criteria set forth in ASC 280. Therefore, we combine those operating segments into one reporting segment.

Our net sales by country are as follows (in millions):

	November 1, 2014		13 Weeks ended November 2, 2013		November 1, 2014		39 Weeks ended November 2, 2013	
United States	\$	1,018	\$	1,013	\$	2,829	\$	2,731
Canada		112		105		301		284
Net sales	\$	1,130	\$	1,118	\$	3,130	\$	3,015

Our chief operating decision makers evaluate historical operating performance and forecasted future periods' operating performance based on operating income and earnings before interest, income taxes, depreciation, amortization and losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs ("EBITDA (excluding losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs)"). We believe these metrics more closely reflect the operating effectiveness of factors over which management has control. A reconciliation of net income to EBITDA (excluding losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs) is presented below (in millions).

	November 1, 2014		13 Weeks ended November 2, 2013		November 1, 2014		39 Weeks ended November 2, 2013	
Net income	\$	64	\$	47	\$	61	\$	110
Interest expense		41		62		159		154
Provision for income taxes		36		26		44		62
Losses on early extinguishments of debt and refinancing cost						68		7
Depreciation and amortization		29		24		82		74
EBITDA (excluding losses on early extinguishments of debt and refinancing costs)	\$	170	\$	159	\$	414	\$	407

Table of Contents

**9. Related party transactions**

Bain Capital Partners, LLC ("Bain Capital") and The Blackstone Group L.P. ("The Blackstone Group", together with Bain Capital, the "Sponsors") owned approximately 80% of our outstanding common stock as of November 1, 2014. Prior to our IPO on July 2, 2014, the Sponsors and another common stockholder, Highfields Capital Management LP ("Highfields"), received annual management fees of \$12 million and \$1 million, respectively. In connection with the IPO, the management agreement was terminated and the Company paid the Sponsors and Highfields an aggregate \$30 million termination fee. We recognized no related party expenses in the third quarter of fiscal 2014 and \$3 million of expenses related to management fees during the third quarter of fiscal 2013. During the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013, we recognized management fees totaling \$35 million and \$10 million, respectively. These expenses are included in related party expenses in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in Brixmor Properties Group, a vendor we utilize to lease certain properties. Payments associated with this vendor during each of the third quarters of fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2013 totaled \$1 million. Payments made during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 totaled \$2 million and \$3 million, respectively. These expenses are included in cost of sales and occupancy expense in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in RGIS, an external vendor we utilize to count our store inventory. Payments associated with this vendor during each of the third quarters of fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2013 totaled \$2 million. Payments made during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 totaled \$6 million and \$5 million, respectively. These expenses are included in selling, general and administrative in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in Vistar, an external vendor we utilize for all of the candy-type items in our stores. Payments associated with this vendor during the third quarters of fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2013 totaled \$4 million and \$5 million, respectively. Payments made during the nine months ended November 1, 2014 and November 2, 2013 totaled \$15 million and \$17 million, respectively. These expenses are recognized in cost of sales as merchandise is sold.

The Blackstone Group owns a majority equity position in Hilton Hotels, an external vendor we utilize for hospitality services. Payments associated with this vendor during the third quarter of fiscal 2014 and the nine months ended November 1, 2014 totaled \$1 million. There were minimal payments made during fiscal 2013. These expenses are included in selling, general and administrative in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Six of our current directors, Joshua Bekenstein, Todd M. Cook, Nadim El Gabban, Lewis S. Klessel, Matthew S. Levin and Peter F. Wallace, are affiliates of Bain Capital or The Blackstone Group. As such, some or all of such directors may have an indirect material interest in payments with respect to debt securities of the Company that have been purchased by affiliates of Bain Capital or The Blackstone Group. As of November 1, 2014, affiliates of The Blackstone Group held approximately \$56 million of our Restated Term Loan Credit Facility.

Table of Contents

**10. Condensed consolidated financial information**

Our debt covenants restrict MSI, and certain subsidiaries of MSI, from various activities including the incurrence of additional debt, payment of dividends and the repurchase of MSI's capital stock (subject to certain exceptions), among other things. The following condensed consolidated financial information represents the financial information of MSI and its wholly-owned subsidiaries. The information is presented in accordance with the requirements of Rule 12-04 under the SEC's Regulation S-X. In addition, disclosure requirements of Rule 12-04 of Regulation S-X regarding material contingencies and long-term obligations are included in Note 3. Debt, Note 6. Income taxes, and Note 7. Contingencies, where applicable.

F-57

---

Table of Contents

## Michaels Stores, Inc.

### Condensed consolidated balance sheets

November 1,      February 1,      November 2,  
2014                      2014                      2013

(In millions)

<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Current assets:</b>			
Cash and equivalents	\$ 189	\$ 234	\$ 68
Merchandise inventories	1,116	901	1,119
Prepaid expenses and other	99	97	100
Deferred income taxes	37	39	38
Income tax receivables	11	2	20
<b>Total current assets</b>	<b>1,452</b>	<b>1,273</b>	<b>1,345</b>
Property and equipment, net	377	358	353
Goodwill	94	94	94
Debt issuance costs, net	40	37	38
Deferred income taxes	23	28	29
Long-term receivable from Parent	8	8	5
Other assets	3	3	2
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 1,997</b>	<b>\$ 1,801</b>	<b>\$ 1,866</b>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</b>			
<b>Current liabilities:</b>			
Accounts payable	\$ 504	\$ 368	\$ 467
Accrued liabilities and other	359	377	342
Share-based compensation liability			21
Current portion of long-term debt	25	16	203
Dividend payable to Holdings		30	
Deferred income taxes		1	4
Income taxes payable	1	42	6
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	<b>889</b>	<b>834</b>	<b>1,043</b>
Long-term debt	2,950	2,878	2,878
Share-based compensation liability			28
Other liabilities	89	90	88
<b>Total stockholders' deficit</b>	<b>(1,931)</b>	<b>(2,001)</b>	<b>(2,171)</b>
<b>Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit</b>	<b>\$ 1,997</b>	<b>\$ 1,801</b>	<b>\$ 1,866</b>

Table of Contents

**Michaels Stores, Inc.**  
**Condensed consolidated statements of comprehensive income**

	13 Weeks ended		39 Weeks ended	
	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013	November 1, 2014	November 2, 2013
	(In millions)			
<b>Net sales</b>	\$ 1,130	\$ 1,118	\$ 3,130	\$ 3,015
Cost of sales and occupancy expense	678	665	1,892	1,816
<b>Gross profit</b>	452	453	1,238	1,199
Selling, general, and administrative	303	309	854	835
Share-based compensation	4	4	10	15
Related party expenses		3	35	10
Store pre-opening costs	2	2	4	5
<b>Operating income</b>	143	135	335	334
Interest expense	35	45	121	137
Losses on early extinguishment of debt and refinancing costs			56	7
Other expense, net	1		1	1
<b>Income before income taxes</b>	107	90	157	189
Provision for income taxes	39	32	63	68
<b>Net income</b>	68	58	94	121
<b>Other comprehensive income, net of tax:</b>				
Foreign currency translation adjustment and other	(3)		(2)	(2)
<b>Comprehensive income</b>	\$ 65	\$ 58	\$ 92	\$ 119

Table of Contents

**Michaels Stores, Inc.**  
**Condensed consolidated statement of cash flows**

	<b>39 Weeks ended</b>	
	<b>November 1, 2014</b>	<b>November 2, 2013</b>
	(In millions)	
<b>Cash flows provided by operating activities:</b>		
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$ 101	\$ 74
<b>Cash flows used in investing activities:</b>		
Cash paid for property and equipment	(103)	(82)
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>		
Net repayments of debt	(1,095)	(353)
Net borrowings of debt	1,113	389
Payment of dividend to Holdings	(60)	
Other financing activities	(1)	(16)
Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities	(43)	20
<b>Net change in cash and equivalents</b>	<b>(45)</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Cash and equivalents at beginning of period</b>	<b>234</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Cash and equivalents at end of period</b>	<b>\$ 189</b>	<b>\$ 68</b>

F-60

Table of Contents





Table of Contents

***16,000,000 shares***

**The Michaels Companies, Inc.**

***Common stock***

**J.P. Morgan  
Barclays**

**Goldman, Sachs & Co.**

**Deutsche Bank Securities**

**BofA Merrill Lynch**

**Credit Suisse**

**Morgan Stanley**

**Wells Fargo Securities**

**Guggenheim Securities**

**Macquarie Capital**

**Nomura**

**Piper Jaffray**

**Raymond James**

**Stephens Inc.**

**SunTrust Robinson Humphrey**

**Ramirez & Co., Inc.**

**Telsey Advisory Group**

**The Williams Capital Group, L.P.**

---

Table of Contents

## Part II

### Information not required in prospectus

#### Item 13. Other expenses of issuance and distribution

The following table sets forth the estimated expenses payable by us in connection with the sale and distribution of the securities registered hereby, other than underwriting discounts or commissions. All amounts are estimates except for the SEC registration fee and the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority ("FINRA") filing fee.

SEC registration fee	\$ 49,240
FINRA filing fee	64,063
Blue sky fees and expenses	5,000
Printing and engraving expenses	100,000
Accounting fees and expenses	100,000
Legal fees and expenses	335,000
Transfer agent and registrar fees	1,000
Miscellaneous fees and expenses	50,000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>\$ 704,303</b>

#### Item 14. Indemnification of directors and officers.

Section 145 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware provides as follows:

"(a) A corporation shall have the power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by him in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interest of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. The termination of any action, suit or proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, conviction or upon a plea of *nolo contendere* or its equivalent shall not, of itself, create a presumption that the person did not act in good faith and in a manner which the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had reasonable cause to believe that his conduct was unlawful.

(b) A corporation shall have the power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by him in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation

Table of Contents

and except that no indemnification shall be made with respect to any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Court of Chancery or the court in which such action or suit was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses which the Court of Chancery or such other court shall deem proper."

As permitted by the Delaware General Corporation Law, we have included in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation a provision to eliminate the personal liability of our directors for monetary damages for breach of their fiduciary duties as directors, subject to certain exceptions. In addition, our amended and restated bylaws contain a provision indemnifying our directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted under applicable law for all liability and loss suffered by them in connection with performance of their duties as directors and officers of the Company, subject to certain exceptions, and provide that we may advance expenses to our officers and directors as incurred in connection with proceedings against them for which they may be indemnified.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with our directors and officers. These agreements provide broader indemnity rights than those provided under the Delaware General Corporation Law and our amended and restated certificate of incorporation and our amended and restated bylaws. The indemnification agreements are not intended to deny or otherwise limit third-party or derivative suits against us or our directors or officers, but to the extent a director or officer were entitled to indemnity or contribution under the indemnification agreement, the financial burden of a third-party suit would be borne by us, and we would not benefit from derivative recoveries against the director or officer. Such recoveries would accrue to our benefit but would be offset by our obligations to the director or officer under the indemnification agreement.

The underwriting agreement provides that the underwriters are obligated, under certain circumstances, to indemnify our directors, officers and controlling persons against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act. Reference is made to the form of underwriting agreement filed as Exhibit 1.1 hereto.

We maintain directors' and officers' liability insurance for the benefit of our directors and officers.

**Item 15. Recent sales of unregistered securities.**

*Equity securities*

Set forth below is information regarding securities issued by us within the past three years after giving effect to a 1.476-for-one stock split effected on June 6, 2014. Also included is the consideration received by us for such securities and information relating to the section of the Securities Act, or rule of the SEC, under which exemption from registration was claimed. There were no underwritten offerings employed in connection with any of the transactions set forth in this Item 15.

On March 22, 2012, a former employee exercised 76,623 options for aggregate consideration of \$843,271, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On March 22, 2012, a former employee exercised 23,128 options for aggregate consideration of \$352,575, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis and 39,890 on a cash settlement basis for aggregate consideration of \$320,220, which resulted in the issuance of 39,890 shares of Common Stock to this individual.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

On June 19, 2012, a former employee exercised 89,978 options for aggregate consideration of \$972,705, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On September 28, 2012, a former employee exercised 33,515 options for aggregate consideration of \$393,361, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On September 28, 2012, two former employees each exercised 50,277 options for aggregate consideration of \$556,925, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 18, 2012, a former employee exercised 134,076 options for aggregate consideration of \$1,485,197, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 22, 2012, a former employee exercised 121,808 options for aggregate consideration of \$1,291,898, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 26, 2012, a former employee exercised 13,591 options for aggregate consideration of \$166,128, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 26, 2012, a former employee exercised 2,214 options on a cash settlement basis, which resulted in the issuance of 2,214 shares of Common Stock to this individual, for aggregate consideration of \$22,830.

On June 27, 2013, three former employees exercised 75,417, 83,910, and 83,518 options for aggregate consideration of \$2,579,087, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On July 10, 2013, a former employee exercised 2,213,997 options for aggregate consideration of \$22,499,963, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On July 31, 2013, a former employee exercised 575,203 options for aggregate consideration of \$4,337,240, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 3, 2013, a former employee exercised 141,719 options for aggregate consideration of \$1,062,511, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 17, 2013, a former employee exercised 104,804 options for aggregate consideration of \$781,297, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On October 31, 2013, a former employee exercised 8,757 options for aggregate consideration of \$110,413, which shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis.

On January 13, 2014, four former employees exercised 567,091, 121,492, 9,189 and 8,757 options for aggregate consideration of \$5,382,829 and 387,535, 76,047, 7,785 and 7,639 of these shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis to pay for minimum tax withholdings and the exercises.

On January 23, 2014, a former employee exercised 8,377 options for aggregate consideration of \$68,604 and 5,887 of these shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis to pay for minimum tax withholdings and the exercise.

On January 31, 2014, a former employee exercised 4,175 options for aggregate consideration of \$33,297 and 2,805 of these shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis to pay for minimum tax withholdings and the exercise.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

On February 20, 2014, a former employee exercised 144,701 options for aggregate consideration of \$1,094,113 and 92,397 of these shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis to pay for minimum tax withholdings and the exercise.

On April 3, 2014, two former employees exercised 142,912 and 103,612 options for aggregate consideration of \$1,843,742 and 90,114 and 63,296 of these shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis to pay for minimum tax withholdings and the exercises.

On May 1, 2014, a former employee exercised 339,328 options for aggregate consideration of \$2,644,236 and 229,916 of these shares were resold to the Company on a same-day sale basis to pay for minimum tax withholdings and the exercise.

During the three years ended February 1, 2014, we issued options to purchase an aggregate of 4,121,567 shares of Common Stock under the Equity Incentive Plan.

During the three years ended February 1, 2014, we issued restricted stock awards totaling an aggregate of 791,162 shares of Common Stock under the Equity Incentive Plan.

Between February 2, 2014 and January 2, 2015, we issued options to purchase an aggregate of 1,636,913 shares of Common Stock under the Equity Incentive Plan and 2014 Omnibus Plan.

Between February 2, 2014 and January 2, 2015, we issued restricted stock awards totaling an aggregate 352,298 of shares of Common Stock under the Equity Incentive Plan and 2014 Omnibus Plan.

The foregoing share numbers do not reflect any adjustments made in connection with the Reorganization.

On July 23, 2013, in connection with the Reorganization, each share of MSI's common stock was converted into the right to receive one share of the Company's Common Stock, subject to the same vesting conditions, if any, as applied to the share so converted, and each such share of MSI's common stock was cancelled and retired and ceased to exist. Approximately 174 million shares of MSI's common stock were converted into the Company's Common Stock.

The issuances of the securities in the transactions described above were deemed to be exempt from registration under the Securities Act in reliance upon Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and/or Rule 701 promulgated thereunder. The securities were issued directly by the registrant and did not involve a public offering or general solicitation. The recipients of such securities represented their intentions to acquire the securities for investment purposes only and not with a view to, or for sale in connection with, any distribution thereof.

### ***Debt securities***

On September 27, 2012, MSI, our wholly-owned indirect subsidiary, issued \$200 million aggregate principal amount of Additional 2018 Senior Notes at a purchase price of 106.25% of face value, resulting in approximately \$209 million of net proceeds before expenses. The proceeds were used to repay a portion of the indebtedness outstanding under MSI's B-1 Term Loans under its Senior Secured Term Loan Facility and to pay related fees and expenses. The initial purchasers for the Additional 2018 Senior Notes were Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Barclays Capital Inc., Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Goldman, Sachs & Co, J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC. The aggregate amount of the initial purchasers' premium paid on the Additional 2018 Senior Notes was approximately \$9 million.

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

On July 29, 2013, FinCo Holdings and FinCo Inc., our wholly-owned direct and indirect subsidiaries, respectively, issued \$800 million aggregate principal amount of Holdco Notes at a purchase price of 100.00% of face value, resulting in approximately \$788 million of net proceeds before expenses. The proceeds were used to fund a cash dividend to our equity and equity-award holders and to pay related fees and expenses. The initial purchasers for the Holdco Notes were J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Goldman, Sachs & Co, Barclays Capital Inc., Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC. The aggregate amount of the initial purchasers' discount on the Holdco Notes was approximately \$12 million.

On December 19, 2013, MSI, our wholly-owned indirect subsidiary, issued \$260 million aggregate principal amount of 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, at a purchase price of 100.00% of face value, resulting in approximately \$256 million of net proceeds before expenses. Concurrently with the completion of that offering, MSI issued a redemption notice to the holders of its outstanding 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes, deposited the redemption proceeds in trust with the trustee under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture and instructed the trustee under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes to discharge its obligations under the 2016 Senior Subordinated Notes Indenture. The initial purchasers for the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes were Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Barclays Capital, Inc., Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Goldman, Sachs & Co., J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Credit Suisse (USA) LLC, Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, Guggenheim Securities, LLC and Macquarie Capital (USA) Inc. The aggregate amount of the initial purchasers' discount on the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes was approximately \$4 million.

On June 16, 2014, MSI, our wholly-owned indirect subsidiary, issued \$250 million aggregate principal amount of Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes, at a purchase price of 102.00% of face value, resulting in approximately \$252 million of expected net proceeds before expenses. Following the completion of that issuance, MSI issued a redemption notice to the holders of its outstanding 2018 Senior Notes, pursuant to which a portion of the 2018 Senior Notes will be redeemed on July 17, 2014 as set forth in such notice of redemption. MSI will also pay the applicable redemption premium and accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the applicable redemption date on the 2018 Senior Notes. The initial purchasers for the Additional 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes were Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Barclay Capital Inc., Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, Guggenheim Securities, LLC and Macquarie Capital (USA) Inc. The aggregate amount of the initial purchasers' discount on the 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes was approximately \$3 million.

The Additional 2018 Senior Notes, the Holdco Notes and 2020 Senior Subordinated Notes were offered and sold to the initial purchasers in reliance on the exemption afforded by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act and were offered and resold by the initial purchasers to qualified institutional buyers pursuant to Rule 144A under the Securities Act and to non-U.S. investors outside the United States in compliance with Regulation S of the Securities Act.

All securities described in this Item 15 are deemed restricted securities for purposes of the Securities Act. The instruments representing such issued securities included appropriate legends setting forth that the securities had not been registered and the applicable restrictions on transfer.

Table of Contents

**Item 16. Exhibits and financial statement schedules.**

(a) Exhibits

Reference is made to the Exhibit List filed as a part of this registration statement beginning on page E-1. Each of such exhibits is incorporated by reference herein.

(b) Financial Statement Schedules

All schedules are omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is shown in the financial statement or notes thereto.

Schedules other than that listed above have been omitted since the required information is not present, or not present in amounts sufficient to require submission of the schedule, or because the information required is included in the Consolidated Financial Statements or the notes thereto.

**Item 17. Undertakings.**

The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) That, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the Registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) For the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser, if the registrant is subject to Rule 430C, each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.

(4) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the Registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act of 1933 and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the Registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the Registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the Registrant will, unless in the

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act of 1933 and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

II-7

---



Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

Table of Contents

<b>Signature</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Date</b>
<p style="text-align: center;">*</p> <hr/>	Director	January 20, 2015
<p style="text-align: center;">Lewis S. Klessel</p>		
<p style="text-align: center;">*</p> <hr/>	Director	January 20, 2015
<p style="text-align: center;">Matthew S. Levin</p>		
<p style="text-align: center;">*</p> <hr/>	Director	January 20, 2015
<p style="text-align: center;">John J. Mahoney</p>		
<p style="text-align: center;">*</p> <hr/>	Director	January 20, 2015
<p style="text-align: center;">James A. Quella</p>		
<p style="text-align: center;">*</p> <hr/>	Director	January 20, 2015
<p style="text-align: center;">Beryl B. Raff</p>		
<p style="text-align: center;">*</p> <hr/>	Director	January 20, 2015
<p style="text-align: center;">Peter F. Wallace</p>		

By:       /s/ CHARLES M. SONSTEBY

Charles M. Sonstebey  
*Attorney-in-fact*

Date: January 20, 2015

Table of Contents

**Exhibit list**

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
1.1*	Form of Underwriting Agreement
2.1**	Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of July 22, 2013, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., The Michaels Companies, Inc., Michaels FinCo Holdings, LLC, Michaels Funding, Inc., and Michaels Stores MergerCo. Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on August 30, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
3.1**	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on December 20, 2013, SEC File No. 333-193000)
3.2**	Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 9, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
3.3**	Amended and Restated Bylaws of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.3 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on December 20, 2013, SEC File No. 333-193000)
3.4**	Form of Amended and Restated Bylaws of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.4 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
4.1**	Form of Specimen Common Stock Certificate of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 16, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
4.2**	Form of Amended and Restated Registration Rights Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
4.3**	Form of Investor Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.3 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
4.4**	Indenture, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 7, 2006, SEC File No. 001-09338)
4.5**	Supplemental Indenture, dated as of October 20, 2010, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc. and Law Debenture Trust Company of New York, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on October 26, 2010, SEC File No. 001-09338)
4.6**	Indenture, dated as of October 21, 2010, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and Law Debenture Trust Company of New York, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on October 26, 2010, SEC File No. 001-09338)
4.7**	Supplemental Indenture, dated as of September 27, 2012, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and Law Debenture Trust Company of New York, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on October 2, 2012, SEC File No. 001-09338)

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
4.8**	Registration Rights Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc. and certain stockholders thereof (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.7 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 7, 2006, SEC File No. 001-09338)
4.9**	Registration Rights Agreement, dated as of September 27, 2012, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and the Initial Purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on October 2, 2012, SEC File No. 001-09338)
4.10**	Indenture, dated as of December 19, 2013, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 19, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
4.11**	Supplemental Indenture, dated as of June 16, 2014, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as trustee. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.11 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 16, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
4.12**	Indenture, dated as of July 29, 2013, among Michaels FinCo Holdings, LLC, Michaels FinCo, Inc. and Law Debenture Trust Company of New York, as trustee. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.12 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 16, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
5.1*	Opinion of Ropes & Gray LLP
10.1 **	Amended and Restated 2014 Omnibus Long-Term Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 16, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.2 **	Form of Stock Option Agreement under the 2014 Omnibus Long-Term Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.3 **	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement under the 2014 Omnibus Long-Term Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.4 **	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement for Independent Directors under the 2014 Omnibus Long-Term Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.5 **	Michaels Stores, Inc. 2006 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on February 21, 2007, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.6 **	Form of Stock Option Agreement under the Michaels Stores, Inc. 2006 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on February 21, 2007, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.7 **	Amended form of Stock Option Agreement under Michaels Stores, Inc. 2006 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on September 4, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.8 **	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement under the Michaels Stores, Inc. 2006 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 6, 2008, SEC File No. 001-09338)

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
10.9 **	The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on August 30, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.10 **	Form of Stock Option Agreement under The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on August 30, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.11 **	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement under The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on August 30, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.12 **	Form of Restricted Stock Award Agreement for Independent Directors under The Michaels Companies, Inc. Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 10, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.13 **	Form of Fiscal Year 2014 Bonus Plan for Executive Officers (previously filed as exhibit 10.1 to form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on March 31, 2014, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.14 **	The Michaels Companies, Inc. Annual Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.14 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.15 **	Employment Agreement, dated February 13, 2013, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and Carl S. Rubin (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on May 24, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.16 **	Restricted Stock Award Agreements, dated March 18, 2013, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and Carl S. Rubin (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on May 24, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.17 **	Stock Option Agreement, dated March 18, 2013, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and Carl S. Rubin (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on May 24, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.18 **	Employment Agreement, dated March 6, 2009, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and John B. Menzer (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 5, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.19 **	Amendment to Employment Agreement, dated June 2, 2009, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and John B. Menzer (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 5, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.20 **	Letter Agreement, dated September 15, 2010, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and Charles M. Sonstebly (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 99.2 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on September 17, 2010, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.21 **	Restricted Stock Award Agreement, dated June 2, 2009, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and John B. Menzer (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 5, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.22 **	Stock Option Agreement, dated June 2, 2009, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and John B. Menzer (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 5, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
10.23**	Amended and Restated Stockholders Agreement, dated as of February 16, 2007, among Michaels Stores, Inc. and certain stockholders thereof (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.23 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on May 3, 2007, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.24 **	Michaels Stores, Inc. Amended Officer Severance Pay Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.17 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on April 2, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.25 **	Amendment to Michaels Stores, Inc. Amended Officer Severance Pay Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.15 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on March 15, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.26 **	Michaels Stores, Inc. Amended and Restated Officer Severance Pay Plan
10.27**	Form of Director & Officer Indemnification Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.29 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 9, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.28**	Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of February 18, 2010, among Michaels Stores, Inc., as lead borrower for the borrowers party thereto, the facility guarantors named therein, Bank of America, N.A., as administrative agent and collateral agent, the lenders party thereto (collectively, the "Lenders"), Wells Fargo Retail Finance, LLC, as syndication agent, Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, General Electric Capital Corporation, UBS Securities LLC and RBS Business Capital, as senior managing agents, Banc of America Securities LLC, Wells Fargo Retail Finance, LLC and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., as joint lead arrangers, and Banc of America Securities LLC, Wells Fargo Retail Finance, LLC, Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Credit Suisse, as joint book runners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on February 19, 2010, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.29**	Exhibits and Schedules to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of February 18, 2010, among Michaels Stores, Inc., as lead borrower for the borrowers party thereto, the facility guarantors named therein, Bank of America, N.A., as administrative agent and collateral agent, the lenders party thereto (collectively, the "Lenders"), Wells Fargo Retail Finance, LLC, as syndication agent, Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, General Electric Capital Corporation, UBS Securities LLC and RBS Business Capital, as senior managing agents, Banc of America Securities LLC, Wells Fargo Retail Finance, LLC and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., as joint lead arrangers, and Banc of America Securities LLC, Wells Fargo Retail Finance, LLC, Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Credit Suisse, as joint book runners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on May 28, 2010, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.30**	Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of September 17, 2012, among Michaels Stores, Inc., the other borrowers from time to time party thereto, the facility guarantors from time to time party thereto, the lenders from time to time party thereto, Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as administrative agent and collateral agent, and the other agents named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on September 18, 2012, SEC File No. 001-09338)

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
10.31**	Exhibits and Schedules to Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of September 17, 2012, among Michaels Stores, Inc., the other borrowers from time to time party thereto, the facility guarantors from time to time party thereto, the lenders from time to time party thereto, Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as administrative agent and collateral agent, and the other agents named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.21 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on March 15, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.32**	First Amendment to Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated June 6, 2014, to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated September 17, 2012, among Michaels Stores, Inc., the other borrowers named therein, the facility guarantors named therein, the lenders named therein, Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as administrative agent, collateral agent, lender, swingline lender and issuing bank (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 11, 2014, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.33**	Credit Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, the other lenders named therein, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as syndication agent, and Bank of America, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Banc of America Securities LLC as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 7, 2006, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.34**	First Amendment to Credit Agreement, dated as of January 19, 2007, to the Credit Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, the other lenders named therein, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as syndication agent, and Bank of America, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Banc of America Securities LLC as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on January 25, 2007, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.35**	Second Amendment to Credit Agreement, dated as of May 10, 2007, to the Credit Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, the other lenders named therein, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as syndication agent, and Bank of America, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Banc of America Securities LLC as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on May 11, 2007, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.36**	Third Amendment to Credit Agreement, dated as of August 20, 2009, to the Credit Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, the other lenders named therein, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as syndication agent, and Bank of America, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Banc of America Securities LLC as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Form 10-Q filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on September 4, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
10.37**	Fourth Amendment to Credit Agreement, dated as of November 5, 2009, to the Credit Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, the other lenders named therein, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as syndication agent, and Bank of America, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Banc of America Securities LLC as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on November 5, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.38**	Fifth Amendment to Credit Agreement, dated as of December 15, 2011, to the Credit Agreement, dated as of October 31, 2006, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, the other lenders named therein, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as syndication agent, and Bank of America, N.A. and Credit Suisse, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., J.P. Morgan Securities Inc. and Banc of America Securities LLC as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 16, 2011, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.39**	Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of January 28, 2013, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, and Barclays Bank PLC, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Goldman Sachs Bank USA, J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Morgan Stanley Senior Funding, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Barclays Bank PLC, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Goldman Sachs Bank USA, J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Morgan Stanley Senior Funding, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on February 1, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.40**	Exhibits and Schedules to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of January 28, 2013, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, and Barclays Bank PLC, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Goldman Sachs Bank USA, J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Morgan Stanley Senior Funding, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, as co-documentation agents, and Deutsche Bank Securities Inc., Barclays Bank PLC, Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, Goldman Sachs Bank USA, J.P. Morgan Securities LLC, Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated, Morgan Stanley Senior Funding, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, as co-lead arrangers and joint bookrunners (incorporated by reference to filed as Exhibit 10.29 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on March 15, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.41**	First Amendment to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated June 10, 2014, to the Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated January 28, 2013, among Michaels Stores, Inc., Deutsche Bank AG New York Branch, as administrative agent, and the guarantors named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 11, 2014, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.42**	Master Services Agreement, dated as of January 16, 2009, by and between Michaels Stores, Inc. and Tata America International Corporation (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.29 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on April 2, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)

## Edgar Filing: Michaels Companies, Inc. - Form S-1/A

### Table of Contents

<b>Exhibit no.</b>	<b>Description</b>
10.43**	Michaels Stores, Inc. Employees 401(k) Plan, effective March 1, 2009 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.30 to Form 10-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on April 2, 2009, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.44**	Purchase Agreement, dated October 7, 2010, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the Guarantors named therein and the Initial Purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on October 14, 2010, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.45**	Purchase Agreement, dated September 20, 2012, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the Guarantors named therein and the Initial Purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on September 25, 2012, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.46**	Purchase Agreement, dated December 16, 2013, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the guarantors named therein and the Initial Purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on December 19, 2013, SEC File No. 001-09338)
10.47 **	Separation Agreement and Release, dated November 15, 2013, between Michaels Stores, Inc. and Weizhong "Wilson" Zhu (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.49 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
10.48**	Purchase Agreement, dated June 5, 2014, by and among Michaels Stores, Inc., the Guarantors named therein and the Initial Purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Form 8-K filed by Michaels Stores, Inc. on June 11, 2014, SEC File No. 001-09338)
21.1**	Subsidiaries of The Michaels Companies, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 21.1 to Form S-1 filed by The Michaels Companies, Inc. on June 2, 2014, SEC File No. 333-193000)
23.1*	Consent of Ernst & Young LLP
23.2*	Consent of Ropes & Gray LLP (included in the opinion filed as Exhibit 5.1)
24.1*	Powers of Attorney (included on signature page)
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document*
101.SCH	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema*
101.CAL	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase*
101.DEF	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase*
101.LAB	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase*
101.PRE	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase*

\* Filed herewith.

\*\* Previously filed, including items incorporated by reference.

Indicates management contracts or compensatory plans or arrangements in which our executive officers or

directors participate.

E-7

---